

ŚĀNKARASMRTI
(LAGHUDHARMAPRAKĀŚIKĀ)

*Introduction, Critical edition,
Translation and Appendices*
by N. P. Unni

Torino

2003

UNION ACADÉMIQUE
INTERNATIONALE

UNIONE ACCADEMICA
NAZIONALE

CORPUS IURIS SANSKRITICUM

Sanskrit Series on Social and Religious Law
edited by Oscar Botto

Volume IV

The Series is sponsored by

FONDAZIONE CRT

UNION ACADEMIQUE
INTERNATIONALE

UNIONE ACCADEMICA
NAZIONALE

CORPUS IURIS SANSCRITICUM

Sanskrit Series on Social and Religious Law
edited by Oscar Botto



Scientific Committee

<i>President</i>	Oscar Botto
<i>Vice President</i>	Siegfried Lienhard
<i>Members</i>	Colette Caillat
	Oskar von Hinüber
	Patrik Olivelle
	Irma Piovano
	Akira Yuyama

© 2003

Copyright: Comitato Promotore per la Pubblicazione del Corpus Iuris
Sanskriticum, Torino (Italy).

Finito di stampare nel dicembre 2003 dalla Stamperia Artistica Nazionale,
Torino, per conto del Comitato Promotore per la Pubblicazione del Corpus
Iuris Sanscriticum, c/o Cesmeo, Via Cavour 17, 10123 Torino (Italy).

La *Śāṅkarasmṛti* (o *Laghudharmaprakāśikā*), il testo sanscrito pubblicato nel presente volume della Collana, riveste un particolare interesse in quanto espone, in modo specifico ed esaustivo, la normativa in uso nel Kerala, toponimo che nella letteratura antica designava un'area del Subcontinente indiano ben più estesa dell'attuale Stato omonimo.

L'opera è articolata in dodici capitoli (*adhyāya*), ciascuno diviso in quattro *pāda*, per complessivi 1376 versi. Le fonti principali della materia esposta sono costituite dai trattati della *Manusmṛti* e della *Yajñavalkyasmṛti*, ma non mancano rilevanti elementi originali, quali le diverse modalità punitive previste per l'adulterio e il sistema ereditario matrilineare, che rappresenta un elemento peculiare e distintivo della regione del Kerala, il cui esame si è rivelato determinante per definire l'epoca della composizione, fissata al XIV secolo.

L'edizione critica basata su due testi a stampa e dieci manoscritti redatti in caratteri Malayalam (la grafia peculiare del Kerala), è stata curata dall'eminente sanscritista N.P. Unni, già Conservatore dell'Oriental Research Institute and Manuscripts Library dell'Università del Kerala, Direttore del Dipartimento di Sanscrito della medesima Università e Rettore della Sree Sankaracharya University of Sanskrit, Kalady, nonché autore di oltre trenta opere nel campo dell'Indologia. Il rilevante contributo da lui dato in ambito accademico e scientifico gli è valso nel 2001 il prestigioso Certificate of Honour del Presidente dell'Unione Indiana.

Oscar Botto

CONTENTS

Introduction

Customs and manners of Kerala; Kerala and the Paraśurāma tradition; Brāhmin predominance; *Bhārgavasmṛti* – a non-existent text; Śāṅkarasmṛti alias *Laghudharmaprakāśikā*; Authorship of Śāṅkarasmṛti; Authorship – Internal evidence; Brief contents of *Laghudharmaprakāśikā*; Arrangement of the text; Smṛti literature; Śāṅkarasmṛti of Kerala; Critical apparatus. 1

Sanskrit Text

Prathamādhyāyah	31
Dvitiyo'dhyāyah	45
Tṛtiyo'dhyāyah	57
Caturthādhyāyah	69
Pañcamādhyāyah	83
Ṣaṣṭhādhyāyah	93
Saptamo'dhyāyah	109
Aṣṭamādhyāyah	119
Navamo'dhyāyah	129
Daśamo'dhyāyah	139
Ekādaśo'dhyāyah	149
Dvādaśo'dhyāyah	159

Translation

Chapter one	171
The origin of the <i>varnas</i> and their duties; Special duties of Brāhmins; Duties of <i>Kṣatriyas</i> and others; Dignity of one's own duty; The routines of a <i>Brahmacārin</i> ; Study and service before preceptor.	
Chapter two	185
The study; Life of a householder; The <i>sapinda</i> relationship; Different views on <i>sapinda</i> relationship; Eight types of marriages; Test for selecting a bridegroom; Test for the selection of a bride; Selection of the bride using lump of clay etc.	
Chapter three	197
The procedure for marriage; Proper rekindling of fire; Expiatory rites for the loss of fire; The merits of preserving the fire.	
Chapter four	209
Rules for daily bath; Rules for morning and evening prayers; Rules for smearing ashes; The rules for making sacred ashes; Rules for collecting ashes; Daily routines.	
Chapter five	223
The duties of the husband and wife; The sixteen purificatory rites; The proper time for the sixteen customary rites; The duties of <i>snātakas</i> ; Duties of householders; Expiation for receiving gifts.	
Chapter six	233
Five accidental killings and five expiatory oblations; Giving and receiving of gifts by the householders; Virtues of having a son; Adoption in the matrilineal system; Adoption in the patrilineal system; Bringing up the child.	

Chapter seven	249
Protection of the household property; Protection of the domestic fire; Pollution of fire; Looking after the wife.	
Chapter eight	259
<i>Smārtavicāra</i> , Trial by a Smārtā Brāhmin; Pollution to children; General duties of a householder; Optional rites.	
Chapter nine	267
Rules regarding <i>Vānaprastha</i> , the anchorite; Rules for the yogic practice; Attainment of Yoga; The other benefits of Yoga.	
Chapter ten	277
Rules of the ascetic order; Royal duties; Royal administration of justice; Self-protection of the king.	
Chapter eleven	287
The Duties of the <i>Vaiśyas</i> ; Duties of <i>Śūdras</i> ; Customary observances like <i>Ahimsā</i> ; Food habits.	
Chapter twelve	297
Proper Conduct; Duties of women; Duties of women in menstruation; The sixty-four <i>Anācāras</i> .	
Appendices	
A. Explanatory Notes	309
B. Glossary	347
C. Select Bibliography	361
D. Index of Half-Verses	365

INTRODUCTION

Customs and manners of Kerala

Through the ages, Kerala has been an integral part of the Indian sub-continent and its history is a part of the general history of India and its customs and manners have enriched the composite culture of the nation. But Kerala has had the distinction of being an independent geographical and political entity from very early days. The geographical position of Kerala as the narrow strip hemmed in between the Western Ghats on the one side and the Arabian sea on the other has considerably influenced the course of its history. Since Kerala seldom felt the impact of many foreign invasions that took place in the northern part of India, it was able to evolve its own way of life and social institutions unhampered by the external interference. It helped the growth of peculiar social institutions like the matrilineal system of inheritance, polyandry etc; among various castes.¹

The term Kerala in early literature stands for a region between Gokarṇam in the north and Kanyākumāri (Cape Comorin) in the south, an area much larger than the region known at present. It is this larger area that has come in for recognition at the hands of earlier writers. As a result of the reorganisation of Kerala, much of the northern portion and some of the southern portion were brought under other South Indian States of Karnataka and Tamilnadu.

Kerala and the Paraśurāma tradition

The Paraśurāma legend relating to the origin of Kerala would also help us to understand some of the basic facts relating to the geography of ancient Kerala. According to the legend the land of Kerala was a gift of the Arabian sea to Paraśurāma, one of the ten incarnations of

1. A. Sreedhara Menon, *A Survey of Kerala History*, National Book Stall, Kottayam (Kerala), 1967.

Lord Viṣṇu². This legend is referred to twice, by Kālidāsa in his *Raghuvamśa* (VI. 53 and 58) as follows.³

*Tasyānikair visarpadbhiḥ
aparāntajayodyataih
Rāmāstrotsāritopyāsit
sahyalagna ivārṇavah*

(The sea, though pushed afar by the missiles of Paraśurāma, appeared as if touching the mountain Sahya on account of his extensive army prepared to conquer the kings of the Western Coast).

*Avakāśam kilodanvān
rāmāyābhyarthito dadau
Aparāntamahūpāla -
vyājena raghavē karam*

(Being pressed, it is said, did the ocean give space to [make room for] Rāma, to Raghu he paid tribute under the disguise of the Princes of the Western Coast.)

The legend has it that Paraśurāma threw his *Paraśu* (or axe across the sea from Gokarṇam to Kanyākumāri (or from Kanyākumari to Gokarṇam) and water receded up to the spot where it fell. The *Śukasandeśa* (13th Century A.D.) hints at this legend as follows. (I. 34)⁴.

*Brahmakṣatram janapadamatha sphitamadhyakṣayethāḥ
darpādarśam dṛḍhataramrser jāmadagnyasya bāhvoh
Yam medinyām ruciramaricottālatāmbūlavallī-
vellat kerakramukanikarān Keralān udgṛṇanti*

(Then you can see the prosperous country ruled by the Brāhmins, the mirror of the pride of sage Paraśurāma's [son of Jamadagni] arms; which is famous in this world for its beautiful pepper and betel creepers trembling round the coconut and arecanut trees).

2. *Ibid.* pp. 10-11

3. *Raghuvamśa* of Kālidāsa, canto IV stanzas 53 and 58.

4. *Śukasandeśa* of Lakṣmidāsa, ed. N.P. Unni, with *Vilāśinī* commentary, I. 34; Nag Publishers, Delhi, 1985.

The *Keralakṣitiratnamālā* of anonymous authorship dealing with the administration of Kerala in medieval times had referred to this legend in the following stanza⁵.

*Mugdhenducūḍasadanam Gokarṇākhyamanuttamam
samudrāduddhṛtam yāvad rāmeṇa bhṛgusūnū
Udbhūtam Keralām tāvad pārāvārapārataḥ
brāhmaṇebhyo dadau rāmo vīrāstat Keralādhipāḥ*

(Rāma of Bhṛgu race lifted up the portion of land Gokarna where the temple of Śiva exists; once the land of Kerala was thus created he gave it to Brāhmins to administer the same as rulers).

The tract of territory so thrown up is said to have constituted the land of Kerala, otherwise called *Bhārgavaksetram* or *Paraśurāmaksetram* and similar synonymous terms. It is said that there is very little historical or factual basis for the Paraśurāma tradition, Paraśurāma himself being considered a mythological hero. This legend has gained much popularity in Kerala, being dealt with in works of comparatively later origin like *Keralamāhātmya* in 6 chapters containing over 2200 stanzas dealing with the legendary history and customs of Kerala (not earlier than the 16th century);⁶ *Keralācāradipikā* in 73 chapters on the legendary history and customs of Kerala⁷, and *Keralotpatti*⁸ in Malayalam prose. It is observed by K.M. Panikkar that whatever be its historical authenticity, the Paraśurāma legend embodies some geographical and geological facts pertaining to ancient Kerala and that it is the most permanent and invariable factor of history.⁹

The consenses of opinion among scholars is that a substantial portion of Kerala must have been under water in ancient days, the Arabian sea itself having extended right up to the foot of the Western Ghats. The submerged area might have been thrown up from the sea as a result of the operation of volcanic or seismological factors. Geologists point out

5. Quoted by V. Rājarājavarma Rājā, *Keraliya Samskrta Sāhityacaritram*, Vol. II, pp. 374-384, Pub: Sree Sankaracharya Sanskrit University, Kalady (Kerala), 1997 (II edn).

6. Ed. by Sekharipuram Seshu Sastri Trichur, 1912.

7. Printed at Jnanasagaram Book Depot, Trichur, 1929.

8. *Keralotpatti* published from different places, also ed. by Rev. H. Gundert.

9. K.M. Panikkar, *A History of Kerala*, Annamalai Nagar, 1960.

that the many rivers originating from the Western Ghats might have brought down large quantities of silt while the ocean also deposited much sand on the shore. A vast stretch of land might have thus formed and thus the Paraśurāma tradition regarding the creation of Kerala from out of the sea must have sprung from the geological truth.

Brāhmaṇ predominance

It is held that the term 'Kerala' has its origin from 'Cheram' though it was formed at quite an early period since even from ancient times 'Kerala' is found in Sanskrit literature. Dr. H. Gundert, the author of the monumental Malayalam and English Dictionary¹⁰ observes that the word 'Keram' is the Canarese pronunciation of the word 'Cheram' and he describes "Keralam" as Cheram - the country between Gokarnam and Cumāri'.

It is held that the Paraśurāma legend was concocted at a certain period by interested parties with a view to popularising the theory of Brāhmaṇ predominance¹¹. The legend has it that Kerala was divided into 64 villages¹² over which Brāhmaṇs exerted authority. It is they who appointed rulers over various regions, to administer justice, subject to their tacit approval. The Śukasandeśa has explicitly mentioned this authority of the Brāhmaṇs in the administration of Kerala, as follows in stanza I. 63.¹³

Vācā yeśām bhavati nṛpatir nāyako rājyalakṣmyāḥ
grāmān ṣaṣṭim catura iha ye grāhyaceṣṭā nayanti
Śastre śastre'pi ca bhṛgūnibhaiśśaśvadubdhāsate yā
viprendraistair vipulamāṭhavaryāvalīśu sthalīśu

(This capital city shines with great Brāhmaṇs by whose words the king becomes the lord of Dame kingship; these Brāhmaṇs who are equal to Paraśurāma in the command of weapons as well as śāstras

10. *A Malayalam and English Dictionary*, by Rev. H. Gundert, Mangalore, 1872, p. 294.
11. A. Sreedhara Menon, *op. cit.* p.10.
12. See for a list 64 villages, commentary by Vatakkumkur Rājarājavarma on Śukasandeśa (Malayalam), Kamalalaya Book Depot, Trivandrum, 1958 p. 114.
13. *Ibid.* p. 112.

and who live in *sthalis* having rows of big houses, control the sixty four grāmas and are paragons of accepted activity" (translation by Dr. Geetha Pattabhiraman)¹⁴. Here the comparison with Paraśurāma speaks of the role played by the sage in the creation and Brāhmaṇisation of Kerala. Just as Agastya is credited with the reclamation of the desert lands extending for a thousand Yojanas to the south of the Vindhya mountain, Paraśurāma is celebrated as the creator of Kerala from the Western sea in the *Tretāyuga*, the second of the Hindu chronological cycles. It was he who was responsible for the colonisation of this newly won land. According to one legend, he imported Brāhmaṇs from the North, according to another, he invested the fishermen who inhabited the mountains near the sea with the dignity of Brāhmaṇs and asked them to wear the sacred thread which he made out of their fishing nets as a sign of attaining Brāhmaṇhood¹⁵. Whatever might be the truth of this Paraśurāma legend, two inferences which stand the test of geology and history may be made¹⁶.

1. Some parts of Kerala may be of later development than the rest of South India in the matter of geological formation.
2. The Āryan settlers who have come from outside Kerala must have been led by a warrior sage Paraśurāma. There are other accounts also giving credence to the story of Paraśurāma, bringing colonisers to Kerala. The colonisers must have arrived here at the early centuries of Christian Era, certainly before the fourth century. It is pointed out that many of the orthodox socio-religious rites followed by the Nampūtiri Brāhmaṇs of Kerala testify to the fact that they separated from the original stock at an early date before those rites underwent radical transformation in the North due to the impact of several factors. The saga of Āryan infiltration into Kerala has been graphically described in the anonymous works *Keralotpatti* and *Keralamāhātmyam* with a legendary halo surrounding the exploits of the incoming folk of superior racial extraction. Those who came

14. Śukasandeśa of Lakṣmidāsa - translated by Dr. Geetha Pattabhiraman (in her edition of the text), Higginbothams Ltd., Madras.
15. Jacobus Canter Visscher, *Letters from Malabar*, Letter 1, K.P. Padmanabha Menon. *History of Kerala*, Vol I. p.70.
16. K. Ramachandran Nair, *Early Manipravālam - A study*, Trivandrum, 1971, p. 33

to settle down in Kerala were mainly of the priestly class, and they could assert their intellectual superiority over the local population. In an effort to identify with them they adopted many of their customs and manners and mingled freely with them. They adopted the local fashion of the make-up of the hair, with the tuft on the top of the head besides adopting their mode of dress and native language. They allowed the younger members of the family to enter into exogamous matrimonial alliance with local women, while maintaining the pristine purity of the Āryan race by the stipulation that the eldest should marry endogamously only from their own caste. This resulted in a racial fusion between two distinct racial groups. The process was gradual but steady. An elaborate social organisation, giving due place to every unit of the local population in the pattern of *cāturvarṇya*, but much more elaborate and complicated was attempted. For over a thousand years the Nampūtiri formed the theocracy in Kerala. Ownership of land was organised on the feudal pattern, the Nampūtiri chieftains being vested with property rights, based upon some mythical authority, said to have been derived from Paraśurāma. Some of them became kings in certain localities. Sanskrit became the common vehicle for the propagation of ideas among the intelligentsia of the land, which included within its fold both Aryans and non-Āryans. This cultural diffusion, that took place in the soil of Kerala was unique in many respects, the like of which one rarely finds anywhere else in India.

The Brāhminic predominance is amply illustrated in the numerous references in the *Śāṅkarasmṛti* dealing with the ascendancy of the Nampūtiri *Janmis* - landlords - in Kerala. Under the *Janmi* system they could collect *Janmikaram* - the rent due to the land from the tenants. These naturalised Kerala Brāhmins introduced certain rules or code of conduct by name *anācāras* which can be classified as they pertain to: (1) cleanliness (2) social conduct (3) religious observance (4) stages in life - *āśramas* (5) women and (6) non-Brāhmins.

Bhārgavasmṛti – a non-existent text

It is said that the land of Kerala was created by Bhārgava-Paraśurāma. The sage is said to have formulated certain customs in

Kerala which are considered to be peculiar to that strip of land in the extreme south of India, though some of them are not actually at variance with what obtains in the rest of the country. Among these the observances called *anācāras* constitute a distinct group in themselves and they are sixty four in number. They are sometimes referred to as *Keralācāras*. These are enumerated in the fourth section of the twelfth chapter of *Śāṅkarasmṛti* alias *Laghudharmaprakāśikā*, a law book of uncertain date and unidentified authorship, but which declares itself to be based on the much larger *Bhārgavasmṛti* attributed to Paraśurāma of the Bhṛgu race.

This *Bhārgavasmṛti* is not found mentioned anywhere in the whole of Sanskrit literature except in the *Śāṅkarasmṛti*. No author of Smṛti text has quoted from this in their works as is vouchsafed by the historians of *Dharmaśāstra* like P.V. Kane and others. Stanzas 3 and 4 of the *Śāṅkarasmṛti* contain the references as follows.

Ālokya bhārgavāt prāptam
dharmaśāstram itastataḥ
vistareṇa viśidatsu
kr̥payā mandabuddhiṣu
prāyastadeva saṃkṣipya
kriyate mrdubhiḥ padaiḥ
Alpāksarair analpārthaḥ
pr̥thag etannibandhanam

In explaining these stanzas T.C. Parameswaran Müssatu (1867-1938) has observed that the present work is an epitome of a smṛti text called *Bhārgavasmṛti* authored by Paraśurāma which is considerably large. Koṭungallūr Kuññikkutṭan Tampurān (1805-1903) in his introduction to the edition¹⁷ in Malayalam characters has noted as follows. "Malayalis - the inhabitants of Kerala have certain peculiar customs and manners which differ from those of the people of the other parts of India. Tradition has it that *Bhārgavasmṛti* mentions these customs peculiar to Keralites. But such a work could not be traced at present in spite of diligent search. It is a matter of pity that the work remains

17. Ed. T.C. Parameswaran Müssatu, Bharatavilasam Press, Trichur, ME 1100 (AD. 1925) (In Malayalam Script).

untraced till now. *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* purported to be an epitome of the work which is supposed to contain thirty six chapters, out of which only the first twelve chapters have been unearthed. As such the present work is incomplete. Hence the attempt to publish the available portion of twelve chapters is laudable. The author of this *Śāṅkarasmṛti* is said to be (a writer called) Śaṅkara, the great monistic philosopher. It may seem strange that such a great personage has attempted to narrate the customs of Kerala, but one has to accept it since there is no other way".

Śāṅkarasmṛti alias *Laghudharmaprakāśikā*

The work itself mentions that the name is *Laghudharmaprakāśikā*, though at the end of every chapter there is the colophon "Śāṅkare dharmasāstre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām. Based on this the term *Śāṅkarasmṛti* is coined though nowhere else one finds such a name. The work opens with the stanza:

*Natvā dharmavido devān-
ṛṣīmśca paramān mahāḥ
Sāṁbaṇ Śivamanusmṛtya
śāṅkareṇa yatātmanā*

The writer goes on to state that the work forms an epitome of *Bhārgavasmṛti* which is a detailed account of the customs of Kerala. The words 'Śāṅkareṇa yatātmanā' - meaning 'Śaṅkara of ascetic disposition' are taken as suggestive of the name of the author. The word *yatātmanā* is taken as suggestive of the great philosopher of monism. This supposition has gained acceptance of a large number of historians of literature as well as traditionalists. The Malayalam commentator who first published the text along with his exposition has firmly asserted this view as follows in the beginning of his commentary.

"Śrimacchaṅkaraguruvara -
pādāṁbojātāmātramavalambya
tatsmṛti ṭikāmekām
karoti parameśvarah svabhāśāyām

Authorship of *Śāṅkarasmṛti*

Though the term implies that it is a composition of Śaṅkara, one is led to believe so mainly because of the statement 'Śāṅkareṇa yatātmanā' contained in the opening stanzas of the text.

There are two categories of writers who have expressed their opinion regarding the authorship. They may be referred to as traditionalists and modern writers. We may examine their views in this regard as follows.

Traditional view

1. The editor of the first publication, viz., T.C. Parameswaran Müssatu shares the traditional view. In fact he has stressed this point by composing a stanza in the beginning of his commentary quoted earlier. Herein he has explicitly admitted that it was Śaṅkara the monistic philosopher who is the author. Further in commenting the lines in the text, he has asserted this view.
2. Kuññikkutṭan Tampurān who has contributed a foreword to the publication has discussed the problem and concluded that one has to accept the traditional view since no other view holds good. The view is summarised as follows by K. Maheswaran Nair, in his introduction to the second publication (in Devanāgarī Script)¹⁸. There can be no dispute as regards the fact that the author of this *Śāṅkarasmṛti* is one Śaṅkara. It is generally well known among the people of Kerala that this Śaṅkara is the same Śri Śaṅkarācārya who originally is Śaṅkaran Nampūtiri of Kāppilli of Kālaṭi. Some may argue that it is absurd to hold that Śaṅkarācārya who left his native place on account of the various disturbances caused to him by the Nampūtiri Brāhmaṇas of Kerala and who was on tour of different distant places composed a work specifically for the use of the people of Kerala. But it does not warrant one to hold that the most benevolent Śaṅkarācārya turned against his own native people and their perennial benefits simply on account of the petty disturbances caused by them. Moreover, it is well known that,

18. Ed. K. Maheswaran Nair, Swantam Books, Trivandrum, 2001. pp 13-14.

Śaṅkarācārya ascended the throne of ultimate wisdom after composing works in all the *Śāstras*. There is every likelihood that he might have composed this work on *Dharmaśāstra* in those days. Therefore, unless otherwise established it is better to ascribe the authorship to Śri Śaṅkarācārya who commented on the *Brahmasūtras*.

3. Dr. C. Lalitha Kumari in her unpublished doctoral dissertation has summarised these views. She has ably narrated the views of Kuñnikuttan Tampurān in the above manner translating from the Malayalam introduction¹⁹. She notes that “the above mentioned scholar has also stated that though the present edition forming the first part of the treatise consists only of 12 chapters each of which being divided into four pādas, the complete work must have extended to 36 chapters”.
4. Vaṭakkumkūr Rājarājavarma Rājā, a historian of Kerala Sanskrit literature has stated that the work consists of 32 chapters as against 36 mentioned earlier. He too is inclined to follow the traditional view that Śri Śaṅkarācārya must have composed the work. Dealing with the views expressed by some modern historians he states that their arguments are weak and silly; as for instance, according to one such view the *Śaṅkarasmṛti* is a very recent text composed about fifty or sixty years back. This is rejected by the historian of Kerala Sanskrit literature pointing out the existence of several manuscripts of the work of *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* which were copied more than three hundred years back.²⁰ According to him there is nothing against supposing that the great Advaita preceptor wrote the work. Considering the whole problem in detail he concludes that “if at all Śri Śaṅkara is not credited with the authorship of *Śaṅkarasmṛti*, it does not take away the merit of the treatise. On the other hand the ascription of its authorship to the Advaita preceptor is in no way a disgrace or discredit to the great teacher. But one could not be absolutely certain regarding the as-

19. Dr. C. Lalitha Kumari, *Laghudharmaprakāśikā - a study* (unpublished doctoral thesis submitted to the University of Kerala, Trivandrum 1989).
 20. V. Rājarājavarma Rājā, *Keraḷiya Samskrta Sāhityacaritram*, Vol. I pp. 214-229 (II edn.) Trivandrum, 1964.

cription of the authorship to Śaṅkarācārya, especially since no authority could be found to maintain such a view.

5. Kānippayyūr Śaṅkaran Nampūtirippād, an authority on the life and customs of the *Brāhmins* of Kerala also subscribes to the traditional view that Śri Śaṅkarācārya must have been the author of *Śaṅkarasmṛti*. He holds the view that the basis for these customs and manners prevalent in Kerala was *Bhārgavasmṛti* authored by Bhārgava Paraśurāma, the legendary creator of Kerala.²¹
6. Keralotpatti/Keralacarita. At about the early decades of the seventeenth century AD, a new class of legendary literature began to take shape in different parts of Kerala, both in Sanskrit and in the vernacular. The authors, or rather compilers of these pseudo-historical writings, remain anonymous, though almost all of them ascribe the genesis of such literature to Paraśurāma and Śaṅkarācārya. The general title of these works is *Keralotpatti* - the history of the origin of Kerala.²² Such legendary accounts are also known under different names of a *Keralanāṭaka*, *Keralodbhava*, *Keralasadbhāva* and *Keralacarita*.²³ Most of these works are composed in Malayalam incorporating legendary and mythical accounts including the origin of Kerala at the hands of Paraśurāma, the regulations prescribed by Śri Śaṅkarācārya, the origin of different castes etc. The role played by Śaṅkarācārya is noted as the promulgator of the 64 *anācāras*.

The traditional view accepted by the above-mentioned writers maintains that Śri Śaṅkarācārya is the author of *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* also known as *Śaṅkarasmṛtiḥ*. Naturally the date of the work also has to be fixed with reference to his date which is between AD 788-820.

Kollam Era (also known as Malabar Era) was started from 15th August 825 AD. It is believed that the date was selected to commemorate the promulgation by Śaṅkarācārya, the great Vedantist,

21. *Kānippayyūr Śaṅkaran Nampūtiripad. Nampūtirimārūm Marumakkattāyavum* (in Malayalam on the matrimonial system of inheritance among Nampūtiri Brahmins), Panchangam Press, Kunnamkulam, 1961, pp.5-8.
 22. *Keralotpatti*, Mangalore, 1843; Ed. by Dr. C.A. Menon, University of Madras, Madras, 1953-
 23. *Keralacarita*, ed. K. Mahadeva Sastry, Government Press, Trivandrum, 1939.

of the 64 rules known as *Anācāras*²⁴. “One tradition in Malabar alleges that Śaṅkarācārya promulgated the *Anācāras* or irregular customs peculiar to Nampūtiri *Brāhmaṇas* at Kollam on 15th August 825 AD, the first day of the first year of Kollam Era. The tradition receives some colour from the chronogram marking the commencement of the Kollam Era viz;

“Ā⁰c/ā⁶r/y¹a/v⁴ā/ga³/bh⁴ed/y¹ā [0614341 = 1434160]

which means “Ācārya’s (Śaṅkarācāryā’s) word or law is unalterable or must not be changed”. The syllables represent figures as shown above and these written backwards give the age in days of the Kaliyuga on the first day of the first Kollam year. The tradition receives support from what is recorded in *Keralotpatti*. In short, if Śaṅkarācārya is accepted as the author of *Śāṅkarasmṛti*, the work must be assigned to his period, viz., the early half of the ninth century AD.

Modern view

1. K.P. Padmanabha Menon, the historian is doubtful regarding the traditional views even though he has discussed the same in some details²⁵. With a historical sense, he concludes as follows. “Anyhow the theory has a great deal of plausibility in it. But there is nothing to show that Śaṅkara is the author of the *Anācāras* or that he promulgated them on any particular day in any particular year or at a particular place. Much less is there anything to show any connection between the promulgation of the rules and the starting of the Era”.
2. Ullur S Parameswara Iyer, the prominent historian of Kerala literature has carefully studied the problem of the authorship of the work²⁶. According to him one can only hold the view that one Śaṅkaran Nampūtiri has composed the *Śāṅkarasmṛti* and that he was of a pious nature as is to be inferred from the appellation “*yatātmanā*”. The following points are raised by the historian in this regard.

24. K.P. Padmanabha Menon, *History of Kerala*, Vol. IV, p. 266 (Reprint), Delhi, 1986.

25. *Ibid.* p. 268.

26. *Kerala Sāhitya Caritram*, Vol. I, Trivandrum, 1957, pp. 104 - 105.

- Bhāgavasmṛti* purported to be the source of *Śāṅkarasmṛti* remains untraced.
- Neither *Bhāgavasmṛti* nor *Śāṅkarasmṛti* is cited as authorities by any other writers.
- Śaṅkara’s disciples do not mention these works in their commentaries, though some of them have dealt with social customs and manners.
- An ascetic of the stature of Śrī Śaṅkara is not likely to deal with the customs of the householders of Kerala and their aberrations.
- The usage of the word ‘Janmi’ in the sense of a landlord or owner of landed property is strange and not based on sound grammatical basis. The word used more than once in the text does not suit to the context.
- There are many ācāryas having the name of Śaṅkara. Payyūr Śaṅkaran Nampūtiri who flourished during the 14th century AD, was the disciple of Govindabhaṇḍagavatpāda. It is possible that this Śaṅkara might have composed the work dealing with the customs of Kerala.
- This Śaṅkara may be identified with his namesake who is the teacher of Parameswara I of Payyūr family of *Brāhmaṇas*²⁷.
- The same Śaṅkara is referred to as a revered teacher by Parameswara in the concluding stanzas of the *Samanoramāṇī* commentary on *Meghasandeśa* as follows.²⁸

*Mantrabṛāhmaṇasūtravīt kṛtamatiḥ
śāstre ca kaumārile,
kartā nyāyasamuccayasya kanikā -*

27. *Kerala Sāhitya Caritram*, Vol. II, Trivandrum, 1962, pp. 26-37.

28. *Meghasandeśa* with *Pradīpa*, *Vidyullatā* and *Sumanoramāṇī* commentaries, ed. by Dr. N.P. Unni, Bharatiya Vidya Prakashan, Delhi, 1987, p. 282.

vyākhyāprāṇetā kavīḥ
 Utpattiṁtvaghamarṣaṇapravarajād
 gauryāmr̥ṣerāptavān
 kartāsyāḥ parameśvara nataśirāḥ
 pūjye gurau śāṅkare

Thus Parameśwara Iyer has not only rejected the traditional view as untenable but also has put forward a new suggestion regarding the identity of the author of *Śāṅkarasmṛti*.

3. Vatakkumkūr Rājārājavarma Rājā who once held the view that Śāṅkarācārya must have been the author of *Śāṅkarasmṛti* has later on changed his position in the matter. He considers the possibility of Śāṅkaran Nampūtiri of Mahiṣamangalam (1494 - 1570 AD) who has to his credit many works on customs and expiatory rules being the author of *Śāṅkarasmṛti*²⁹. He has composed a work in Malayalam under the title 'Vyavahārasamudram' dealing with the customs of Kerala³⁰. In this work many expiatory rites like *Vṛddhiśrāddha* are prescribed for the benefit of the Nampūtiri householders.
4. Dr. K. Kunjunni Raja in his history of Kerala Sanskrit literature has expressed his view that *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* is wrongly attributed to the authorship of Śāṅkarācārya. He has not adduced any fresh evidence in this regard³¹.
5. Among the historians of Malayalam literature of Kerala, P. Govinda Pillai, the author of *Malayālabhāṣācaritam*³² and R. Narayana Panikkar, the author of the multi-volume history of literature have expressed their views³³ and have dealt with this topic. The former has simply stated that Śāṅkarācārya introduced the ācāras mentioned in the *Śāṅkarasmṛti* most probably based on traditional accounts. The latter goes to the extent of saying that it is

29. V. Rājārājavarma Rājā, *Keralasāhityacaritram - Carcayum Pūraṇavum* (in Malayalam) Kottayam, 1967, Vol. I, p. 183.
 30. Kāṇippayyūr Śāṅkaran Nampūtirippād, *op. cit.*, pp. 6 and 8; K.P. Padmanabha Menon, *op. cit.*, Vol. III, p.88.
 31. K. Kunjunni Raja, *Contribution of Kerala to Sanskrit literature*, Madras, 1958, p. 243.
 32. P. Govinda Pillai, *Malayālabhāṣācaritram*, Kottayam, 1960, p. 72.
 33. R. Narayana Panikkar, *Keralabhbhāṣāsāhityacaritram*, Trivandrum, 1943, Vol. I, pp. 154-155.

sinful to ascribe the authorship to Śri Śāṅkara. He states: "It is highly sinful to say that the revered Śāṅkarācārya who went all over India to spread his theory of monism tried to belittle his own people by introducing the customs peculiar to Kerala. It is against the tradition that Śāṅkara wanted to punish the people of Kerala."

6. According to one story Mahatma Gandhi procured a copy of *Śāṅkarasmṛti* and sent it to some scholars of Viśvabhārati at Bolapur³⁴ to ascertain its authenticity. The scholars remarked that it could not be a work of great Śāṅkarācārya. They pointed out that since the work maintaining rules of pollution for lower castes based on distance it could not have been composed by the philosopher who is the reputed author of *Manīṣapañcaka* which contains a clarion call against the observance of pollution and untouchability between man and man.
7. Dr. S. Venkita Subramania Iyer (1919-1984) a recent writer seems to agree with the views of Ullūr and other modern writers. Rṣiputra Parameśwara of Payyūr (14th century AD) could be author in all probability, according to him.

Authorship – Internal evidence

Let us examine whether there is any internal evidence regarding the identity of the author. Apparently the author does not give any indication in this respect. Still one could gather some information regarding his identity.

1. A Brāhmaṇ of the higher strata

The author must have been a Nampūtiri *Brāhmaṇ* of the higher strata since he has obviously studied all the Vedas. As such he was an *Ādhyātma* with the authority to study Vedas unlike the lower types called *Āśyāns*. His usage 'dvijābhāṣa (XII: 3. 16 states 'dvijābhāṣavadhuṭinām') is indicative of his own aristocracy. In the present instance he refers to *Brāhmaṇs* who receive gifts and per-

34. *Bhaṣāpoṣini* (Malayalam Periodical), No. 33, Kottayam, 1928-29, p. 42.

form Śrāddha ceremonies in the houses of Śūdras. His use of the term 'uttamavipra' in the line (v.2.23) -

"atratūttamaviprānāmeva pūrṇatayā ime" is also suggestive of his nobility. Here it is stated that all the sixteen customary rites are applicable only to Brāhmins of higher strata.

2. A Brāhmin of north Kerala

His reference to rivers like Kum̄bhavatī, Payasvinī and Nilā in the third quarter of the 12th chapter is indicative of his familiarity with the northern region. He treats Nilā with the same status of the Ganges.

3. A Brāhmin belonging to kṛṣṇayajurvedic sect

Among the Nampūtiris of Kerala there are two divisions based on their Vedas, such as Ṛgvedins and Yajurvedins. Of these the Ṛgvedins are mostly of the Āśvalāyana sect and they follow a manual for domestic rites called "Pakazhiyam Caṭaṇṇū"³⁵. Actually Kauśitakas and Āśvalāyanas are referred to here as Pakāliyanmār who follow the Āśvalāyanasūtra in their ritualistic tradition.

The prominent class among the Yajurvedins are Vādhūlakas and Baudhāyanas. There is a book entitled "Kriyāratnamālā, athavā kṛṣṇayajurvediya baudhāyana Caṭaṇṇū"³⁶. The author of Śāṅkarasmṛti has closely followed this manual in dealing with domestic rituals explained here. Various mantras referred to in brief could be traced to the above manual in most cases. Hence it is almost certain that the author must be a Baudhāyana. Further he has mentioned an item called Viṣṇubali after the Simanta. This is not done in the Ṛgvedic system. It is a feature of Baudhāyana (V.2.5a).

"Saṃskāro viṣṇubalyākhyah keśāmcinmāsi cāṣṭame"

Actually this is not an item included in the sixteen saṃskāras. This

35. Edited and Published from Panchangam Book Depot, Kunnamkulam, 6th edition. ME 1161/AD. 1986 (in Malayalam Characters).

36. Ed. by A.M. Krishna Sarma, Panchangam Book Depot, Kunnamkulam, 3rd edition, M.E. 1164/AD 1989 (in Malayalam characters).

is intended for the protection of the pregnancy and is performed by the Baudhāyana.

Reference to Baudhāyanīyasnāna (v. 2.16 a "krtvā baudhāyanasnānañ taddinam tūpavāsayet) also shows the adherence to Baudhāyana system. While performing the vow called 'śukrīya' in case there happens to be holidays necessitating the stoppage of Vedic learning, one should perform Baudhāyanīyasnāna and take a fast.³⁷

In the section called *Bhasmanirmāṇavidhi* (iv. 3.) numerous mantras are referred by *Anuvākas*. Most of these can be traced to the *Kriyāratnamālā* mentioned above. This also shows the prescriptions are according to *Kṛṣṇayajurveda*.

All these references suggest that the author was a follower of the Baudhāyana school of Nampūtiri Brāhmins who are Yajurvedins.

Brief contents of Laghudharmaprakāśikā

The work contains many customs and duties which could be termed as *Keralācāras*. It is clear that the author has collected his information from a living society in which he was an active member. Many of his statements find corroboration with the injunctions of the well known *Dharmaśāstrakāras* like Manu, Yājñavalkya, Viṣṇu, Śāṅkha and Vyāsa. But the author claims that his work is only an epitome of *Bhārgavasmṛti* which is mentioned every now and then as the authority of his statements. All through the text there are many injunctions supposed to have been given by Bhārgava Paraśurāma. The land itself is termed as *Bhārgavakṣetra* using several synonyms to the effect. It is not easy to collect the numerous references to Bhārgava in the treatise. The second stanza of the opening chapter itself contains the statement:

"Ālokya bhārgavāt prāptam dharmaśāstram itastataḥ"

The author wants to convey the idea that the whole content of the work is drawn from *Bhārgavasmṛti* which nobody else has seen. The

37. *Kriyāratnamālā*, op. cit., p. 79.

first chapter itself contains no less than seven references to the *Bhārgavasmṛti* as follows.

- a. *Sa tatsthāne'ñjalim kuryāditi bhārgavaśāsanam* (I.1.29b)
- b. *Sarve janmina etena vyākhyātā iti bhārgavaḥ* (I.2.8b)
- c. *Svakṣetre saṃgraham cakre viṣṇurdharmapatiḥ bhṛguḥ* (I.2.9a)
- d. *Iti janamavatāñ vṛttir bhārgaveṇa nirūpitā* (I.2.14b)
- e. *Iyāñ viśeṣa ākhyāto bhārgaveṇātra sōdaśāt* (I.3.11a)
- f. *Rśinā bhārgaveṇātra niṣiddhamiti hetunā* (I.3.26b)
- g. *Sarveṣu kaṇthe vipro'tra nāto'nya iti bhārgavaḥ* (I.3.33b)

This trend is followed up to the end of the treatise. For instance the last quarter of the twelfth and final chapter contains the following references.

- a. *Anācārāñ samāsena bhārgaveṇa pradarśitān* (XII.4.1b)
- b. *Anyatrācaraṇābhāvād anācārāñ bhṛgūdvahah* (XII.4.2b)
- c. *Bhārgaveṇa samāmnātā ye cānye kiñcidūnatāñ* (XII.4.27 b)

The extant work consists of twelve chapters called *Adhyāyas*, each of which is divided into four sections called *pādas* which are forty eight in number. The author has tried to present a systematic treatment of the subject in 12 chapters. His promise to deal with the rites and customs regarding the funeral ceremonies etc, in the second part of the work is yet to materialise. He has stated as follows in the last stanza of the work.

*Aurdhvadehikakarmāṇi śāvāśaucañca sūtakam
prakirṇasaṅgraham cāta ākhyāsyे bhāga uttare*

There is no evidence to show that he ever composed this part. The practices mentioned in the work show a definite bias towards the *Brāhmaṇa* community, whose social interests are always protected

citing Bhārgava's so-called injunctions. But they do not despise the other members of the social strata in anyway. In fact, there are numerous occasions when they had to seek cooperation from the members of the so-called lower castes. The work has detailed several such occasions.

Arrangement of the text

Laghudharmaprakāśikā consists of 12 chapters and each of the chapters contains 4 *pādas*. Together there are 12 chapters and 48 *pādas*. Chapters are called *Adhyāyas* and each quarter is called a *Pāda*. It is the editor who has provided chapter headings so as to indicate the contents of all the 48 sections. Altogether there are 1376½ stanzas which is half the size of *Manusmṛti* which has 2694 verses in its twelve chapters.

The present work is arranged as follows:

Adhyāyas	Pāda I	Pāda II	Pāda III	Pāda IV	Total verses
I	34	28½	34	44	140½
II	45	31½	32	20½	129
III	52½	22	24	17	115½
IV	42	37½	28	33½	141
V	27	24	27	20½	98½
VI	39	67	30	22½	158½
VII	30½	26½	25	22	104
VIII	36½	22	14½	14	87
IX	16½	30	42½	15	104
X	33	28½	29	15	105½
XI	27	23½	31	15	96½
XII	20½	28½	19	28½	96½
Total					1376½

Here it may be noted that one or two chapters contain half-verses also. The chapter headings provided by the editor and sub-headings may be shown as follows (in translation).

- I. 1. The origin of castes like *Brāhmaṇas* and their general duties.
- 2. Special duties of *Brāhmaṇas*; Duties of *Kṣatriyas* and others; Dignity of one's own duty.
- 3. The routines of *Brahmacārin*.
- II. 1. The study; Life of a householder; The *Sapinda* relationship.
- 2. Different views on *Sapinda* relationship.
- 3. Eight types of marriages; Test for selecting a bride-groom; Test for the selection of a bride.
- 4. Selection of the bride using lump of clay.
- III. 1. The procedure for marriage.
- 2. Proper rekindling of fire.
- 3. Expiatory rites for the loss of fire.
- 4. The merits of preserving the fire.
- IV. 1. Rules for daily bath.
- 2. Rules for morning and evening prayers; Rules for smearing ashes.
- 3. The rules for making sacred ashes.
- 4. Rules for collecting ashes; Daily routines.
- V. 1. Duties of the husband and wife; The sixteen purificatory rites.
- 2. The proper time for the sixteen customary rites.
- 3. The duties of *snātakas*; Duties of householders.

- 4. Expiations for receiving gifts.
- VI. 1. Five accidental killings and five expiatory oblations; Giving and receiving of gifts by the householder.
- 2. Virtues of having a son; Adoption in the matrilineal system.
- 3. Adoption in the patrilineal system.
- 4. Bringing up the child.
- VII. 1. Protection of the household property.
- 2. Protection of the domestic fire.
- 3. Pollution of fire.
- 4. Looking after the wife.
- VIII. 1. *Smārtavicāra* - Trial by a *Smārta Brāhmaṇin*.
- 2. Pollution to children
- 3. General duties of a householder.
- 4. Optional rites.
- IX. 1. Rules regarding *Vānaprastha* - the anchorite.
- 2. Rules for the Yogic practice.
- 3. Attainment of Yoga.
- 4. The other benefits of Yoga.
- X. 1. Rules of the ascetic order.
- 2. Royal duties.
- 3. Royal administration of justice.
- 4. Self-protection of the king.
- XI. 1. The duties of *Vaiśyas*.

2. Duties of Śūdras.
3. Customary observances like Ahimsā.
4. Food habits.

XII. 1. Proper conduct.

2. Duties of women..
3. Duties of women in menstruation.
4. The sixty four *anācāras*.

From the above account it may be seen that the work is a well arranged treatise dealing with the customs of Kerala some of which are peculiar to the land.

Smṛti literature

There are differences of opinion regarding the number smṛtis. It varies from twenty to a hundred or more according to different authorities. While some of them are available some are known only through citations in various commentaries and digests. Yājñavalkya has given a list of twenty authors who have composed Smṛti works as follows³⁸.

Manvatrivisnuhārīta
Yājñavalkyośano'ngirāḥ
Yamāpastambasamvarta
kātyāyanabṛhaspatī
Parāśaravāyāsaśārikha -
likhitā daksagautamau
Śatātapa vasiṣṭhaśca
dharmasāstra prayojakāḥ

38. *Yājñavalkyasmṛti*, ed. Narayanarama Acharya, Nag Publishers, Delhi, 1985, Ch. I, stanzas 4 and 5.

Aparārka mentions 36 smṛtis while Śāṅkha refers to 29 works. *Prayogapārijāta* and *Vaijayanti* mention 59 works. *Nirṇayasindhu* speaks of a hundred works of the kind. *Manusmṛti* is the oldest of all the smṛtis and its author Manu is said to be the son of Brahmā. Next in importance is *Yājñavalkyasmṛti* followed by *Parāśarasmṛti*, *Nāradasmṛti*, *Brahaspatismṛti*, *Kātyāyanasmṛti*, *Āngirasmṛti*, *Hāritasmṛti*, *Dakṣasmṛti*, *Vyāsasmṛti* and other treatises of considerable merit. It is noted that the Smṛti literature flourished well upto the 10th century AD and a number of authorities contributed substantially to enrich this branch of literature which has some contemporary relevance since they dealt with the rules governing the society. Even at present they have some historical value to say the least.

Śāṅkarasmṛti of Kerala

Laghudharmaprakāśikā satisfies the characteristics of a *Smṛti* or *Dharmasāstra*. In twelve chapters it deals with the origin of the four stages of life, the sixteen customary rites of purification, the duties of a king, the duties of women and allied topics. The work has drawn upon earlier works like *Manusmṛti* and *Yājñavalkyasmṛti*, though it does not quote stanza from them. The mode of punishment for adultery is novel in that a proper trial by authorities well-versed in Vedic lore is enjoined to establish the guilt beyond doubt. It has the approval of the king since the presence of his representative is a must for the trial called *Smārtavicāra* which was in vogue up to the beginning of the twentieth century AD³⁹.

The work contains several matters peculiar to the land of Kerala. Matrilineal system is one such feature. From the nature and contents it can be ascertained that it was composed later than the 12th century AD. The reference to the matrilineal system of inheritance is indicative of this aspect. This work seems to be a product of the 14th century AD as can be gleaned from the system of administration dealt with in the text. It is certain that the author was a Kerala *Brahmin* - Nampūtiri of high accomplishments since he shows his familiarity

39. See A.M.N. Chakiar, *The Last Smartha Vichara*, Trippunithura, Kerala, 1998.

with the daily rituals and customary rites. Though he maintains the superiority of the *Brāhmaṇ* class, he has given a rightful place in the society to the members of the other community also.

The peculiar customs enumerated here are a part of the life of the people of Kerala even at present. The work supplies a mine of information to a historian since it sheds much light on the history, culture, sociology and anthropology and allied fields.

Critical apparatus

The present attempt is to give a critical edition of *Śāṅkarasmṛtiḥ* alias *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* based on editions, transcripts and palm leaf manuscripts preserved in various libraries. The major repository of palm leaf manuscripts is the Kerala University Oriental Research Institute and Manuscripts Library, Karyavattam campus, Trivandrum, where there are seven palm leaf manuscripts which are at least 250 years old. The Madras Manuscripts Library also contains a few collected from Kerala. All the original manuscripts are on palm leaves using Malayalam script. The work was edited originally in Malayalam script with a commentary by the editor. A recent Devanāgarī edition based on the above is also made use of here giving them the value of manuscripts. The following are the details of the twelve materials used for the present edition. Here it has to be noted that the work being a comparatively later production there are no significant readings for the text except for regional peculiarities and calligraphical and haploglottal errors.

A – *Śāṅkarasmṛtiḥ* alias *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* edited by T.C. Parameswaran Mussatu (the initial standing for Tottathil Colakkara); in Malayalam script with his own Malayalam Commentary and an introduction by Kotūñnallūr Kuññikkutṭan Tampuran, printed at Bharatavilasam Press, Trichur, Malayalam Era 1100 corresponding to AD 1925, pp. 2+1+228. The editor does not mention any manuscript material. The Devanāgarī text is given in Malayalam script and as such contains some regional style of writing as noted hereunder. The Sanskrit word is often spelt in a different manner in Malayalam copies both on palm leaf manuscripts and in printed versions. In editing texts such regional

features are not at all noted as different readings. A few are noted as follows:

satkarman is written as *salkarman*
padmodbhava as *patmotbhava*
bhārgavāt as *bhārgavāl*
vasat as *vaṣal*; *kvacit* as *kvacil*
klptam as *knuptam*
kulotpanna as *kulolppanna*
gacchet as *gacset*; *guḍam* as *guḍam*
dirgha as *dirggha* (g + gh)
saṁnyāsa as *sanyāsa*

B – *Śāṅkarasmṛtiḥ athavā Laghudharmaprakāśikā*

ed. Dr. K. Maheswaran Nair, Swantham Books, Trivandrum, November 2001, p. 156. This is the first publication in Devanāgarī script. The editor states: “*Śāṅkarasmṛti* edited by T.C. Parameswaran Mussatu has been mainly relied on for this edition. Ms. No. 4150 D and L. 1283 have also been utilised for cross-checking” among variant readings based on the above manuscripts. Not a single reading is noted by the editor. The number given as 4150 is actually 4150 C of the Trivandrum manuscripts collection. There are several typographical errors in the text as also in the numbering of stanzas.

In addition to the above printed texts the following materials have also been used in the present publication: Madras Oriental Manuscripts Library contains three manuscripts of the work, though no worth-while variation in reading could be noticed. The three manuscripts are designated as C, D, and E and are described hereunder.

C – Ms. No. M.D. 16092

Palm leaves; Folios 227; Malayalam script, date not given; scribe unknown. Incomplete.

Begins with:

“*natvā sarvavido devān...*

Ends with:

śivasya ca vivarṇayet

extends upto the 8th stanza of the fourth pāda of the twelfth chapter.

D - Ms. No. M.D. 18742

Paper transcript in Devanāgarī Script. Begins in folio 61 (a). No. of pages 129, scribe unknown; date not given. Incomplete. Begins with:

natvā dharmavido devān

Ends with:

etāvanto hyanācārāḥ

Incomplete except for a few stanzas at the end.

E - Ms. No. 15715

Paper transcript. Devanāgarī Script; No. of pages 116. Incomplete. Almost the same as described under 16092. There is a transcript No. M.T. 7571 copied from a Palm leaf manuscript in Malayalam.

Trivandrum Manuscripts are mostly on palm leaves. There are seven and are designated here as F, G, H, I, J, K, and L. The ones which are complete begin with the usual statement '*Hariśrīgaṇapataye namah, avighnamasti*'.

F - Ms. No. 4150 C.

Palm leaves; Folios 87; 7 x 1 3/4 inches, Malayalam script; 10 lines per page; 30 letters per line; good handwriting. The date of transcription is given as M.E. 1070 equivalent to 1895 A.D. The ownership of the manuscript is noted as: Punathil Illam, Rāmapuram in Meenachal taluk of the former Travancore State. On the board it is written as "Śāṅkaradharma śāstram".

Begins with:

natvā dharmavido...

Ends with:

sāvāśaucam ca varjayet

complete except for 20 stanzas at the end.

G - Ms. No. C. 1283

Palm leaves, Folios 95; 1 3/4 x 8 3/4 inches; Malayalam script, legible handwriting, 9 lines per page; 30 letters per line, about 200 years old. Incomplete; worm eaten.

Begins with:

natvā dharmavido...

Ends with:

bhārgavena samāmnāta

which is the 27th stanza of the last *pāda* of the text.

The codex contains an anonymous work in 6 folios dealing with the creation of Kerala by sage Paraśurāma and the establishment of various customs and castes. It contains about 70 stanzas.

It begins as follows:

*Viryena bhārgavo rāmo dūrīkṛtyāmbhasām nidhim
gokarnakanyākṣetrāntam samudbhāvya śubhām kṣitīm
kṣetresmin bhūsuraśreṣṭhānāniya sthāpya sarvataḥ
devālayānśca nīrmāya rakṣārtham tatra tatra ca*

The work ends with:

*dvādaśāvāntarālikāḥ; aṣṭādaśa syuḥ śūdrāśca
śilpināḥ patītā daśa; nīcāḥ pṛthak ca catvāro
catusṣaṣṭiśca jātayah*

On the 8th leaf Śāṅkarasmṛti is begun with the usual invocation *Hariḥ śrī gaṇapataye namah* etc.

H - Ms. No. L 972

Palm leaves; Folios 74; Malayalam script; 1 3/4 x 9 1/2 inches, 9 lines per page; 34 letters per line slightly worm eaten; about 200 years old; complete.

There are no significant readings, other than scribal errors which are obvious.

I - Ms. No. 15266

Palm leaves; Folios 92; Malayalam script; 1 3/4 x 8 1/2 inches; 10 lines per page; 35 letters per line, worm eaten; complete:

Begins with:

natvā dharmavido...

Collected from Paliyam Estate Library, Cochin, 21.5.1933.

J - Ms. No. 8401

Palm leaves, Folios 129; Malayalam script 1 1/2 x 9 1/2 inches. 8 line per page. 30 letters per line 150 years old. Old and brittle.

Begins with:

natvā dharmavido...

Ends at:

Kālajāṁstu yathākālam

which is the 39th stanza of the first Pāda of the 8th chapter.
Collected from Ganapathi Bhattatiri, Tuyyattu Illam,
Nilesvaram in North Kerala.

K – Ms. No. 10740

Palm leaves; Folio 21. Malayalam script $1\frac{3}{4}$ x 19 inches, incomplete; extremely worm eaten; 12 lines per page and about 48 letters per line. Many of the folios are broken into two.

Collected from Suryanarayanan Namputirippad, Kanjirappilli Mana, Kakkūrkara, Tirumaradi, Muvattupuzha taluk of the former Travancore State.

L – Ms. No. 22346

Palm leaves; Folios 116; Malayalam script; 10 x 2 inches; 7 lines per page and 30 letters per line. Complete.

Collected from M. Divakaran Namputirippad, Paryyanampatta Mana, Ottappalam, Palghat. Collected in the year M.E. 1075/AD. 1900.

All palm leaf manuscripts are old. The characters are inscribed using a sharp stylus as is the practice in Kerala. Naturally there will be some characteristic features in the numbering of manuscripts such as 'na' (1), 'nna' (2), 'nya' (3), 'śkra' (4) etc; to denote the number of leaves which are noted only on the facing page. Instead of numerals certain specific alphabets are used. If there are 10 leaves noted it means that there are 10 leaves with text written on both sides making 20 pages in the modern concept. The size of the work is noted in *granthas* (a *grantha* standing for 32 letters, whether prose or verse).

SANSKRIT TEXT

ŚĀṅKARASMṛTIH

athavā

LAGHUDHARMAPRAKĀŚIKĀ

PRATHAMĀDHYĀYAH

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Brāhmaṇādivarṇānām utpattih; sādhāraṇadharmaśca]

natvā dharmavido devān ṛṣīmś ca paramam mahāḥ /
sāmbaram śivamanusmṛtya śāṅkareṇa yatātmanā¹ // 1

ālokya bhārgavāt praptam dharmaśāstram itastataḥ /
vistareṇa viśidatsu kṛpayā mandabuddhiṣu // 2

prāyastadeva saṃkṣipya kriyate mṛḍubhiḥ padaiḥ /
alpākṣarair analpārthaiḥ pṛthag etannibandhanam² // 3

varṇānām āśramānām ca dharme dipa ivāparah /
anavadyam satām nāmnā³ laghudharmaprakaśikā // 4

brāhmaṇaḥ kṣatriyo vaiśyaḥ śūdraśceti svayambhuvah /
catvāro mukhabhūrūpadbhyo varṇāḥ purā'bhavan / 5

ataste prākṛtā nāma prakṛtiḥ kāraṇam yataḥ /
vaikṛtā api vakṣyante saṅkīrṇā nāma saṅkarāt // 6

1. C E F mayālmanā.

2. A B nibandhanā.

3. B H L nāma.

sarve te vikṛtā dharme sa dharmo yatra vaidikī /
pravartanā syāt kṣemāya so'pratidvandvitām gataḥ // 7

adharma' sya pratidvandvī yasmācchrautani vartanam /
dharmādharmāviti jñātvā dharmavān bhavati dhruvam // 8

āśramo brahma caryādir yena tu brahma cāriṇaḥ /
gṛhasthāśca vanasthāśca bhikṣavaścetyasau bhidā // 9

prthagvesaḥ prthagdharmaḥ prthagannāśca te smṛtāḥ /
varṇasādhāraṇān dharmān ata ūrdhvam nibodhata // 10

aviśeṣeṇa codyante manusyā yatra yatra saḥ /
sādhāraṇatvād varṇānām dharmassādhāraṇo mataḥ // 11

kṣamā satyam tapaḥ śaucam ahimsā steyavarjanam /
apāruṣyam apaiśūnyam alobhitvam adambhatā // 12

anabhidhyānahaṃkāraḥ sāmyamārdrāntaraṅgatā⁴ /
vibhave sati dānañcetyevam tasya tu saṅgrahaḥ // 13

yathā hi paramo dharmo devānām dama ucyate /
yatha dayā' surānāñca⁵ tathā dānam nṛṇām iha // 14

adhyūṣur brahma caryēṇa devāsuranārāstataḥ /
sr̥ṣṭamātrā vidhātāram praṣṭukāmāḥ purā kila // 15

prādurbhūtassa taih prṣṭaḥ kinnah kṛtyamiti kṣaṇam /
dhyātvā tān ātmajān āha sparśe'ṣṭādaśamakṣaram // 16

trivāram atha yūyam me samānā hi stha putrakāḥ /
samānam upadiṣṭam tadiṣṭam ityavadacca tān // 17

damyatām iti tad devā dayadhvam iti dānavāḥ /
dīyatām iti martyāśca vyācakṣata yathāruci // 18

4. **B** **F** ārdrānurāṅgatā.
5. **B** **D** dayā surānām.

atha tanāha he devā damo dharmo'stu vaḥ paraḥ /
he'śurā vo dayā dānam he martyā va iti prabhuḥ // 19

tasmād dānam manusyānām sarveśām dharma uttamam /
yathāśaktyanutiṣṭhamstacchokāmstarati dustarān // 20

pretya lokānavāpnoti ratnapuṣṭimanoharān /
durlabhaḥ martyalokeṣu kāmān api ca vindate // 21

brahmakṣatraviśām dharmastapo vedānupālanam /
sādhāraṇaḥ sahātithyavaiśvadevāgnihotram // 22

samantrasamskriyādye syād api cānyatra dr̥syate /
rāmakṣetre tu nāstyanye bhāgineyā hi dāyināḥ // 23

abrāhmaṇānām prāyena tasmād dharmo vibhidhyate /
vakṣyante copariṣṭha⁶ sa sarvaśceha khalu kvacit // 24

sarahaṣyam dhanurvedagrahaṇam vīprabhūbhūjoh /
smṛtassādhāraṇo dharmo gopathādhyayanam tathā // 25

brāhmaṇorujayoḥ pātho bhūsūktasyobhayoṣamāḥ /
goṣṭhaśayyāvratam tadvat kuśidena ca vartanam // 26

vāsanivārakapreṣya⁷ vākyasyoccāraṇam mithaḥ /
paurvāparyena tulyo'yaṁ dharmo bhūdevaśūdrayoh // 27

bāhujorujavarṇānām bhūdevē'pi kaniyasi /
āgate sadṛśo dharmo pratyutthānābhivādane // 28

rāmakṣetre tu śūdrasya nābhivāda iti sthitih /
sa tatsthāne'ñjaliṁ kuryāditi bhārgavaśāsanam // 29

bāhujorujayordharma strikarmapariniṣṭhitah /
anyatra bhārgavakṣetrāt sādhāraṇa iti smṛtāḥ // 30

6. **A** **B** upariṣṭā.
7. **B** **H** **J** prekṣya.

bahujāṅghrijajayordharmastyāgo vaiklabyato vinā /
prāṇānām brāhmaṇasyārthe sādhāraṇa udāhṛtah // 31

ūrujāṅghrijajayor dūrvālavanam kṣitivardhanam /
prāṇatyāgo gavārthe ca dharmassādharmaṇastrikam // 32

mukhajorujavarnānām sahanam bāhujāgasām /
sādhāraṇam vidurdharmam dirghavairānavasthayā // 33

iti sādhāraṇāḥ kecid varṇadharmaṁ nirūpitāḥ /
śeṣānnirūpayiṣyāmastaṭra tatra yathāntaram // 34

iti prathamasyādhyāyasya prathamaḥ pādaḥ

ATHA DVITĪYAH PĀDAH

[Brāhmaṇānām višeṣadharmaḥ]

adhyādhyāpane dānādāne yajanayājane⁸ /
trīṇi dvikāni vipreṣu niyatāni svayambhuvā // 1

kṣatresvadhyayanam dānam yajanañca prajāpatih /
saprajāpālanam trīṇi dharmāṇi nidadhau purā // 2

gorakṣayā ca vaiśyeṣu tāni trīṇīti cikṣipe /
śūdresu dvijaśuśrūṣām dānam śaktau mudanvitam // 3

dvau dharmau prathamam dhātrā niyatau sampracakṣate /
ṛtāmr̥tābhyaṁ⁹ bhūdevo jīvedatha mr̥tena vā // 4

pramṛtenāthavā jīvedatha satyānṛtena vā /
ṛtamuñccham sīlañcāhuramṛtam yadayācītam // 5

8. A K jayana.

9. A C *Commentary quotes a similar view as:*

ṛtāmr̥tābhyaṁjiveta mr̥tena pramṛtena vā /
satyānṛtābhyaṁnapi vā na śavṛtyā kathaficana //

yācīñacaryam mṛtam tatra pramṛtam¹⁰ karṣanam matam /
satyānṛtantu vāñijyam teṣāmuñcchasilam mahat // 6

amṛtañca kramādanyad dvayam nindyam pracaksate /
janmino yadi bhūdevā janmopagrahanāt kvacit // 7

āgatena ca jīveyur janmabhogena karṣakāt /
sarve janmina etena vyākhyātā iti bhārgavah // 8

svakṣetre saṅgraham cakre viṣṇur dharmapatirbhrguh¹¹ /
lajjate bhartsyate tena viprah kāmī śamocitah // 9

praśamapartipannair ityucyate bhūpratigrahāt /
jalmeti¹² varṇavyātyāsāt tatsambandhena sā cā bhūḥ // 10

janmetyākhyāyate tasya svāmitvañca tadāśrayam /
agnigurvatipreṣṭhabhikṣuśiṣṭena bhūsurāḥ // 11

jīvitvā janmabhogena na śideyuḥ kavacid dhruvam /
tanḍulān muṣṭibhiḥ ṣadbhīḥ pacejjyeṣṭho gṛhī gṛhe // 12

agnigurvatipreṣṭhabhikṣubhyo muṣṭipañcakam /
vibhajyaikenā bibhṛyād ātmānam gṛhiṇam sutān // 13

dāsān dāsimśca govatsān bhrātṛn bhrātṛpriyānapi /
iti janmavatām vṛttir bhārgavena nirūpitā // 14

evam vartana āpnoti sa śarmeha paratra ca /

[Kṣatriyādīnām dharmāḥ]

kṣatriyo balinā jived rakṣannavahitaḥ prajāḥ // 15

āraṇyakaiśca rājyasthairathavā vikrameṇa ca /
gobhiḥ krṣyā ca varteta vāñijyenāthavorujah // 16

10. D F pramṛtam; E anṛtam.

11. E F prabhuḥ.

12. A *Commentator states the word is from the root 'la'* meaning "shyness".

śūdro dāsyena sarveśām śilpair vā sakalairapi /
janmideyāvaśiṣṭena vṛṣalo halakarṣaṇaḥ // 17

netaro bhārgavakṣetre kṛṣyā jīved anāpadi /
jaghanyo nottamām vṛttimātiṣṭhediha kaścana // 18

āpadyapi tu seveta śreṣṭho vṛttim anantarām /

[Svadharmaṁhātmyam]

vipro vedānyathādhīte tathaivādhyāpayecca tān // 19

adhyāpanānna lipseta vṛttim āpadgatopī san /
bahu na¹³ pratigr̥hṇīyat kāmyamāpadi tu kvacit // 20

nātāpadyapi kurvita niśiddhasya pratigraham /
susvādhyāyarato nityamakurvan vedavikrayam // 21

niśiddhanna ca gr̥hṇāno vipro jvalati vahnivat /
kurvan kṣatrah kṣatatrāṇam nātītikṣṇo na vā mrduḥ // 22

karmasākṣi nṛnām śāśvad dharme saṁsthāpayet prajāḥ /
evamvrataḥ sadā rājā gobrāhmaṇahite rataḥ // 23

śaranāgatam atyaktvā lokeṣu na vigiyate /
kīrtiñca samyagāpnoti lokān kāmāṁśca vindate // 24

pretya divyān avāpnoti lokān śokavivarjītān /
dvāvapryanyau yathāśāstram svadharmaṇiṣṭhayā // 25

dustarāṁstarataḥ śokān lokayorubhayorapi /
ucchṛṇikhalasya martyasya dharmaśātravyatikramāt // 26

nirayesu bhaved vāśo duryaśācātidiuhsahām /
taṁśād dharmān samanicchet kṣemārthī satatām janāḥ // 27

dharma eva mahān bandhuḥ samsāret' rātīdāruṇe /
pratīvarṇam sa saṁkṣepānniyataḥ kathito mayā // 28

vistareṇopariṣṭhācca¹⁴ vakṣyate prāyaśah khilam // 28½
iti prathamasyādhyāyasya dvitīyah pādah

ATHA TRTĪYAH PĀDAH

[Brahmacaryāśramaniṣṭhāḥ]

brāhmaṇaḥ kṣatriyo vaiśya iti tatra dvijātayah /
trayo jñeyā yadeteṣām dve jāti janmanī viduḥ // 1

ubhayor janmanorekam laukikam yannṛṇām matam /
anyattūpanayanam prāhuriti te'mi dvijā iti // 2

saṁskārair karṇavedhāntaissamantrair vidhivat kṛtaih /
enaso dvividhāt putramuddhṛtyopanayed dvijah // 3

pitānya evācāryo vā vidyābhijanaśammataḥ /
saṁāhitamanāḥ kāle svasvagrhyoktavartmanā // 4

garbhāṣṭamādiśvabdeṣu sumuhūrte mukhodbhavam /
brahmavarcasakāmaśced tamabde garbhaṣṭhake // 5

garbhādekādaśādyeṣu vatsareṣu viśām patīm /
yadi vikramakāmaṣṭam vatsare garbhasaptame // 6

garbhato dvādaśādyeṣu vatsareśūrūṣaṁbhavam /
navame yadi punyārthī tānāhur brahmacāriṇah // 7

āśodaśānna sāvitri brāhmaṇān ativartate /
ādvāvīmśānnpānabdācaturviṁśakād viśāḥ // 8

13. A E bahunna.

14. A B ṣṭācca.

akṛtopanayāssarve tatrāpyete taduttaram /
sāvitripatitāssadbhir garhitāśca bahiskṛtāḥ // 9

vrātyā nāma syurakṛte vrātyastome yathāvidhi /
ityartham ṣṭyah prāhur ito'nyatra sa ceṣyate // 10

iyān višeṣa ākhyāto bhārgavenātra ṣoḍāśāt /
ūrdhavam na sūtralābho'sti sūtrinām te patanti ca // 11

vrātyastomavidhānena sāvityāḥ pratyupāgamaṇ /
nāśāsta ityanācāro rāmakṣetra iti sthitih // 12

na jaṭām bhārgavakṣetre bibhṛyāt saṃskṛto vatuh /
syādanayatra tu muṇḍo vā jaṭilo vā śikhādharaḥ // 13

keśaprārambhataḥ phālādūrdhvam̄tu caturaṅgulam /
tyaktvā daiśvīm śikhāmāhuścaturaṅgulavistṛtīm // 14

tāvati meva paīśācīmāsuriñca tataḥ kramāt /
mānuṣye dve lalātasya prāntayorubhayoh kṛte // 15

dakṣineṣu śikhā¹⁵ daiśvī keraleṣu na cetarā /
uttareṣu tu paīśācī netarā iti bhārgavah // 16

avidhānāt parityajya sampradāyāgatām śikhām /
vahannapyatathābhūtām dvijāḥ pātītyam ṣcchati // 17

vipraḥ paridadhītaiṣām carma kārṣṇāmapavraṇām /
rauravam kṣatriyo bāstam vaiśyo vāsāmsi vā trayāḥ // 18

vāsastu vipraḥ kāṣāyam māñjishtham avanīpatih /
hāridram ūrujo naitadiṣyate rāmabhūmiṣu // 19

15. A quotes an anonymous smṛti text as follows:

“śikhā puṇḍrañca sūtrām ca svakulācārāmeva ca /
pūrvairācarītaṁ kuryād anyathā patito bhavet”
iti smṛtyantaram.

katiśūtram ca kaupinām upavītam ca sarvadā /
dhārayeyustrayopye te mekhālām kṛṣṇacarma ca // 20

kārpāsatantubhīḥ kṛptam katiśūtramarāñjītam /
ekagrānthaḥ dvijātīnām catuṣpāśam praśasyate // 21

kaupināñca tathā tantu sarvataḥ pucchamīṣyate /
atiryag dirghavat prsthānivīṣṭam brahmacāriṇām // 22

upavītam tu raktam vā kāṣāyādi yathākramam /
athavā dhavalam teṣām kṛtam kārpāsatantubhīḥ // 23

kāṣāyam śasyate tantu viprasya praśamārthinaḥ /
rājñastūtsāhākāmasya śastam māñjishthameva tat // 24

hāridram eva tat śastam vaiśyasya tu gavārthinaḥ /
yathācāram ca sarveṣām sarvato nābhīsammītam // 25

upavītam akārpāsakṛtam kasyāpi neṣyate /
ṛṣīnā bhārgavenātra niṣiddham iti hetunā // 26

bhāgineyanimittaṇa viprādanyatra vastutah /
dharmabhedasya satvepi viprasāmyam tu sūtrinām¹⁶ // 27

yathā pālāśa evātra sarveṣām brahmacāriṇām /
daṇḍastathopavītam ca kārpāṣam iti bhārgavah // 28

saṃpradāyāgataṁ daṇḍamanyūnānatirekiṇā /
svasva pramāṇat gṛhṇiyussarvepi brahmacāriṇah // 29

keśasammitam atrāpi pālāśam vipra udvahet /
nātīdīghastato'nyeṣām nātīhrasvaśca śasyate // 30

na caite bibhṛyurdaṇḍamagnidagdham kṣatātvacām /
nistvacām vā bhṛṣṭasthūlam antaḥkīṭamastakam // 31

16. A quotes a similar view in commentary
syād vipravat sūtrīṇām.

anekāgrañca vakrañca tathāsprśyajanāhṛtaḥ /
rikta parvāśtamicchinnam sprṣṭañcāmedhyavastubhiḥ // 32

dhārayet svarṇarudrākṣe sūtreṇaikena karmasu /
sarveṣu kanṭhe vipro' tra nāto' nya iti bhārgavaḥ // 33

snātvā sūryam upasthāya havyavāhām paritya ca /
āhṛtya bhaikṣamaśniyādācāryasyābhyanujñayā // 34

iti prathamasyādhyāyasya trītyaḥ pādaḥ

ATHA ĆATURTHAH PĀDAḥ

[Adhyayanam guruśuśrūṣādiśca]

dvijatvam itthām samprāpya sarve te'nyatra dharmataḥ /
śrutiṁtipurāṇānām jāyante' adhyayanakṣamāḥ // 1

atropaṇito bhūdeva eko' dhyayanamarhati /
vedabāhyāstato' nye tu vipro gurukule vaset // 2

puṇye' hni gurुṇādiṣṭah samantrāhutipūrvakam /
smṛtvā prāṇavagāyatrāvadhītīm prārabheta ca // 3

śaucācārāvabodhārthām dharmaśāstrām tu vedataḥ /
prāgeva copadeṣṭavyam gurुṇā brahma cāriṇe // 4

adhyetavyañca tenaitadaवायम punar anyathā /
śaucācāraparibhraṣṭo bhaved dharmaparāñmukhaḥ // 5

guror adhitya dharmārthām śāstrām sarvamatandritaḥ /
tatra drṣṭāni karmāni kālānuṣṇāmācaren // 6

karmabhyāḥ pratiṣiddhebhyo nivarteta ca sarvadā /
uṣitvaiवाम adhīyāno jvalat�āmnāyam agnivat // 7

ācāryā sthavirāścābhivādyāstena yathāvidhi /
nānyābhivādanam kuryād ācāryasyājñayā vinā // 8

yathākālaḥ guroḥ pādau gr̄hṇīyād apracoditaḥ /
vyat�astastāḥ savyena savyamanyena cānyakam // 9

abhvādyā guroḥ pādāvadhyetavyam tadājñayā /
viramecca tathā kuryād virataścābhivandanam // 10

yena yena sa santuṣyet tattat karma samācaren /
nākāryam iti manyeta kiñcīt karma yadi priyam // 11

aniṣṭebhyo nivarteta sutarām cāvadhānataḥ /
pratyakṣañca parokṣañca tulyām bahumatim vahet // 12

ekākṣarasya dātāraḥ api nindanti ye gurum /
na teṣām sampratiṣṭhāti kumbhipākam vrajanti ca // 13

nāvakṣipto' pi vibrūyānna gacchet prahṛto' pi san /
adhyāpanārthe tatra svān prāṇapi samarpayet // 14

uttiṣṭhēd gurumālokya praviśantam abhvrajet /
antike tamupasthāya puraskurvan praveśayet // 15

abhyupetya ca tiṣṭhantam bhāṣeta vinayānvitah /
tamupasthita āśinam vyajanenopavijayet // 16

śayānaḥ prāṇato gacchan gacchanta manupṛṣṭhataḥ /
dhāvan dhāvantamāśadya prāṇmukhaśca parāñmukhaḥ // 17

abhikrudhyantamārādhyā prārthanābhiḥ prasādayet /
vaḍet svenaiva vaktavyam śanakair vaca¹⁷ āśu vā // 18

dūrād āyāntamālālokya pratyuttiṣṭhet sadā gurum /
avidhānena tasyāgre nāsita ca bṛhadvrataḥ // 19

17. B H varam.

na tasya kevalam nāma brūyāt tam gamanādibhiḥ /
ceṣṭābhīrathavā vācā nānukuryāt kadācana // 20

yatretarasmānnindāsyā parivādo’pi vā bhavet /
na tatra tiṣṭhede katra varjayēcca sahāsanam // 21

anyatra nāvō’nyatrāśmaphalakāt śakaṭādapi /
āsine nica āśināḥ svāśinasyājñaya guroḥ // 22

adhaḥśāyī sadaiva syāt prāṇi nidrām na bhajed guroḥ /
uttiṣṭhet pūrvamevāsmād apramattah smaran vidhīm // 23

guruval vṛttimātiṣṭhēdāsēduṣi guror gurau¹⁸ /
tathaiva guruputre ca prāyo vṛttim samāśrayet // 24

na pādāvupgrhṇīyānnocchiṣṭam tasya bhakṣayet /
mātṛvad gurudāreṣu vartetāvahitah sadā // 25

evamvṛtto yathākālasnāyī sandhyām samācaran /
pratyahām sāgnikāryah syād adhītī bhaikṣabhojanah // 26

āmadhyāhnād adhītyārkamupasthāya¹⁹ tataḥ param /
danḍī bhiksāñcarennityam guroradyadānūjñayā // 27

bhuñjīta kadalīpatre vāmenālabhya pāṇinā /
kuṇḍikāsrāvitam cāmbhaḥ pibedanyena nātmanā // 28

na kulatthān na vā māṣān na rasonam na gr̥ijanam /
na niryāṣān na ca kṣārān na śākam śaugravam tathā // 29

na nālikerajam tailam na ca pakvam dravoṣmaṇā /
na payo guļasammiṣram na lājāṁstāmrabhājane // 30

18. A quotes (commentary)

guror gurau sannihite guruvadvṛttimācaren
daivatam hi gurustasya pūjyāḥ kasmānna pūjyate.

19. A D tyarkam.

na varṇadrṣṭamāśniyānna ca kālānusārikām /
na śabdadrṣṭam ca tathā pratyakṣalavaṇam tyajet // 31

na māksikām pibennāmbu guļānāgaramiśritam /
na rasālām rasam nekṣoramedhyamakhilam tyajet // 32

maunī bhuñjīta ced brūyād brūyāttatt samṣkr̥taiḥ padaiḥ /
nāntarā visr̥jet patraṇī ālabdhām vāmapāṇinā // 33

na kuryāt kiñciducchiṣṭamūrdhvamantyāmbupānataḥ /
patrasya sparśanam kuryāt nātimātrāśano bhavet // 34

na kurvīta divāsvapnam kṛtvā tu snānam ācaren /
kūpakānna plavedapsu nārohedvṛkṣahastinā // 35

praviśenna vinā dāṇḍam deśād deśam na vāsasā /
pāśikṛtaśikhī syācca tripuṇḍram dhārayeta ca // 36

stragvilepanatāmbūladhūmālāṅkāra darpanam /
añjanodvarttanāślilaparīvādāmīśca²⁰ varjayet // 37

akāle nārkamīkṣeta śayitānyena no saha /
na paśyēnmithunībhūtān prāṇināḥ svānārīniva // 38

na striyā saha sallāpamapi kuryānna nartanam /
na ca gitam na vā vādyam na ca vaktranakhādibhiḥ // 39

ālasyamanṛtam himsām yacca vā nābhinandati /
svōpadhyāyastadapyeṣa yatnena parivarjayet // 40

hitvā kālamanadhyāyamadhyetavyañca sarvadā /
ṛte devotsavād brahma sāṅgam sannihitasthale // 41

evam yaścarati brahma caryavratamatandritah /
sandhyāsu cāgnau jāgrat sa divyān lokānavāpnuyāt // 42

20. B H añjanodvārtana.

kāmato retasāḥ sekam vratasthasya dvijanmanah /
vratasyātikramam prāhustam prayatnena varjajet // 43

na lumpecca vratam kiñcidapi cetyuditā sthitih /
prāya ḍyāśramasthasya yatra brahmāvatiṣṭhate // 44

iti śāṅkare dharmāśāstre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām
prathamsyādhyāyasya caturthah pādah /
prathamādhyāyah samāptah /

DVITĪYO'DHĀYAH

PRATHAMAḤ PĀDAH

[Adhyayanam]

sākalyena samāśritya dharmān svānāgamoditān /
brahmaśārī cared vedāṁścaturastrinubhau tu vā // 1

ekam tu vā yathāśakti sahāṅgair dharmāśastravit /
vākovākyādikam cānyadeśa dharmo mahattamah // 2

tapoyajñavratādinām sarveśāñca sukarmaṇām /
prāṇadām vedamevāhustasmāttam na parityajet // 3

dvijanmā ya ḥcodhīte sa tarpayati devatāḥ /
pitṛṁśca madhudugdhābhyaṁ madhvājyābhyaṁapi kramāt // 4

yo'nvaham śaktito'dhite yajūṁsi sa ghṛtāṁṛtaiḥ /
tarpayatyamarān sarvān pitṛṁśca madhunā tathā // 5

yena sāmāni giyante yathāśakti dine dine /
so'marān somasarpibhyaṁ pitṛṁśca madhusarpiṣā // 6

yah pratyahamatharvāṇamadhīte śaktito dvijah /
medah sa datte devebhyaḥ pitṛbhyo madhusarpiṣi // 7

vākovākyam purāṇāni nārāśamsiśca gāthikāḥ /
itiḥāśāmśca yo'dhite vaidyakādīni cānvaham // 8

śaktitassa madhukṣiramāṁsaudanaghrtaissurān /
pitṛṁśca madhusarpibhyaṁ sarvāṁstarpayatī dhruvam // 9

sarvakāmapradānena ṣṭptāstam tarpayanti te /
evam vidvānadhitī syādāmnāyādiṣu śaktitah // 10

sarveśāṁ adhvarāñāṁ yat tapaso yatparasya ca /
tat phalam sarvam āpnoti nityam svādhyāyavān dvijah // 11

naiṣṭhikastu guroreva brahmacāryantike vaset /
tadabhaṁ tu tatsūnor yāvadāyur dhṛtavrataḥ // 12

dharmeñānena samsādhyā śarīram samyatendriyah /
brāhmaṁ lokam avāpnoti sa punar neha jāyate // 13

vedam vratān vāthānyastu pāram nītvobhayañca vā /
gurave daksīñāṁ datvā snāyacca tadanujñayā // 14

atha snātaka eva syād yāvajjīvam gr̄ham vrajet /
vanam vā jātanirvedah pravrajed vā dvijottamah // 15

[Gr̄hasthāśramasvīkārah]

eka eva gr̄ham gacchejjyeṣṭhaputro na cetarah /
bhrātr̄ṣvekasya putreṇa sarve te syur hi putrinah // 16

sambhāvyamāne cāmuṣminnaputra itaropi tat /
prāptum arhati dharmeṇa rāmakṣetra iyam sthitih // 17

gr̄ham gamiṣyan viprastu mrgayetātmanah samāṁ /
kanyāṁ¹ vā rohiṇīṁ gaurīṁ athavā na ca madhyamāṁ // 18

stri tu dr̄ṣṭarajaskāpi rāmakṣetre na duṣyati /
iti vā bhārgavādeśānmadhyamāṁ nānyapūrvikāṁ // 19

kalyāṁ śilavatīṁ valgubhāṣīṇīṁ sasahodarāṁ /
asapiṇḍāṁ ca suṣronīmasamānāṛṣagotrajāṁ // 20

1. A Commentator quotes Yamasṛti to substantiate this view.

aṣṭavarṣā bhaved gaurī navavarṣā tu rohiṇī /
daśavarṣā bhavet kanyā ata ūrdhvāṇ rajasvalā //
He also quotes the puranic view as:
yāvanna lajītāṅgāni kanyā puruṣa sannidhau
yonyādīni nigūheta tāvad bhavati kanyakā.

[Sapiṇḍavibhāgah]

athābhidihiyate kācit sāpiṇḍyaprakriyā laghu /
yad vijñānena sāpiṇḍyam syāt sarvairapi sugraham // 21

yasmāt puṁsa ubhe śākhe santānasyāgrajanmanah /
syātām tad dvayajātānāṁ sa tu kūṭastha ucyate // 22

jātasya puruṣasyātra kūṭasthasya tu saptamāt /
tāvatā viprakṛṣṭā tu kanyā mukhyatamā smṛtā // 23

yadyasau bhinnnagotrah syāt kūṭastho māṭrābandhavah /
tasmāt ṣaṣṭhasya ṣaṣṭhi ca kanyā mukhyatamā smṛtā // 24

kūṭasthasya varasyāpi gotrabhedo'ntarā na cet /
varasyāya sa kūṭasthah pitṛbandhuriti smṛtah // 25

pitṛbandhor varasyāpi saptamasya ca saptamī /
māṭrābandhostu mukhyāsau pañcamasya tu pañcamī // 26

pañcamasya varasyāhuḥ pitṛbandhostu pañcamī /
madhyamāṁ āpadi grāhyāmeke dharmavicasaṇāḥ // 27

sāmarthyādarthavādasya śrutivākyasya sammatā /
māṭrābandhoścaturthica vedyādyāḥ ihottamā // 28

kūṭasthāt pañcamasya strīm caturthimadhamāṁ viduh /
pañcamī madhyamā tasmāt ṣaṣṭhyādyāḥ punaruttamāḥ // 29

puruṣapekṣayā ṣreṣṭho viprakarśodhikāḥ striyāḥ /
iti kecidathānye tam puruṣasya varam viduh // 30

teśāṁ mate tu ṣaṣṭhasya mukhyā prāyeṇa pañcamī /
smaryate ca pumān ṣaṣṭhah pañcamīmudvahediti // 31

pituh pitṛṣvaṣuh pitroḥ pitur²māṭrāṣvasuh sutāḥ /
pitur māṭulaputraśca vijñeyāḥ pitṛbandhavah // 32

2. B pitr.

evam gotrasya bhede'pi kūṭasthe pitṛpaksatā /
yadi kalpyeta tena syād dussahāniṣṭasaṅgatih // 33

tathāpi svapiturmātāmahasya prapitāmahāt /
kūṭasthādanyasantānajātā kanyā tu saptamī // 34

pitṛpaksəpi tātasya nodvāhyātā iti sthitih /
sāpiṇḍyasya kṣatistūrdhvam pitṛpaksə hi saptamāt // 35

api cāsyā varasyaiva pitureṣā tu kanyakā /
mātṛpaksagatā ṣaṣṭhi yogyeti ca bhaved yatah // 36

sāpiṇḍyasya nivṛttistu mātṛpaksə hi pañcamāt /
ūrdhvam tu mukhye kalpepi tadeṣā syādasaṅgatih // 37

putrasya yena mārgeṇa kanyā yā syājjugupsitā /
putustenaiva mārgeṇa sā ca yogyeti yad bhavet // 38

tasmāt sagotrah kūṭasthah pitṛpaksatayā matah /
tasyaiva mukhyasāpiṇḍyamitarasya na yujyate // 39

pitṛdayah sapiṇḍah ṣaṭ trayo mātāmahādayah /
māturmātāmaho mātussa ca yastu pitāmahāh // 40

mātuh pitāmahastasya so'pi yastu pitāmahāh /
mātāmahyāh pitāmahyāstathā mātāmahasya ca // 41

pitāmahasya caiteśām caturñāñca pitāmahāh /
yadyanyatama eteśām kūṭastha ubhayorapi // 42

tayosśāpiṇḍyam anyonyam striyaśca puruṣasya ca /
tebhyo'nyaccenna sāpiṇḍyamiti sāpiṇḍyavedinah // 43

gotrapravarayoraikye yoniyogaḥ parasparam /
nivṛttepi ca sāpiṇḍye naṣṭo dharmavidāmiha // 44

mātṛvamśepi tulyatve nodvāḥah kaiścidiṣyate /
mātūrvamśo duhitrādīh pituḥ putrādikah smṛtaḥ // 45

iti dvitīyasyādhyāyasya prathamah pādah

ATHA DVITĪYAH PĀDAH

[Sāpiṇḍyavibhāge pakṣāntaram]

śiṣṭācāradarthaवādah śrutiśāmarthyato'pi vā /
kvacid višeṣam icchanti sāpiṇḍyaparicintane // 1

asṭamyāh pitṛbandhośa ṣaṣṭhyā vā mātṛbandhataḥ /
sāpiṇḍyasya nivṛttatvād udvāhassarvasammataḥ // 2

teṣām mate tato'pyarvān nivṛtiḥ syāditi sthitih /
vivekam darśayiṣyāmastaṇmatasyātra paṣyataḥ // 3

ubhayorekakūṭsthājjātayoh kulaśākhayoh /
ekasya yāvati sthāne pumān yāvati kanyakā // 4

tāvatoranyaśākhāyāmapi tau sthānayor yadi /
tayoh sāpiṇḍyatābhedaḥ kramasyāsyā tu yāvati // 5

sthāne tadantam sāpiṇḍyam nātā ūrdhvam iti sthitih /
kūṭasthāt pañcamasyātō varasya tu niyamaye // 6

etādṛṣī syān mukhyeti pañcamisu višeṣataḥ /
caturthasya ṣṭriyasya caturthyaḥ ca ṣṭriyayā // 7

yoga eśām mato'nena siddhānteneti ca dhruvam /
vivāhasya vidhau naitad varavadhvor višeṣanam // 8

agrāhyatvaprasaṅgena bhinnasthānabhuvaḥ striyāḥ /
yuktāyuktavivekārtham caturthī pañcamivṛtau // 9

tāśām subodhaḥ prastāraḥ sampradayena kathyate /
kanyāyāmapi kūṭasthāccaturthyām ca varasya ca // 10

puruṣakramabhedena bhedāḥ ṣoḍaśa madhyataḥ /
putrau putrī ca putrāśca putraḥ putrī ca kanyakā // 11

bhedāsyuritthaḥ catvāro varakūṭasthamadhyamaiḥ /
kūṭasthā api catvāro bhavyestaitathaiva taiḥ // 12

kanyā kūṭasthamadhyotthaiścatasropi ca kanyakāḥ /
mātuh pitāmaho mātāmaho mātuśca tāviti // 13

kūṭasthāstatra catvārastat kanyāśca pṛthak pṛthak /
varakūṭasthaputrasya bhrātuḥ sambandhīḥ svasuḥ // 14

putrasya vā tayoḥ putryāścatasra iha kanyakāḥ /
catasrasyusthānyeśāmīti bhedāstu ṣoḍaśa // 15

pitāmahāḥ syāt kūṭasthaputrasu prapitāmahe /
kūṭasthe sati tadvārascatasraḥ syurhi kanyakāḥ // 16

mātuh pitāmahe tasmin mātāmahavaśā ime /
mātūr mātāmahe tadvadetā mātāmahīvaśāḥ // 17

athopayoga iyatā prapañcenābhidhiyate /
varakūṭsthayostatra sambandho yādrśo bhavet // 18

kanyākūṭthayoścāsau tādṛśascedayām vidhiḥ /
tattat saṅkhyāmītāḥ kanyāstattad vargeśu varjayet // 19

sarveśāmapi varjyā syāt sagotratvādihādimā /
mātussamānagotratvād varjyā te cākhilāntimāḥ // 20

pañcamyāḥ pañcakasyāpi prastāraḥ syādataḥ param /
tatra syurāṣṭau kūṭasthāścatuḥṣaṣṭhiśca yoṣitāḥ // 21

antastheśu triṣu svasthe dvayoh pṛāk ca nirūpītā /
kūṭasthāṣṭakataḥ kanyāstavatsaṅkhyāḥ pṛthak pṛthak // 22

pumāṁsaḥ strī ca puruṣau pumāṁstripurusastathā /
strī vadhuḥ ca varaścāpi naro nā kanyakāpi ca // 23

kanyakā puruṣaḥ kanyā pumān nārī ca kanyakā /
striyaścetyaṣṭa bhedāḥ syuriha prastṛtivartmanā // 24

kūṭasthānapi vaksyāmī tānaṣṭau ca nibodhata /
pitāmahasya pitro yau pitaraū tasya ca striyāḥ // 25

mātāmahasya tannāryā ityaṣṭau kūṭasamṣṭhitāḥ /
pituh pitāmahastasya patnī mātāmahāḥ pituh // 26

tasya patnī ca mātuśca pitāmahanijastriyau /
mātūr mātāmahastasya patnī ceti kramādiha // 27

kūṭasthānāmapatyāni syuraṣṭa parisāṅkhyayā /
bhrātuḥ svasuśca putrasya duhituśca tayoḥ kramāt // 28

pautryaḥ kanyāścatasraḥ syur dahuḥitryaśceti kalpayet /
uduhyante dākṣiṇātyair mātulasya sutā dvijaiḥ // 29

madhyadeśe karmakarāḥ śilpinaśca gavāśināḥ /
prācyā matsyāśināḥ sarve vyabhicārāratāḥ striyāḥ // 30

uttamā madyapācārāḥ sprṣyāścaiva rajasvalāḥ /
varṣajātāḥ pragṛhṇanti bhrātrbhrāryāmabhartkām // 31

itthamācārataḥ prāpto dharma ekaikadeśinām // 31 ½

iti dvitiyasyādhyāyasya dvitiyāḥ pādāḥ

ATHA TRTĪYĀH PĀDAH

[Brāhmādyāṣṭavivāhaprakaraṇam]

vipro viprakulotpannām dharmād pariṇayed vadhuḥ /
kāmena kṣatriyām vaiśyām na tu śūdraṁ kathañcana // 1

vivāhā brāhmadaivārṣapräjāpatyāstathāsurah /
gāndharvarākṣasau caiva sapta śastāḥ prakīrtitāḥ // 2

paiśācaśāstamasteśām tam vidyāt kulanāśanām /
aśastotassa vijñeyah pāpiṣṭhah pāpiṇāmapi // 3

ādyāścatvāra eteṣu viprāṇām vrddhīhetavah /
kṣatriyasya tu gāndharvo rāksasāśca tathā smṛtaḥ // 4

āsuropi ca vaiśyasya sa nindyo viprabhūbhujoh /
āpannopi na kurvīta tatra viprastadāśrayam // 5

pitrā dattām samāhūya saprāvaraṇabhūṣaṇām /
gr̥hṇātī yassa tu prokto brāhmaṇo vaivāhiko vidhiḥ // 6

vitāyamāne yajñe tu dattām kanyāmalaṅkṛtām /
ṛtvig gr̥hṇātī yat karma kurvan daivassa kathyate // 7

datvā gomithunām kanyāmādatte yadasau vidhiḥ /
āṛṣah sahobhau caratām sahadharmamiti bruvan // 8

yat prayacchati yacceṇām gr̥hṇātī sa tataḥ paraḥ /
jñātibhyo dravīṇām datvā kanyādānām yadāsurah // 9

sa vidhir varjya evāsau viprāṇām bhārgavakṣitau /
krītā dravyeṇa yā nārī sā na patnitvamarhati // 10

dāśipadām samāroḍhumarhatyeṣetī bhārgavah /
necchāmastaḥ dvijātīnām trayāṇāmapyamum vidhim // 11

āsureṇa vidhānena dātā syānāmṣavikrayī /
kanyāyāśca varasyāpi yo bhavet svecchayā kṛtaḥ // 12

yogaḥ parasprenāyam gāndharvah kāmasambhavaḥ /
cchitvā bhītvā ca hatvā ca pralapantīm striyām balāt // 13

parigṛhṇātī yat so 'yam rākṣaso vidhirucyate /
mattām yad vā pramattām vā suptām vā yadraho vrajet // 14

pāpiṣṭhosau vivāheṣu paīśācoṣṭama ucyate /
brāhmādiṣu yathācāraṇi kenāpi vidhinā pitā // 15

dadyāt kanyām varaścainām parīkṣyaiva parīkṣitāḥ /

[Varaparīkṣā]

pumṣṭva eva parīkṣā tu prathamam śāstracoditā // 16

tām kuryānnatu ṣaṇḍāya kanyām dadyād vipadyapi /
stripuṣṭsalakṣmāhinaśca prasuptavyañjanastathā // 17

pakṣopahataretāśca sravadretā mukhebhagah /
guruśaptaśca serṣyāśca durārādho'phalendriyah // 18

dirghatīvāmāyo devadveṣi ca paratalpagaḥ /
śālinabija ākṣiptabijaśātīyatākāmukah // 19

sthavirāśceti vijñeyāḥ ṣaṇḍāstemi tu ṣodāśā /
nārhanṭi kanyākāmete kadācidapi dharmataḥ // 20

tān prayatnena vijñāya na tebhyāḥ pradiśet pitā /
nonmattāya na mūkāya badhirāya na paṅgave // 21

na khañjāya na cāñdhāya nāpasmārahatāya ca /
na cābhijanahināya viruddhasamayāya ca // 22

naiva bhinnaśikhāyāpi na tasmai dveṣṭi yañca sā /
pumṣṭvañca yauvanām rūpaṁ vittañca śrutaśālitām // 23

priyām vadatvām bahvannadātṛtvām iti saptakam /
vicintya kanyā dātavyā pitrā tvabhijanānvite // 24

ātmanah kṛtakṛtyatvām bandhūnāmabhinandanām /
yāvatā syād anindā ca satām tāvad gaveṣayet // 25

dattāyāssakṛdālocya kecidicchāntaranām /
pratyāharāṇamanyasmāi rāmakṣetre tu neṣyate // 26

pāṇīm gṛhṇātī yastasyā nāsyā pratinidhīryataḥ /
bahudhā saṃparīkṣyaiva kanyām dadyādanāpadi // 27

[Kanyāparīkṣā]

asatīm udvahan kanyām ātmanā saha pūrvajān /
prasthāpayati ghorebhyo nirayebhyo nijāt padāt // 28

nādhikāngīm na hināngīm nālomāmatilomaśām /
nodvahennaiva vācālām na gavākṣanirikṣīm // 29

gandharūpavatīm hāsē kakudāvartiniṁ tathā /
samapinonnatorojām suśilāmudvahet striyām // 30

ghatanāmapi cekṣeta mithastārādibhir dvayoh /
jyotirvidubhayoh pitror visrabdho'lolupāḥ śuciḥ // 31

pumsaścittaparīkṣāyām tadācārādisādhanam /
striyāstu tatra vakṣyāmi viśeṣādapi kiñcana // 32

iti dvitīyasyādhyāsyā tṛtyāḥ pādāḥ

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Mr̥tpiṇḍaparīkṣā]

athottarāyaṇe kāle śubhavāre śubhe tithau /
yāvat somassamāśriyta caratyuttaraphalgunīḥ // 1

snātvā muhūrte maitre tu pratipūjya gaṇādhipam /
tāvat samullikhed bhūmau rekhāśoḍaśakam kramāt // 2

aṣṭau prāgāyatāstatra tathāṣṭāvuttarāyatāḥ /
kramāt hrasvāḥ kramād dīrghāḥ saṃhṛtau cāpi vistṛtau // 3

catasraśca catasraśca yathā syur vilikhet tathā /
catvāri caturaśrāṇi syuralpālpāntarāntaram // 4

rekhāgrābhyām athaikaikam khaṇḍam abhyantare punah /
prakalpya rekhāsthāneṣu sūcyā vyaktimudirayet // 5

śubhraiḥ ṣaṣṭikadhānyānām taṇḍulair athavā yavaiḥ /
rekhāntarāle sarvatra vikired vrīhitāṇḍulān // 6

dhautān kulattha³ godhūmayavadūrvāṇkurānvitān /
tulasīdalasiddhārtha kuśakāśaiśca miśritān // 7

tataḥ prāṇmukha āśināḥ sapavitrakarāḥ śuciḥ /
dvau dvau koṇagatau hitvā khaṇḍeṣvanyeṣu vinyaset // 8

darbhāsanāni sarveṣu vīthiṣu dvādaśavapi /
teṣvami devatāḥ pūjyāḥ sarveṣu ca yathāvidhi // 9

vīthiṣu dvādaśādityān prādakṣiṇyena pūjayed /
antaḥ pañcasu koṇeṣu madhye pūjyāḥ prajāpatiḥ // 10

aiśe dyāvāpr̥thivyau ca sandhyāmāgneya diggate /
dharmaṇca rākṣase khaṇḍe mārute marutam yajet // 11

goṣṭhavedinadikṣetramṛtpiṇḍāmścaturāḥ purāḥ /
avaśiṣṭordhvadikkopagatakhaṇḍacatuṣṭaye // 12

catuṣpatho śarakroḍa kṣitiśārkarabhūmṛdā /
klptān piṇḍānadhāḥ khaṇḍeṣvapi vinyasya tān punah // 13

ṛtamityādikam mantram tathā yat satyamityapi /
spṛśan japtvā punasteṣu gṛhāṇaikamitirayet // 14

parikramya trivāram tanmaṇḍalam prayatā tadā /
gr̥hṇiyāttesu piṇḍeṣu kanyā caikam yathepsitam // 15

gr̥hītēna ca piṇḍēna vidyād bhāviśubhāśubham /
sā gr̥hītavatī kanyā yadi goṣṭhamṛdā kṛtam // 16

3. B kulaṣtha.

nūnam syāt paśumatyesyantarviśvastatām vrajet /
yadi vedimṛdā kṛptā dharmavatyapi sā bhavet // 17

nadimṛtpindaharaṇe vijāniyānmanasvinīm /
vijñeyānnavatī kanyā kṣetramṛtpindadharanāt // 18

etadanyatamādāne sādhvīmāhuḥ kumārikām /
jñeyā pravrājikā duṣṭā kutilā bhartṛnāśinī // 19

anyapiṇḍe kramādevam vijñātām parivarjayet /
anena vidhinā sādhvīm vijñāya vṛṇuyāt tataḥ // 20

kanyām pitā tu yogyāya tasmai dadyācca tuṣṭadhiḥ // 20 ½

iti śāṅkare dharmāśtre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām
dvitiyasyādhyāyasya caturthaḥ pādah //
dvitiyodhyāḥ samāptah //

TRΤIYO'DHYĀYAH

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Vivāhavidhiḥ]

vitarisyan pitā putrīm varāya prārthanāvate /
kulato lakṣaṇenāpi praśastāyedam ācaret // 1

prakalypya divasam pūrvam kanyādāne tvaninditam /
āsanne sumuhürte tu kuryād udvāhakautukam // 2

śilābhede tarucchede gṛhārambhavidhāvapi /
bhuvāśca khanane yadvaccared vaivāhike tathā // 3

caturśvetesu kāmena pravṛtto gṛhamedhyapi /
akṛtvā pavamāneśtim anyathā pātakī bhavet // 4

kārayed upakāryādi yāvad artham suśobhanam /
alakṣmīm parinirṛtya gṛhānujjvalayed bhṛśam // 5

bhittistambhakavāṭesu tathā sopānapañktisu /
kāntim kātukarekhābhīḥ kārayeta sugandhibhīḥ // 6

abhidvārañica sarvatra vitanyeta sragāvalim /
sthāpayet kadalikāñḍānāmapakvaphalojjvalān // 7

stambheśubhayato dvāram kerapūgaphalādibhiḥ //
sametān haritācchinnapatrān dṛṣṭimanoharān // 8

kumudotpalakalhārasarasiruhacampakaiḥ /
mallikākundamandāraketakāśokajātibhiḥ // 9

anyairapīdrśaiḥ puṣpair vihitābhīr yathocitam /
sāmṛṣṭasāktamālābhīr maṇḍayitvā śriyam nayet // 10

sampādya pūjyapūjāsu yadyadistam yathākulam /
 sutārthe yadyadākhyātam tattannirvartya yatnataḥ // 11

 pratikṣamāṇo jāmātūrāgatim sampratitadhiḥ /
 jñātibhissaha varteta maṅgalāśamsamānasah // 12

 vivāhārthī śubhe kṛtvā kāle vaivāhikāśanam /
 prasthāya bandhubhiḥ sākām śvaśurasya gṛhān vrajet // 13

 maṅgalyasūktapāṭhena prasthitah pathi gām vr̄ṣam /
 devālāyañca prakramya daks̄iñenā vanaspatin // 14

 vāmena cātakañcaiva viññālañca śvagardabhu /
 śivāśākhāmrgaśyenananakulādyavalokane // 15

 sāntidānam svastyayanamantrapāṭham ca kārayet /
 āsannassamabhihvrajya tena nito yathāvidhi // 16

 vāmena vāstumākramya daks̄iñenāñkānam puraḥ /
 aṅghrināhatya vāmena praghāñcetyanukramat // 17

 gṛhābhyantaramākrāmed daks̄iñenaiva cāṅghrinā /
 prathamam bhūtikāmasya praveśo' yamudāhṛtah // 18

 atha kanyārthine tasmai yathāvad anumoditah /
 pitā ca kanyakām snātāmalāñkṛtyāvaguṇthitam // 19

 sumuhūrta upāniya dadyād udakapūrvakam /
 sa cainām pratigṛhṇiyāt svagr̄hyoktena vartmanā // 20

 gr̄hyo viprastriyāḥ pāṇir vareñodvāhakarmani /
 putrā eva prajāyerannityañguṣṭham vināgrataḥ // 21

 dauhitram na spr̄śedanyam taddvayam cobhayāgraḥi /
 yātrāyām upasannāyām yānam vā nāvameva vā // 22

 āropyāgnim puraskṛtya tānnayennijaveśmane /
 kalyāñeṣu ca deṣeu tadvadeva catuṣpathe // 23

mantrajāpi tathेक्षेता वासे वासे samiksakān /
 dvāvetāvanugantavyau suhṛdābandhujanāistadā // 24

 purastācca pratiṣtheran padikāḥ khadgapāṇayah /
 dāsirubhayataḥ kṛtvā vaheyustāśca vāhakāḥ // 25

 yathā na jāyetāśuddhistathā śūdrādayaśca tau /
 bhajeyuragner āsattim varjayeyur viśeṣataḥ // 26

 vādyair maṅgalanirhrādair pūrayeyuśca diñmukham /
 svalaṅkṛtam nayed veśma dūrvādadhyarpitārhaṇam // 27

 āgarbhato yathācāram tām nisargānujīvibhiḥ /
 praveśayet samantraśca sumuhūrte tato niśi // 28

 homam kuryād yathācāram ānītegnau tayā saha /
 ata ūrdhvamubhau syātāmakṣāralavañāśinai // 29

 tāvadhaśāyinau tisro rātrīraskhalitavratau /
 gandhasragannavastrādyair viprān prāveśike dine // 30

 anyāmśca prīṇayet sarvān vibhave sati vistarāt¹ /
 vṛddhā jivatsutā bhartṛmatyo bhūdevayoṣitah // 31

 yadyad brūyuravaireṇa tattadikṣeta cākhilam /
 tisro rātrīstathā nītvā caturthasnānamācaret // 32

 caturthim rajanīm prāpya sekam kuryād yathāgamam /
 nimantrayeyustasmāt prāṇ na tamanye svakarmasu // 33

 anarcakassa cārcādau nityam vratamalopayan /
 athārabheta ca sthālipākam samanuvartayan // 34

 māsamekam sahāsīnah patnyā tasya samāpanat /
 prāṇnānydeśagāmī syat māsādūrdhvamubhau punah // 35

1. B vastarāt.

pakṣāntau samanuprekṣya kurvīta dviśca māsikam /
darśaśca paurnamāśaśca nāmnā tau munibhiḥ smṛtau // 36

na vilūpedamū iṣṭī gṛhasthāḥ śraddhayeritah /
sarvadāgnīm pratīkṣeta pratyahām vṛihibhir yajet // 37

nirvāṇam dipayet pūrvam dvādaśāhānta ucyate /
dīkṣāntare'gnau nirvāṇe samanvāṇambhapūrvakam // 38

prokṣya bhasmanyapahatā asurā iti tat punah /
uddhūlyā tatra dhūlau tu tirobhūyāgnimāsthitam // 39

nirāyatanamāropya samidhi tvayamādinā /
śadhayed bhasma santyajya gomayena nirambunā // 40

tatraivāyatane paścānnidhāyāgnimanukṣipet /
tatrāgnāvagninārūdhām samidham tām samantrakam // 41

mantrastatrāyamājuhvāna ityādika iṣyate /
udbudhyasvādiranyaśca sahapāthādathodakaiḥ // 42

ālipyātraiva pūrṇāhutuyā rītyā vakṣyamāṇayā /
ājyamutpādyā kuryādvā viṁśatim ca sruvāhutim // 43

tatra mantrastvayāścāgnerityayam prathamoditah /
dvitīyakognir hoteti tṛtyāderayam kramah // 44

brāhmaṇognih² pṛthivyantarikṣam vāyuśca candramāḥ /
annam dyaurapi cādityah prajāpatiramūn daśa // 45

ekahotā dvihoteti krameṇo³pariyojītān /
vidyāt tṛtyakādinām mantrānām pramukhēcarān // 46

prasidhyāśeṣasampattirittham te dvādaśoditāḥ /
tataḥ paro manojojyotirjuṣatāmityayam manuh // 47

2. B brahmaṇo.

3. B krameṇapari.

yanma ātmana ityeṣa vijñeyotra caturdaśā /
punaragniriti jñeyā uttarāḥ prāṇavādikāḥ // 48

tisro vyāhṛtayah paścāt catasrah kevalāśca tāḥ /
iti dvāvīṁśatir mantrāsteṣu prāṇavapūrvikāḥ // 49

tisro vinā hi sannegnau homamadhye ca parvaṇoh /
ekonā⁴ viṁśati grāhyāḥ sannegnau punaranyadā // 50

śamśodhya gomayenaivāyatanaṁ tatra cānale /
nihite gṛhtamutpādyā vakṣyamānena vartmanā // 51

niṣkṛtim vidadhitātha sruvāhutimayādinā /
evam vaivāhike'gnau tu nirvāṇe dīpanam viduh // 52

akṛte'trāsyā vicchittir dvādaśāhāt param bhavet // 52 ½

iti tṛtyasyādhyāyasya prathamaḥ pādah /

ATHA DVITĪYAH PĀDAH

[Sambhārasahitāgnijvalanakramah]

naṣtegnau nidadhītāmūm sambhāraiḥ sambhṛte punah /
sasamṛbhāranidhānasya kramam vakṣye samāsataḥ // 1

anvāsyābhycya vighneśamagnyuccedasya niṣkṛtim /
kurvīta tadanu brahmā tūṣṇimāsanatastrāṇam // 2

nirasyedatha tam dhautahastah kṛtakaragrahah /
tūṣṇim niveṣayed dadyāt pavitram cātha mārjite // 3

sthāṇḍile śākalena triḥ kuryāt prāksaṁsthāmuddhatim /
madhyato daksiṇenāpi vāmena ca yathākramam // 4

4. D F ekona.

atha tatrāmbunā proksya sambhārān sīkatādikān /
pātre dakṣināhastena yojayet kramaśo'khilān // 5

"sīkatāmūśarakṣmākhuvalmīkahradasambhavāḥ /
varāhakhātajāḥ pañca mṛdaśca nalinidalam // 6

sandhāniyaśilām śākhāḥ pañcāśvatthi savāṅgajāḥ /
pālāśi śamijā vaikamkati ceti caturdaśa // 7

aśanyāhatavṛksya śakalañca vadanti tān /"
atha tān brahmaṇo haste pradāyāyatanād bahiḥ // 8

śakalam sannirasyāpah sprṣṭvātra sīkatāḥ kiret /
bhūrbhuvassuvarityevam japtvā madhye'tha dakṣine // 9

vāme cetyatra pūrvāgrāstisro madhye tatastvadhadhā /
ūrdhvāñcetyudagagrāśca tisra ittham ṣaḍullikhet // 10

rekhākramādathommrṣtadoḥ proksya śakalam tyajet /
koṇe naiṛtakē'thāpah sprṣṭvā brahmāṇamuddiśan // 11

omagnimāhariṣyāmītyābhāṣeta tato'munā /
omagnimāharetyuktastata ādāya sambhṛtiḥ // 12

vyāhṛtyodakṣipettāstathāgniīcāyatane punah /
jvalayitvopalepādi vaksyamāṇena vartmanā // 13

ājyasya ca srucaścāpi samśkāram mantrasekavat /
kuryādatha catugrāhī tiṣṭhannutsrjya cāsanam // 14

pūrayitvātha paryukṣya nikṣipyam samidham punah /
srucipūrṇāhutim kuryānmantroccāraṇapūrvakam // 15

mantro'tra sapta te'gne iti vidvadbhīriṣyate /
pūrṇāhutiparam dadyāttataśca brahmaṇe paśum // 16

tata āśina ājyena kuryāccheśairapi grahaiḥ /
tisraścasro dve cātha catasraścāhutih kramād // 17

ādye tantum tathodbudhyasva trayastriṁśadityapi /
dvitiye manavastvagne abhyetyādistataḥ paraḥ // 18

agne aṅgira ityeṣa punarūrjeti cāparaḥ /
caramassaha rayyeti⁵ trītye yanma⁶ ityasaу // 19

punaragniriti tvanyasturye vyāhṛtayo matāḥ /
catasra iti tanmātrāssamāpyājyam tataḥ param // 20

mantrenāśicya gām datvā brahmaṇe tadanu svayam /
utthāpyārādhayed agnim gaṇeśāñca visarayet // 21

nidhānamiti grhyāgner bhārgaveṇa prapañcītam /
samkṣipaiṣvām mayā proktam kṣemakṛt grhamedhinām // 22

iti trītyasyādhyāyasya divtyiḥ pādah /

ATHA TRTĪYAH PĀDAH

[Agnidoṣaprāyaścittam]

vyākhyāsyante'gnidoṣāśca samkṣepādupari kvacit /
laghugurvanurodhena prāyaścittāñca kṛtsnaśah // 1

tānapīkṣeta sarveṣvapya viśeṣena bhārgavah /
āśāste pavamānākhyam sthālipākam ca kathyate // 2

samidhyāropya tatrāgnim nirāyatanameva tām /
udagvinyasya santyajya bhasitena sahānalām // 3

saṁśodhyāyatanam paścād gomayena samantataḥ /
agnāvanuddhrte tatra nihite samidham kṣipet // 4

mantrapūrvakamāropitāgnim punarataḥ param /
anvādhānādikam sarvam tatra nityavadācaret // 5

5. B ratheyi.

6. B dayanma.

syādagnih pavamāno'gnih pāvako'gnih śuciḥ kramāt /
devatā ityayam bhedo nirvāpaproksaṇe punah // 6

agnaye pavamānāyetyādirītyā samunnayet /
havir dvedhā vibhajyātha dakṣiṇādiṣu tu kramāt // 7

tannāmāni caturthyantānyāditastvidamāsaha /
sprśeduccārya taireva svāhāntair homa isyate // 8

samāptesminnathotpādyā ghṛtam kṛtvā caturgraham /
paryukṣya samidham kṣiptvā mantram procya manasvatim // 9

āśino juhuyācchesam karma paścāt samāpayet /
ityayam pavamānākhyah sthālipāka udāhṛtaḥ // 10

pūrṇāhutim vā sarvatra tatsthāna iti bhārgavah /
tat kramastatra kartavyah sakṛt parisamūhanam // 11

sakṛt paryukṣya cāstirya sakṛt paryukṣya sādayet /
udagagnerathaitāni vastūni ca yāthākramam // 12

proksaṇipātramājyasya sthālim cāpi sruvam srucam /
abhidyotanadarbhāṁśca catasrassamidhopi ca // 13

abhidyotanato dvābhyām bandham paścāt pavitrakam /
vinyasya proksaṇipatre prāgagramatha vāriṇā // 14

āśicya prāk tadutpūrya sapavitram tadambunā /
trirabhyukṣya ghṛtasthālyām vinyasyātha pavitrakam // 15

ājyamāśicya taccodagvyūdhe'ṅgare havirbhujah /
nyasyābhidyotya darbhāgre samyutañcāvaropayet // 16

kṛtāparyagni'māṅgāram samkalayya tataḥ param /
saṁsprśyāpah pavitreṇa tūṣṇīmutpavanam caret // 17

7. B paryāgni.

prāk pratyaktadavicchedamiti bheda iha smṛtaḥ /
visrastam tadvidhāyātha pavitramanale kṣipet // 18

srucaṣṭāpāñca sammārgam proksaṇañca pratāpanam /
agneralamkṛtim paścāt samantrapariṣecanam // 19

kṛtvā caturgrhitājyam srucyuthāyānuyujya ca /
paryukṣya samidham kṣiptvā ghṛtena juhuyāt sakṛt // 20

punaścaivam manasvatyā parantūthānato vinā /
sandhāyoccarite dve ṣe ca mantrāḥ kramādiha // 21

agna āyūṁṣyathāgne pavasvāgne pāvaketi ca /
sa nah pāvaka ityēśā tathānyāgniśucityapi // 22

śubhagne śubhyaśceti manojyotiśca tā ṣe /
samantrapariṣekādi kṛtvātha ca samapayet // 23

pāvamāni samākhyātā pūrṇāhutiriyam matā /
anyatrāpyanusandheyā ritiratra pradarśitā // 24

iti trīyasyādhyāyasya trīyah pādah /

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Agnirakṣāmāhātmyam]

darśaśca paurnamāśaśca dvāvetau grhamedhinaḥ /
ūrdhvam jīgamiṣoh pakṣau tau na vicchedamarhataḥ // 1

vicchinnayostu kurvita tayloratyayaniṣkṛtim /
agnim pathikṛtam nāma tatra darśātyaye yajet // 2

paurnamāśātyaye tadvadagnim vaiśvānaram tathā /
etad dvayātipattau tu pṛthagyogena vā yajet // 3

anvārambhanikāmiṣṭim kuryādiṣṭitrayātyaye /
pañcāgnim pavamānādin yajecca dvādaśātyaye // 4

sapta tān pavamānādin yajet sampvatsarātyaye /
tattat pūrnāhutih kuryādathavaiteṣu sarvataḥ // 5

pūrnāhutisū sarvatra kecidāhuḥ sruvāhutih /
tasmāttā eva vā samyaganyatra parivakṣyate // 6

aho bhāro gṛhasthasya mahāneṣa kriyākramah /
śeso'thavā mahānāste svabhāvanyato'khilah // 7

kintvayam dogdhi no duḥkham mahadeva na tādṛśam /
tato'dhikam vā sūte ca sukham karmasu niṣṭhayā // 8

panthāno bahavaḥ pretya yiyāsor gṛhamedhinah /
anagnerasya kārṣṇyena tānāhustamasāvṛtān // 9

tasmādagnim sadā rakṣan prayatetānyakarmasu /
agnau samṛakṣite sarvam rakṣitām bhārgavo'bhravit // 10

jāgarti satatam yasya gṛhyāgnih prayato gṛhe /
sa kāmāniha samṛhujya pretya svargeṣu modate // 11

yasya śraddhāgnirakṣāyāmāpadyapi duratyaye /
tad gṛham puṇyatirtham syāditarat kākapalvalam // 12

hūyamāno yathākālam gṛhyognir yatra vartate /
tad gṛham⁸ na pratikṣante rakṣoyakṣāpamṛtyavah // 13

yadanagniṣ⁹ devebhyah pitṛbhyo vā hutam havih /
yacca dattam gṛhastheṣu tacca miṣphalatām vrajet // 14

agnihinena sandhyāsu diyate gṛhamedhinā /
yadarghyam tad balādetya hareyur asurāḥ kila // 15

8. B gṛhe.

9. B yadagni.

tasmādagnim prayatnena rakṣed yo gṛhameyivān /
anyathā śūdratām gacched dvijopi śrotriyopyasau // 16

snānādiṣu yathākālam pratyaham prayateta ca /
evamvidhair svadharmaistu brāhma loke mahiyate // 17

iti śāṅkare dharmāśtre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām
trīyasyādhyāyasya caturthaḥ pādah /
trīyo'dhyāyah samāptah //

CATURTHĀDHYĀYĀ

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Nityasnānavidhiḥ]

brāhme muhūrta utthāya visṛjenmūtravarcasi /
dakṣinābhimukho rātrau divā cet tadudaṁmukhaḥ // 1

sandhyayośca dvijāḥ kuryuḥ karṇasthabrahmasūtrināḥ /
yatavācaśca sarvepi yathākāmam tu bālakāḥ // 2

na bhūmau phālakṛṣṭāyām¹ nācchannāyām na coṣare /
na śādvale na cchāyāyām na sasatve na gartake // 3

na valmīke² na rathyāyām nodyāne nodakāntike /
na bhasmani na cāṅgāre nodake na ca gomaye // 4

tuśākapālagoṣṭheṣu na devāyataneṣu ca /
na pratyani lamarkam vā nāgnistrīgurubāndhavān // 5

parimrjya gudam samyag gṛhitvā śiśnamutthitah /
hastenoddhṛtya kurvīta ūaucamambho jalāśayāt // 6

āgandhalepayor nāśānnirviśeṣam tadiṣyate /
sarveṣāmapi varṇānām vīprādinām punastviyam // 7

paripātiṣyate tatra bhārgavāvanivāsinām /
dvādaśadvādaśāvṛttinyāhuḥ ūaucāni vai gude // 8

saptāvṛttini saptāhur liṅge mr̥ttikayā saha /
vīprasya pādahinānyatrādye kṣatriyavaiśyayoh // 9

1. C hāla.

2. A vanmīka.

pañcāvṛttini pañcāhuh dvitiye cāpare punah /
 sūtrinastāni kuryuśca pañcāvṛttini pañca vā // 10

 saptāvṛttini vā sapta prathame trīyanantare /
 tryāvṛttini ca sarvepi kṣālayeyur mr̄dambhasā // 11

 ekaikāntarubhau hastāvesa bhārgavadarśitah /
 ūaucakramo na kurvita rāmabhūmāvanāturaḥ // 12

 pātrasthenāmbunā ūaucam nāvagāhya jalepi vā /
 etat ūaucam gṛhasthānām atha ca brahmacāriṇām // 13

 vanasthānām ca bhikṣūnām tattu dviguṇamisya /
 mūtre visṛṣṭe gandūṣaiḥ saptabhir mukhaśodhanām // 14

 kurvita dhrtakaupīno varcasyetair daśādhikaiḥ /
 anīṣṭapuriṣopī nityasnāne samācaren // 15

 ūaucam niḥṣṭavarcovat gandūṣāmśca dvijottamāḥ /
 naiṣṭhiko dīkṣitaścāgnihotri sarvatra cāplave // 16

 gandūṣāmstatra kurvita muktakaupīna eva vā /
 kaupīnadhāraṇām kṛtvā pādau trih³ śodhayanmr̄dā // 17

 sajalena jalenaiva sakṛt paścādapi dvijah /
 aphenilair jalair dvidvir ācāmeccāntarāntarā // 18

 nimitte sati sarve'pi prakṛtisthopavītakāḥ /
 ācāmeyuh pavitreṇa māṣadaghnenā⁴ vāriṇā // 19

 hr̄dgāminaiva ṣatkarmā⁵ kṣatriyah kanṭhagāminā /
 vaiśyastāluspṛśāvāntargatahastāḥ syuratra te // 20

 sarve'pi jānunoh kuryurāśināśca na codake /
 svāpānto vāgyato dantān mārjayecca pragetane // 21

3. B triśodhayed.
 4. B māṣadaghnenā.
 5. A B ṣatkarmā.

snānakarmani naīvātra dakṣinābhīmukho bhavet /
 cūtapatreṇa sarve'pi kuryur daśanaśodhanām // 22

 agrhastastu tenaiva kuryāttadvacca dīkṣitah /
 gṛhasthānāntu sandagdhatuśācūrṇo'pi sammataḥ // 23

 naikādaśyām na darśe na saṅkrāntau nārkabhaumayoh /
 vāre gṛhasthā⁶ sarve'pi samkramānteṣu na triṣu⁷ // 24

 dantānādhāvyā kurvita gandūṣān ṣoḍāśa dvijah /
 adhautadanto naiva syādaniśiddhe'hani dvijah // 25

 apām dvādaśabhir dantā gandūṣairitaratra tu /
 pūtāḥ syustadanusnāyi vāso visrasya varjayet // 26

 kaṭisūtrāñca kaupinām ārdrikṛtya ca dhārayet /
 pādau mr̄dvābhīrāmr̄jya dvīrācāmedanantaram // 27

 iti trīrambūnāpyetau kevalenātha mārjayed /
 athācān⁸to'vagāhyāpsu majjettriratha śodhayet // 28

 aṅgāni cūdām visrasya badhṇiyāccārdritām jalaiḥ /
 sakṛṇ maṅktvā jalām tyaktvā tata ācamanām caret // 29

 yathāvadatha samprokṣya vāsaḥ prāṇmārjitaṁ jale /
 uddhṛtya trīstadutkocya vāmahastaprakoṣṭhake // 30

 kṣiptvā hr̄di nidhāyātha vāmapāṇītalaṁ sakṛt /
 maṅktvā tīramabhiṇrajya tiṣṭhan pāṇīmite jale // 31

 prakoṣṭhād vāsa ādāya tena kurvita mārjanam /
 śiraso mārjanam sarve kurvīraṇ prathamam puṇah // 32

6. A nṛhasthāḥ.
 7. A commentator quotes authority as follows:
 alābhe dantakāṣṭhasya niśiddheṣu dīneṣu ca /
 apām dvādaśaṅgandūṣair vīdadhyād dantadhāvanam //
 The stanza is attributed to Vyāsa.
 8. B athacāntē.

grhasthah prsthavamśasya⁹ brahmacārī yathāmati /
snātakah karṇayoh kuryād akṣoreva tu maskari // 33

hrdayasyāgnihotri tu kanṭhakūpasya¹⁰ dīksitah /
snātakādaya ityete tattadaṅgāpramārjane // 34

nirmrjyaiva punarvāsaḥ kuryuśśeṣāṅgamārjanam /
mārjane prsthavamśasya¹¹ majjayedustadaṁśukam // 35

sarve'pi sarve cānyatra nirdiṣṭāḥ kāmacāriṇāḥ /
saṁvṛttamārjano vastram niṣpiḍyodakamajjitatam // 36

saṁmr̥ṣṭabaddhasūtrastat kaupinam parivartayet /
śikhābandhanataḥ pūrvam param vā pūrvapakṣinām // 37

kāryah punaśśikhābandhaḥ pādayoścātha śodhanam /
sāntarācamanam sarvasādhāraṇamudāhṛtam // 38

niṣpiḍya pariśoṣyātha kaupinam vāsa ākṣipan /
paridāhyācca na srastam prāgagre kārayecca tat // 39

pādau yathāvat prakṣālyā paścādācamanam caret /
kecidācamanam mantrair kecittūṣṇīm ca kurvate // 40

brāhmaṇam proksaṇamantreṇa vāyavyam rajasā gavām /
āgneyam bhasmanā śuddhamavagāhyāmbu vārunam // 41

caturvidham iti snānam brāhmašeṣantu vārunam /
dvijairavaśyam kartavyam rāmāvaninivāśibhiḥ // 42

iti caturthasyādhyāyasya prathamaḥ pādaḥ

9. B prsthavamśasya.

10. B kanṭhakūpasya.

11. B athacante.

ATHA DVITĪYAH PĀDAH

[Sandhyāvandanavidhiḥ]

atha sandhyāmupāśinah sva sva sūtrānurodhataḥ /
dvijah prātaśca madhyāhne dinasya viratāvapi // 1

ādimadhyāvasāneṣu vāsarasya maharṣibhiḥ /
tisrah sandhyāḥ samāmnātāścopāsyā dvijanmabhiḥ // 2

upāsyesu dvijātinām śreṣṭham sandhyātrayam viduh /
yasya nāstyādarastatra dvijebhyassa bahiṣkrtaḥ // 3

tasmāt sandhyāmupāśiran sarve caiva dvijātayah /
pratyaham śraddhayā ye tu sandhyātrayamupāsate // 4

nirdhūtāpāpāste yānti brahmalokam sanātanam /
tasmāt sandhyāmupāśiran sarve caiva dvijātayah // 5

anṛtena na duṣyeyur divāmaithunato'pi vā /
te dvijā ye yathākālam sandhyāstisra upāsate // 6

tasmāt sandhyāmupāśiran sarve caiva dvijātayah /
sva sva sūtrānurodhena bhavet pātityamanyathā // 7

sādhāraṇam pravakṣyāmi yattatratisamāsataḥ /
asādhāraṇavijñānamācārādathavāgamāt // 8

drṣyādrṣyārkṣamayuktā yā velā tu niśātyaye /
tāmeva prathamām sandhyām sarve kālavido viduh // 9

jñātvā viprādayo yatnādenām velāmupasthitām /
prācīmabhīmukhīkṛtya dadyurañjalinā jalām // 10

tiṣṭhantah procyā gāyatrīm sakṛccānekaśopi vā /
yathācāram yathāsūtram kṣipeyur na jalāt sthale // 11

trirevam̄ vidhivat kṛtvā parikramya yathāvidhi /
vidadhīrṇnathāśinā devarśipitṛtarpaṇam // 12

prakṛtisṭhopavītāḥ syur devānāṁ tatra tarpane /
prāciṇāvitināḥ pitre syuranyatra nivītināḥ // 13

iti saṃkṣepataḥ prokstassandhyāśādhāranah kramah /
amṛbukṣepādikam̄ kṛtvā tiṣṭhantah ṣaṭpadād¹² bahih // 14

āśūryasy¹³ odayāt kuryur gāyatrī vīdhivat japaṇ /
sahasratamamāśadya tataḥ kuryuḥ samāpanam // 15

tadardhāparimāne vā pūrṇe vāṣṭottare śate /
prāṇavañcaiva gāyatrīm̄ aśārṇamapi vaiṣṇavam // 16

śaivam̄ pañcākṣaram̄ caiva japeṇnityam̄ atandritah /
brahmaśāri gṛhastho vā catuśsāntūkamucyate // 17

etaccatuṣkamityāha bhagavān bhārgavo muniḥ /
yannityamarghyā¹⁴ dānañca gāyatrīśca manorjapah // 18

tābhyaṁanyad viṇā puṇḍram̄ naiva kuryur dvījātayah /

[Bhasmadhāraṇavidhiḥ]

pratyahañca tripuṇḍrasya dhāraṇam̄ hi dvījanmanām // 19

dakṣine bhārgavakṣetre niyatam̄ bhārgavo'bhravīt /
ūrdhvapuṇḍram̄ tripuṇḍram̄ ca samucciya ca kutracit // 20

vikalpena ca tat kuryur yathākulam̄ iha dvījāḥ /
nityam̄ yadarghyadānādi kāmataḥ puṇḍradhāraṇe // 21

12. B ṣaṭpadāt.

13. B āśurya.

14. A argha.

pravīttir vā nīvīttir vā tatra bhārgavadarśanāt /
kevalam̄¹⁵ tūrdhvapuṇḍram̄ yattanna kāryamīha dvījaiḥ // 22

ūrdhvapuṇḍram̄ dvījā eva kurvīraṇ gopikāmṛdā /
tripuṇḍrasādhanānyāhur bhūtirbhasitabhasmanī // 23

kṣāro raksā ca pañceti tad viśeṣo'bhīdhiyate /
kapilāyāḥ puriṣena jātā bhūtiriti smṛtā // 24

kṛṣṇāyā goḥ puriṣena jātantu bhasitam̄ viduḥ /
bhasmalohitavarṇāyāḥ śvetāyāḥ kṣāra ucyate // 25

nānārūpavatī gaur yā tasyā rakṣeti kīrtyate /
aīśvarya kāraṇam̄ bhūtir bhāsakam̄ bhasitam̄ matam // 26

sarvāghabhaḥkṣakam̄ bhasma yena kṣaraṇamāpadām /
vidadhātī tataḥ prāhuḥ kṣāram̄ rakṣeti kāraṇāt // 27

bhūtāpṛtisācādīdurgrahebhyo bhayādapi /
loke sādhāraṇam̄ bhasmaśabdo nīrdagdhavastuṣu // 28

vartate prathitastasmāt tripuṇḍram̄ bhasmanā caret /
avidhānakṛtam̄ bhasma naiva dhāryam̄ dvījanmabhiḥ // 29

utpādya vīdhivad bhasma pratyaham̄ dhārayed gṛhī /
svādhyāyādyakhilam̄ karma kṛtvāghebhyo vimucyate // 30

tathaiva brahmaśāri ca vanasthaścāpyasamśayam̄ /
vīdhivad bhasma niśpādya gṛhasthassampratitadhiḥ // 31

yācīto' yācīto vāpi vratastebhyo diśecca tat /
agniśomātmakam̄ bhasma viśvametacca tādrśam̄ // 32

bhasmadānaphalam̄ tasmāt kah̄ paricchettumarhati /
bhikṣubhyaśca vanasthebhyo brahmaśāribhya eva ca // 33

15. B kevalam̄ ūrdhva.

tribhyo grhastho dadyāttadeṣa dharmassanātanaḥ /
na haste nikṣiped bhasma na hastenādadīta ca // 34

pātreṇa saha dātavyamādātavyam tathaiva tat /
yo datte kevalam bhasma pāṇau yaḥ svikaroti ca // 35

tayloragniśca somaśca tapo harati sañcitam /
ādhāya kadalipatre jalakundikayā saha // 36

snātāgatebhyo vīprebhyo nidadhīta puro gr̥hi /
tadālpāyāsamaprājyavyayasādhyam mahāphalam // 37

kṛtvā yaśassamāpnoti gr̥hyaghebhyāśca mucyate // 37 ½
iti caturthasyādhyāyasya dvitīyah pādah

ATHA TRT̥IYAH PĀDAH

[Bhasmanirmāṇavidhiḥ]

ākhyāsyे bhasmanirmāṇavidhimatra samāsataḥ /
yenaiva nirmitam bhasma dvijānām śreyase bhavet // 1

aśīvaissahitāmanikair vikaṭāsyam mahākhalām /
bhramaccittām punar dhenum kṛśāngām malinākṛtim // 2

mṛtavatsāmaśastāngām rogārttām malinendriyām /
adugdhadohinīm nūtnaprasavāmaparāśinīm // 3

dagdhagātrāñca vandhyāñca keśacelāsthibhaksinīm /
vihāya kapilāmādau gomayārthe gaveṣayet // 4

śvetām vā tādṛśimanyāstadalābhena tādṛśih/
kasyāñcittāsu siddhāyām tāmāni gṛhāntike // 5

goṣṭhe niveśya sauhiṭyam vartayan paripālayet /
athoṣasi caturdaśyām tithau snātvā samāhitah // 6

dhautavastro'grataḥ pas' yeddūrvāmaratakopamāḥ /
ajantudahanocchiṣṭāssahāgrāmedhyabhūruhah // 7

sahasraparametyādi mantreṇādāya tāstataḥ /
nītvāntikamapaścātha gām sprśannabhimantrayet // 8

āgāva ityamūḍ mantramatha dūrvāssamāśayet /
tūṣṇīm gavo bhago gā na iti mantreṇa codakam // 9

upoṣya tadahaḥ snātvā pare'hani samāhitah /
dhautavastrassamāsādya sahopakaraṇāśśuciḥ // 10

utthāpya¹⁶ gāmahiṁsrasān gāyatrī mūtramāharet /
kalaśe kāñcane rūpyamaye tāmramaye'pi vā // 11

athavā mṛṇmaye pātre gr̥hṇīyāt pauṣkarepi'vā /
bhūmau nipatanāt pūrvam gandhadvāramitiryan // 12

gr̥hṇīyād gomayam gehi patitam vā sthale śucau /
trir me bhajatvī procyā gomayam śodhayet punah // 13

atyakṣmirītī mantreṇa tasmād dhānyādi coddharet /
mūtram tatra kṣipet santvā siñcāmityamunā tataḥ // 14

pañcānāmityanātha piṇḍān kuryāccaturdaśa /
śucau deṣe śunādhṛṣye śoṣaṇāyārkaraśmiṣu // 15

tannidhāyātha bhuñjita suvṛttesu svakarmasu /
pātreṣu kutracit pūrvamuditeṣu nidhāya tān // 16

śuṣkān rakṣecchucau deṣe yāvat samśoṣanam bhavet /
athaikām rajanīm nītvā tathaivānyedyurutthitah // 17

16. B upokṣya.

snānādyavaśyakam kṛtvā svagṛhyoktena vartmanā /
pratiṣṭhāpyāgnimatraitān juhuyācca yathākramam // 18

ādau tu prāṇavenaikam juhuyād akṣaraiḥ punah /
śādakṣarasya tasyaiva vyāvṛtasyākṣaraiḥ punah // 19

prapade¹⁷naikamebhishu svāhāntair hutiriṣyate /
śāvarṇadevāyāghārāvāyabhāgau tataḥ param // 20

tato vyāhṛtibhiḥ paścādvimśatistu trayādhikā /
nidhānapataye pañca pañca brahmaparāstataḥ // 21

manur namohiranyeti kramādetā hutīścaret /
athartasatyamityekā kadrudāyeti cāparā // 22

yasya vaikāmkatityanyā iti tisro hutīścaret /
anājñātatravayam¹⁸ pañca vyāhṛtyā ca tataḥ param // 23

iti krameṇa hutvātah param svīṣṭakṛtam yajet /
iddhmaśeṣam ca nirvartya pūrṇapātrajalam punah // 24

bṛhmaḥayet pūrṇamasyādi yajuṣānyajalena tat /
kṣipet tadanu mūrdhni brāhmaṇeṣvamṛtamityapi // 25

dikṣu toyam vinikṣipy brahmaṇe dakṣiṇām tataḥ /
datvā pulakamānetukāma evamudirayet // 26

āhariṣyāmi devānām sarvesām karmaguptaye /
jātavedasamenām tvām pulake cchādayāmyaham // 27

tataḥ pulakamāniya cchādayet tena cānalam /
brahmāṇam sa visṛjyātha svayam bhuñjīta vāgyataḥ // 28

iti caturthasyādhyāyasya trītyāḥ pādaḥ

17. B prapedena.

18. B trayā.

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Bhasmāharanāvidhiḥ]

athāhani trītye vā caturthe vā kṛtāplavah /
śuklayajñopavīti san sitavāsāstripuṇḍrabhṛt // 1

samabhyupaviṣan bhasma kuṇḍam kṛtvā purastataḥ /
om tad brahmeti samjñapya santyajed bhasmapaulakam // 2

athopacārān kurvita vyahṛtyāvāhanādikān /
śoḍāśāpi krameṇaiva tato'gnimupasampharet // 3

agner bhasmetyanenātha gṛhṇīyād bhasma cetarat /
mūtreṇa kapilāyā vā'thavā gandhodakena vā // 4

agnirityādimantreṇa tacchodhanamathācaret /
prāyo jalāṁśam samtyajya candanośirakuṇkumaiḥ // 5

agarutritayopetān melayed ślakṣṇacūrṇitaiḥ /
ghanasārarajobhiśca vāṭakikaraṇakṣame // 6

jāte'tasmin vidadhyācca vāṭakāṁstena vartulān /
cūrṇānām melane mantram praṇavañcābhudirayet // 7

anorāṇīyanityādi vāṭakikaraṇopī ca /
saṁśodhya kiraṇair bhānossatpātre sthāpayecca tān // 8

evam bhasma samutpādyā tripuṇḍram tena dhārayet /
gṛhasthāḥ pratyaham prātah snātvānye ca yathāvidhi // 9

esa niṣkāraṇo dharmo brahmakṣatravisām mataḥ /
niṣprayāśo bahuphalassāṁronmūlanakṣamah // 10

abhāve saṁskṛtasyaiva śuṣka¹⁹gomayamātrajam /
yathāvat saṁskṛtam grāhyam tripuṇḍrārtham dvijanmabhiḥ // 11

19. B śuṣṇā.

tasyāpyabhāve tad grāhyam gomayottham²⁰asamskrtam /
śivālayastham yattadvā viprādināmayam vidhiḥ // 12

śūdrānām srotriyāgārapacanāgnisamudbhavam /
tripuṇḍradhāraṇe śastamanyad bhasma tu neṣyate // 13

sarvesām ca tripuṇḍreṇa dhāryamāṇena sarvadā /
mahāpāpāni naṣyanti samsāraśca nivartate // 14

tripuṇḍreṇa vinā dhyānam tripuṇḍreṇa vinā japaḥ /
tripuṇḍreṇa vinā homastripuṇḍreṇa vinā baliḥ // 15

tripuṇḍreṇa vinā dānam pañcaitāni bhrgūdvahah /
dakṣine²¹bhārgavakṣetra varjayediti cābravīt // 16

śikhām dāyamathācāram sūtram puṇḍraṇca pañcakam /
pūrvairācaritam kuryādanyathā patito bhavet // 17

[Nityakartavyakarmāṇi]

snātvācamya pradayārghyam yathāvadvedamātaram /
sāvitrīm vidhivad japtvā svādhyāyamanuvartayet // 18

homaṇca pratyaham kuryādātitheyo gṛhāśramī /
atithim vaiśvadevānte vijāniyādūpasthitam // 19

na pūrvamāgataṁ kañcittaṇca śaktyanupūjayed /
atha mādhyāhnikam karma kṛtvā' tithipurassarah // 20

aśiṣṭakṛtya ātmānam hutaśiṣṭena dhārayet /
ahnassakṛt sakṛd rātrau dvijasyāsanamisayate // 21

nāntarā bhojanam kāryam na tu paksāntayor niśi /
vāgyame kāmacāritvamaśane gṛhamedhinām // 22

20. B gomayo'rtha.

21. B Bhārgavakṣetra - Kerala consists of 64 villages in between Gokarna and Kanyakumari. Of these 32 villages each are created in North and South of Kerala respectively.

snātakānāñca sarvesām bhārgavassamamanyata /
āśouce lavaṇam varjyam piṇḍadānām viṣeṣataḥ // 23

pratyakṣalavaṇam varjyam bṛhadvratadharair dvijaiḥ /
anucchiṣṭe tu nikṣiptam patre tad gṛhamedhinah // 24

na sprṣṭeyustajeyustat sahapatram mahāvratāḥ /
adyādaṣṭau yatir grāsān vānaprasthastu ṣoḍaṣa // 25

dvātrimśad gṛhamedhī tān yatheṣṭam brahmacārinah /
antyāmbupānād ūrdhvam tu patrasparśe dvijottamah // 26

snāyāt sacelamevāyam yasya tvagnitrayam gṛhe /
abhaṅkṣyāṇyapi vakṣyante tāni yatnena varjayet // 27

abudhyā patite teṣām bhakṣaṇe niskṛtim caret /
japet sahasram nāmāni vaiṣṇavānyeva²² cānvaham // 28

śṛṇuyācca purāṇam tu vaiṣṇavam śaivam²³ eva vā /
śrāvayecca yathāśakti nityam pravayaso gurūn // 29

atithin suhṛdaścāpi ye nāmecchanti tānapi /
vedasyādhyāpanam kuryād yathākālaṇca saṁbhavē // 30

nānadhāyāyena śūdresu śṛṇvatsvapi kadācana /
viramayyākhilam karma pradoṣat prāg yathocitam // 31

22. "Viṣṇusahasranāmavattra" the most famous hymn on Viṣṇu consisting of a thousand names of the God is included in the Anuśasanaparva of the Mahābhārata where Bhiṣma instructs Yudhiṣṭhīra on the subject.

23. The eighteen Purāṇas are classified as belonging to Brahmā, Vaiṣṇava and Śaiva as follows.

A Rājasa relating to Brahmā – (1) Brahma, (2) Brahmāṇḍa, (3) Brahma-vaivarta, (4) Mārkaṇḍeya, (5) Bhavīṣya, (6) Vāmana.

B Sāttvika which exalt Viṣṇu – (1) Viṣṇu, (2) Bhāgavata, (3) Nārādiya, (4) Garuḍa, (5) Padma, (6) Varāha. These are usually called Vaiṣṇava Purāṇas.

C Tāmasa which glorify Śiva – (1) Śiva, (2) Linga, (3) Skanda, (4) Agni, (5) Matsya, (6) Kūrma. These six are usually styled Śaiva Purāṇas.

sārkāṁ sāyantanīṁ sandhyāṁ samārādhya yathāvidhi /
āśinah prajapecchaktyā gāyatrīṁ prayato dvijah // 32

athānyacca yathācāram²⁴ kṛtakṛtyastu bhojanam /
śayanañceti samkṣepādācāro gṛhamedhināṁ // 33

darśito yadanuṣṭhānāt gṛhi na skhalati kvacit // 33 ½

iti śāṅkare dharmaśāstre laghudarmaprakāśikāyāṁ
caturthasyādhyāyasya caturthah pādah //
caturtho'dhyāyah samāptah //

24. A yathācātam.

PAṄCAMĀDHYĀYAH

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Dampatiidharmāḥ]

ātmānamnr̥nikartum pitṛñāmāśrayāśanam /
sāksikṛtya kṛtam karma smaran dāreśvākāmukah // 1

vartetartau na janmarkṣe naikādaśyāṁ na parvani /
na śaṣṭhyāṁ na ca saṅkrāntau na vārerkasya nāhani // 2

śrāddham kariṣyan pūrvedyuh srāddham kṛtvā ca taddine /
putrārtham̄ api no gacched dīkṣitaśca na dīkṣitāḥ // 3

nāpriyamānāṁ nākāmāṁ na tathavāmayāvinīm /
na vratasthām̄ vadhuṁ gacchet tyajedeva parāṅganāḥ // 4

jñātvā kāmavatīm bhāryām śāstrasyāpyanatikramam /
strīnāṁ smaran varāñcaindram̄ caret kāmam̄ svayoṣī // 5

āśleṣe vaktrasamyoge vadanagrahaṇepi ca /
viparitaratau cāsyāḥ kāmenāyantranō bhavet // 6

yām yām kāmakalām̄ paśyet prabuddhām̄ samupakramaiḥ /
tām tām nimilayed vadhvāḥ svayām nānyāḥ prabodhayet // 7

pāvakasya varānmedhyā yoṣitastadratau gṛhi /
kāmena sveṣu dāreṣu pravṛtto nāparādhyati // 8

nīcasauratasallāpāṁstiraścāñca viḍambanam /
varjayetāmubhau tatra kāmalilāviḍambanah // 9

śayanād utthitā nārī śucireva śuciḥ pumān /
tasmāt snātvaiva samveśam̄ kuryācca kṛtasamgamaḥ // 10

asakrd yah striyam gacched ekasyām niśi lolupah /
asvargyam tasya tat karma harati brahmavarcasam // 11

ṛtāvagacchato dārānanṛtāvapi gacchatah /
ubhayor narake vāso bhavati bhrūṇahatyayā // 12

puṣpodbheda ārabhya divasāni tu śodaśa /
ṛtukālam vidustatra triṇi pūrvāṇi varjayet // 13

ṛtāvṛtau niṣekākhyam karma mantreṇa kecana /
icchanti bhārgavakṣetre niṣeko mantratassakṛt // 14

pratyapatyam sa ādhatte svagūṇenopalambhanam /
sakṛtkaraṇamātreṇa śimantonnyanam yāthā // 15

iti bhārgava āśāste sa niṣekah puroditah /

[Śodaśakriyāḥ]

utpasyamānasyādyo 'yam samśkārah kathito budhaiḥ // 16

āhur dvitīyam samśkāram karma pūmsavanāhvayam /
trīyamatha simantam caturtham jātakarma ca // 17

pañcamam nāmakaraṇam ṣaṣṭham niṣkrāmaṇam viduh /
prāśanam saptamam cūḍākarma tvācakṣate'ṣṭamam // 18

navamam karṇayor vedham daśamantūpanāyanam /
ekādaśam samārāmbhamāmnāyasya pracakṣate // 19

keśāntam dvādaśam prāhuḥ snānañcāpi trayodaśam /
caturdaśamathodvāham āhuḥ pañcadaśam punah // 20

parigrahām vivāhagneratha tretāgnisaṅgraham /
samśkāram śodaśam prāhustemī śodaśa mantratah // 21

viprakṣatriyavaiśyānām śūdrasyāmantrato na vā /
karṇavedhāntimāsteṣu vivāhaśca tathāvidhah // 22

atra tūttamaviprāñāneva pūrṇatayā ime /
tretāgnisamṛgrahārhāñāmanyesām hrāsa iṣyate // 23

jātakarmādayah strīñām kartavyā mantrato vinā /
karṇavedhāntimāstāsāmudvāho mantrapūrvakah // 24

eka eva hi samśkāro nānyaḥ kaścidihesyate /
sumuhūrteṣu samśkārān vidadhīta yathākramam // 25

sarve sarvān samagraistair yathākālamanuṣṭhitaiḥ /
sarve kṣemakṛtam yānti panthānamakutobhayam // 26

amantram vā samantram vā samśkāram svakulocitam /
akurvan mahadāpnoti kilbiṣam bhārgavakṣitau // 27

iti pañcamasyādhyāyasya prathamah pādaḥ

ATHA DVITĪYAH PĀDAH

[Śodaśakriyākālah]

antarvatnīm viditvātha kuryāt pūmsavanam vadhum /
ādhānataṣṭriye tu māse nottarayor dvayoh // 1

ādhānadivasājñāne divasaiḥ pañcamādibhiḥ /
puṣpodbhedadināmāsi turye vā prathamagrahe // 2

pūmsavānāntaram māsi turye simanta iṣyate /
na pañcāme sa keśāñcīt sammatassaptamādiṣu // 3

simantam prathame garbhe pratigarbham tadyataye /
ādyaprajāyāḥ sūteḥ prāṇmaraṇe'pi tadiṣyate // 4

saṁśkāro viṣṇubalyākhyah keśāñcīnmāsi cāṣṭame /
jāte tu jātakarma prāṇ nābhinālasya vardhanat // 5

prāgeva stanyapānācca kālo'tra paramo mataḥ /
tatra tvakaraṇe kāryamāśaucāpagamāt param // 6

ekādaśe dine nāma kuryād dvādaśa eva vā /
antyatryamīśe daśamyāśca niśāyāḥ kaiścidiṣyate // 7

tairapyatra tadā nāma na kartavyamiti sthitāḥ /
āśaucāpagamānna prāgiti bhārgavaśāsanāt // 8

nāmnāḥ prāgeva paścād vā vartayecca śubhe dine /
yathākulām vacāprāśanāñjanādirapi kriyāḥ // 9

niskṛāmaṇam caturthe tu māse'nnaprāśanena vā /
annaprāśantu ṣaṣṭhe'smin sāvanena taduttamam // 10

saureṇa madhyamāṇam proktam cāndreṇa tvāpadīṣyate /
vapanantu tṛtiye'bde pañcame vā dvijanmanām // 11

akṣarārambhaṇam ceṣṭmanayoreva¹ cābdayoḥ /
vapanānantaram kuryāt karṇavedhaṇ dvijanmanām // 12

oje'bde na tataḥ pūrvamatra bhārgavaśāsanāt /
upanīteḥ puraivoktaḥ kālo'tra tadanantaraḥ // 13

upākarmāṇ² yati te tu punastyaktvā dinatrayam /
kāryāśca vihite kāle jyotiśśāstrānusārataḥ // 14

tathā vratagrahaṇīcaiva yathākālam samācaret /
śukriyavratamadhye tu parvāṣṭamyoḥ samāgame // 15

kṛtvā baudhāyanasnānam tad dinantūpavāsayet /
keśāntasnānayoḥ kālastattat gṛhyānurodhataḥ // 16

snātavyasnānaśeṣatvād udvāhe punaraicchikāḥ /
striṇāmupanayasthāne vivāhastu samantrakah // 17

1. B anavamayoreva.

2. A upakarmāṇi.

uttamo dvādaśabde'yamata ūrdhvam na nindyate /
ṛtumatā vivāhastu śrutismṛtinirākṛtaḥ // 18

atastad darśanāt pūrvam udvāhassarva sammataḥ /
bāhulyāt kanyakānāntu bhārgaveṇa kṛpālunā // 19

omityāṅgikṛtaḥ so'yaṁ āpad dharmo na tūttamāḥ /
nairdhanye tu svayam bhikṣāmatān nirlajjavaccaran // 20

dvitiyām vā tṛtiyām vā svayam vinimayamstriyam /
akṛtyamanyat kṛtvā vā vikriṇan vāsamandiram // 21

yathākathañcit samaye tanayām viniyojayet /
kulaśilagunāḍhyena patinā matimān pitā // 22

tretāgnisamṛgrahe kālam āmnāyādavadhāryatām /
iti kecana samskārāḥ saha kālaiḥ pradarśitāḥ // 23

yadyanniśiddhameteṣu yadyadāvāśyakam bhavet /
ubhayantad vijāniyussarve mauhūrtikāgamāt // 24

iti pañcamasyādhyāyasya dvitiyāḥ pādāḥ /

ATHA TRTĪYĀH PĀDAH

[Snātakānām sthitih]

evam nirdiṣṭakāleṣu kuryāt puṁsavanādikāḥ /
kriyāḥ putrasya nirdiṣṭā vinā snānam prayatnataḥ // 1

snānañca snātukāmasya nātra nirbandhamācaret /
naiṣṭhiko yāvadāyuh syāmiticettasya tu spṛhā // 2

tathā sati yāthākālam snānam nirvartayeta ca /
vodhukāmasya codvāham kārayecca bahuprajāḥ // 3

sahodarānām̄ sarveśām̄ vivāho'numato muneḥ /
tathāpi tatra nirbandham̄ yathānyena tathākarot // 4

surevaikasya putreṇa putravantassahodarāḥ /
avibhaktā vibhāgastu neṣyate bhārgavakṣitau // 5

yadi saubhrātrameṣām̄ yadi vā kāmakāmanā /
kulasantānavṛdhyartham̄ vivāhasso'pi śammataḥ // 6

kāle' nūḍhaḥ svayam kāmavijitaḥ svechchayā caran /
unmattavṛṣavat veṣyālampaṭo naṣṭacetanaḥ // 7

hīnasnānajapācāraḥ satām̄ garhitaceṣṭitah /
bhraṣṭaścobhayato'narthajanmā svakulapāṁsanah // 8

svapitīnniraye ghore pātayennātra samśayah /
ato vivāhassarvesāmiṣṭah kalpoyamuttamah // 9

[Gṛhasthadharmāḥ]

akṛtvā svayamādhānamāhitāgnim na kārayet /
avaśyañca bhaved agnyāhito nilayamīyvān // 10

juhuyāccāgnihotreṇa yāvajīvamatandritaḥ /
kurvita cādhvaram̄ śaktyā meṣālamābhī dvijottamah // 11

iṣṭissautrāmaṇir martyagavāsvapaśuradhvarah /
naiṣṭhikabrahmacaryañca pañca deveṣṭi bhṛgudvahah // 12

iṣṭāpūrte tu yatnena kartavye gṛhamedhinā /
iṣṭena prāpnuyat svargam̄ pūrtam̄ mokṣasya paddhatih // 13

agnihotram̄ tapassatyamāmnāyasyānupālanam̄ /
ātithyam̄ vaiśvadevañcāpiṣṭamityabhidhīyate // 14

pūrtam̄ sarastatākādividhānam̄ yacca gohitam̄ /
pathikebhyo hitañcānyad devatāyatanakriyā // 15

ekāhamapi bhūmistham̄ kurvīta tadalaṁ jalām /
tāraṇe³ saptakulyānām̄ gaustrptā⁴ tasya ced bhavet // 16

jetavyā bhūmidānena ye ye lokāḥ satām̄ matāḥ /
ye ye gavām̄ pradānācca tāmstān lokānavāpnuyāt // 17

kṛtvā gṛhasthah pānthonām̄ viśrāntyai durgamādhvani /
krośamekam̄ viśālānām̄ pādapānām̄ praropanam // 18

vāpikūpataṭkāni devatāyatanāni ca /
patitānyuddhared yastu sa pretya paramām̄ padam // 19

prāpnuyānna ca jāyeta punar bhūmau na samśayah /
praśamayyāśanāyāñca pathikānām̄ dine dine // 20

kṣudhābādhā tu sarveśām̄ dussahā ca samā matā /
āvipramācāṇḍālam̄ vā na vai vaiśamyaṁsiyate // 21

tataśśaktyanurodhena dadyādannam̄ gṛhāśrami /
kṣudhāturaṇām̄ sarveśām̄ śrāṇām̄ pāniyameva vā // 22

śūdropi pūrtadharmaṇa vaidike'pyadhipāravān /
dānaiśca sarvair dātavyam̄ dānadharmo nr̄ṇām̄ varah // 23

sahasrī tu śatām̄ dadyād śatī dadyānnaro daśa /
dadyācca daśamī caikam̄ sarve tulyaphalāḥ smṛtāḥ // 24

vibhave sati dānāni vividhānyācared dvijah /
akṛtvā phalasam̄kalpam̄ ṣaṭkarmā⁵ bāhujaḥ punah // 25

kāmena kāmānāpnoti vihitairūrujo'pi taiḥ /
sarve mokṣāya niṣkāmām̄ prabhavēyuśca taiḥ kṛtaiḥ // 26

3. B tareṇa.

4. B gaṇstaptā.

5. B ṣaṭkarmā.

munih kāmyāni na dveṣṭi karmāṇyapya grajanmanām /
kim tvatra phalasaṃkalpamatastat parivarjayet // 27

iti pañcamasyādhyāyasya trīyah pādah

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Pratigrahaprāyaścittāni]

sarveśāmapi deyānām pratigrāhi dvijottamah /
brahmaṇāl kalpitah pūrvam nānyastatrādhikāravān // 1

keśāñcinna niṣiddhaśca viśeṣajñaiḥ pratigrahaḥ /
ātyantikaparatvena tanniṣedhasya jāyate // 2

tattad dānakathocchittir arthābhāvaśca dharmataḥ /
tattad dānavidher anyathā pramāṇañca tanmuniḥ // 3

bhārgavo bhagavān vikṣya duṣpratigrahajainasām /
prāha dānāni śāntyartham vakṣyante tānyanukramāt // 4

svadharmasthena sarveśām gṛhasthena pratigrahaḥ /
kāryo nānyena kenāpi tasyaitadaghamaṛṣṇām // 5

caitre māsyātapatrāṇi śuklāyām⁶ pratipattithau /
dadyād kuṭumbi⁷viprebhyo niṣiddhasya pratigrahi // 6

upānahau ca vaiśākhe kauśeyam kṣaumameva vā /
trāśayyām tathā śukre vitared vyajanāni vā // 7

śucāvudakakum्भañca dadhi vā kṣirameva vā /
sarpir vā mulgagodhūmaṣṭikānyathavā yavān // 8

ahate vāsasi dadyācchrāvane tilasarpiḥ /
annam vā brahmācāribhyo yatheṣṭam kṣirasamṣkṛtam // 9

māsi proṣṭhapade dadyānmakarau rūpyanirmitau /
aśvamāśvinamāse tu sauvarṇam raupyameva vā // 10

kārtike kapilām dhenumajām vā vitaret sitām /
vatsena saha tatrādyām dvitiyāmanadhaḥkṛtam // 11

pañcabhyo brahmācāribhyo munibhyastrībhya eva vā /
ajinam kṛṣṇasārasya prayacchenmārgaśīrṣake // 12

pauṣe tu tilapadmāni māghe rajatamekhalām /
vratasthāya tu pālāśam dāṇḍam vā rājatam diśet // 13

phālgune dvimukhīm dhenum dadyād ṣadbiḥiḥ padairuyutām /
tadalābhe suvarṇena rajatena ca sādhitām // 14

iti dvādaśa dānāni tattanmāśādyavāsare /
bhārgaveṇa gṛhasthārthe vihitāni samikṣayā // 15

duṣpratigrahajam pāpam tair vilumped grhāśrami /
naikamekata menaikamanekam vā tadaṁhasaḥ // 16

praśame kalpate teṣāmaṅgāṅgitvanibandhanāt /
prāṇyāmēna gāyatrīāssahasrāvartanena ca // 17

anuvākam japan raudram pūyate divasaistribhiḥ /
prātigrāhya niṣiddhārthamupoṣya⁸ tadahāḥ śuciḥ // 18

snātakaścediti prāhur bhṛgukaśyapakāśyapāḥ /
idameva gṛhasthānāmapi sādhāraṇam munih // 19

manyate bhārgavastatra varteta ca vikalpataḥ /
evam vai vartamānastu gṛhamedhī dvijottamah // 20

6. B śuslāyām.

7. B kuṭumba.

8. B upekṣya.

duspratigrahajam doṣam hitvāgniriva dīpyate // 20 ½

iti śāṅkare dharmaśāstre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām
pañcamasyādhyāyasya caturthaḥ pādah //
pañcamādhyāyah samāptah /

ŚAŚTHĀDHYĀYAH

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Pañca sūnā pañca yajñāśca]

pañca sūnā gṛhasthasya cullipeṣaṇikādayah /
kurvita tadaghocchityai pañca yajñān dine dine // 1

devayajño bhūtayajnah pitṛyajña iti trayah /
brahmayajñanṛyajñābhyaṁ saha pañca prakīrtitah // 2

daivo yajñastu homo'tra bhauto yajño balih smṛtah /
yajnah piṇḍakriyā pitryā brahmah svādhyāya ucyate // 3

nṛyajño'thisisatkāra etaireva tu pañcabhiḥ /
pañcasūnāmayaināṁsi kṣapayet¹ pratyaham gṛhī // 4

[Gṛhasthasya dānam pratigrahaśca]

brahmaśārī vanasthaśca yatiśceti trayo'pyami /
gṛhasthasya prasādena jivantyacalitavratāḥ // 5

dadadbhir brahmaśāribhyah śraddhayā gṛhamedhibhiḥ /
tatsahasraguṇam pretya bhujyate pratyupasthitam // 6

vānaprasthāya nivārakabalān yastu śodaśa /
dadyād gṛhītān pretyaiśa bhajecāndramasī kalāḥ² // 7

yatihaste yadapyaṁbho yat puṣpañca kuṭumbinā /
sakṛdāpyarpitam kastadubhayam parimāsyati // 8

1. B kṣamāpayet.

2. A kālāḥ.

ghastho yajate nityam̄ sa eva ca tapasyati /
sa eva dhātā sarveṣām̄ tasmācchlāghyo³ gṛhāśramī // 9

yathā strīnām̄ prabhur bhartā yathā nṛnām̄ dvijottamaḥ /
tathaivātithayo vedyāḥ prabhavo gṛhamedhinām̄ // 10

yathā na vividhair dharmair nopavāsair na ca vrataiḥ /
ārohati divam̄ nārī parantu patipūjanāt // 11

yathā na snānahomābhyaṁ na vedādhyayanena ca /
brahmaśārī divam̄ yātī parantu gurupūjanāt // 12

yathā na vividhaiḥ snānair na cāgneḥ paricaryayā /
vanasthaḥ svargam̄ āpnoti kintu bhojanavarjanāt // 13

yathā na bhaikṣamaunābhyaṁ na ca śūnyālayāśrayat̄ /
yogī siddhiṁ avāpnoti kintu maithunavarjanāt // 14

tathā na yajñair aśrāntam̄ na cāgneḥ paricaryayā /
gṛhasthaḥ svargam̄ āpnoti parantvatithipūjanāt // 15

tasmād atithisatkāre nityam̄ jāgarito bhavet /
yathā na nindye lokair yathā na narakam̄ vrajet // 16

atithim̄ prīnitātmānam̄ āhāraśayanādibhiḥ /
ātmanastārakam̄ vidyād andhakūpopamād gṛhād // 17

juhuāccāgnihotreṇa sāyam̄ prātaratandritah̄ /
yathāvidhi yathākālam̄ pārvāṇādibhiristiḥbhiḥ // 18

yajñair vā paśubandhaiśca cāturmāsyena vā tathā /
traivārṣikādhikānnena somañca vidhivat pibet // 19

śūdrānna kiñcillipseta dadyāccedapyaḥipśitam̄ /
iṣṭim̄ vaiśvānariṁ kuryādaśaktāvitaratra tu // 20

3. B slākhyo.

yājayecca sajātiyān grāhyastebhyah pratigrahaḥ /
rājanyavaiśyāvanyatra rāmakṣetrāditi sthitih // 21

gṛhasthasyāpi nīcānām̄ sevāpadyapi garhitā /
tām̄ akurvan kramair anyaiḥ kurvita dhanasañcayam̄ // 22

oghavad yātī cāpnoti dravīṇam̄ na sthīram kvacit /
kvacit kṣīṇam̄ bhaved daivāt kvacid vṛddhiṁ tadāpunyat̄ // 23

vṛttityāgām̄ na kurvita dravīṇārthe vicakṣaṇah̄ /
vindeta dravīṇam̄ kālād vṛttistiyaktā na labhyate // 24

jananīm̄ janakañcāpi sthavirau gṛhīṇīm̄ satīm̄ /
śīśūm̄ putrañca rakṣiyan kuryādvā vṛttihimṣanām̄ // 25

mātaram̄ pitaram̄ vṛddhau bhāryām̄ sādhvīm̄ sutām̄ śīśūm̄ /
gurum̄ vīpram̄ prapannañca bhartavyān bhārgavo'bravīt // 26

gurvarthe na ca samkocam̄ vṛtteḥ kuryād akiñcanah̄ /
vīprārthe ca kṛte'nyeṣām̄ kurvannapi na duṣyati // 27

yadyasti svaśārīrārthe yat kiñcit kevalam̄ gṛhe /
guruvīprāvubhau tasya bhāgābhyaṁ paritoṣayet // 28

kanyādāne yathālābhām̄ gṛhīṇīyāt sarvato dhanām̄ /
yāvad vyayam tato grhṇānadhikām̄ sa ca duṣyati // 29

adr̄ṣṭarajasam̄ kanyām̄ dadyād eva prayatnataḥ /
gṛhastho bhrūṇāhatyābhīr anyathā paribhūyate // 30

strīdhanām̄ ca yathākāmām̄ dadyāt samprītipūrvakam̄ /
tadaśaktau yathāśaktir yatamānasya jāyate // 31

saṁrakṣan prāk tato dadyāt kanyām̄ strīdhanapūrvakam̄ /
śaktau satyām̄ tu naivartumatūm̄ tām̄ sthāpayed gṛhe // 32

kanyādānennadāne ca vidyādāne'pyanicchataḥ /
pratyakṣam̄ vā parokṣam̄ vā śāsanām̄ na vidhiyate // 33

tasmād adūratassiddhim abhilaśyānupeksyā /
yatamānah pitā tasyāḥ kṛte na kleśamarhati // 34

nicebhyāḥ padavīṁ dadyānnīcā dadyur yathātmane⁴ /
dūrikṛtya vaśikuryādeva nīcān vicakṣaṇāḥ // 35

drṣṭamātre samāhūya madhyamānantikam nayet /
yathānantaviśādah⁵ syāt snihyeyuste'pi ceyatā // 36

uttameśvanavadyeṣu samyagātmānam arpayet /
prāṇānapi dayāluttvād yathaite dadyurañjasā // 37

nīcāṁśca madhyamān ittham adhamānapi ca kramāt /
nīcāśca madhyamair yogair uttamaiśca vaśam nayet // 38

iyāneva hyaśaktasya vidhissarvārthaśādhakāḥ /
tasmin siddhe yathākālaṁ siddhyet sarvam yathāvidhi // 39

iti ṣaṣṭhadyāḥyasya prathamaḥ pādaḥ

ATHA DVITĪYAH PĀDAH

[Putramāhātmyam]

nyāyyenāśadya vittardhīm taistair yogairadhiṣṭhitaiḥ /
uktānuktāni kṛtyāni gṛhi nālpamapi tyajet // 1

śrautasmārtāni karmāṇi sarvāṇi vidhivaccaret /
yena kāmabhug atra syāt pretya ca svargamāpnuyāt // 2

trivargo'pyavirodhena dāmpatibhyām aharniśam /
samacittatayā bhāvyanabhinnavratavṛttibhiḥ // 3

na vidyate pṛthag strīṇāṁ trivargāvāptisādhanām /
bhāvādutātideśād vā patyuryattu tadeva tat // 4

4. B yāthātmane.

5. A yathanantārviśādah.

sarvathāpyanukūlā syāt bhartustad gṛhamedhini /
patireveśvaraḥ strīṇāmiti dharmyam vacco'niśam // 5

smarantī prātikūlyāñca yatnena parivarjayet /
ākāṅkṣetāmubhāvetau putram ca guṇavattamam // 6

aputrayostu dampatyor na loko'styapakilbiṣaḥ /
pitṛbhiḥ patitau syātāṁ luptapindodakau ca tau // 7

pañcabhir daśabhiḥ pūmbhiḥ striyāḥ kāmo na pūryate /
tasmād dvayor bahūnām vā sāpatnyam pāpasādhanām // 8

tathāpyadhibahed bhāryām udūḍhām prāg gṛhāśramī /
saṁbhāvyanāne putrasya tasyāmutpatyasyaṁbhavē // 9

tāmapyadhibahedevamadhibinnā yayādimā⁶ /
anyaya⁷tām na jīvantyor jyeṣṭhayor ubhayorapi // 10

sarvāśvetāśvapatyasya sandigdhe sati janmani /
gatayauvanām ātmānam gṛhasthassamavekṣya ca // 11

anujeṣvagrajamā dārakriyā copapādayet /
sarvopāyasya vaiphalye svikuryād dattaputrakam // 12

piṇḍakartur mukham drṣṭvā sa preyād iti hi śrutiḥ /
putra eva hi piṇḍasya kartā mukhyo'grajanmanām // 13

putrasya mukham ālokya gṛhi muñcet kalebarām /
mriyamāṇasya viprasya gṛhasthasya viśidataḥ // 14

suputragṛhamutsṛjya vapustyaktvābhupasthite /
raurave ghoraghore kah putrādanyah priyamkarah // 15

saśraddham śrāddhadānena pitṛṣāṁtarpanena ca /
pāralaukika⁸ gṛhyoktair vidhānair aṣṭakādibhiḥ // 16

6. B yatādimā.

7. B anyaya.

8. A pāralaukita.

kṣetrapinḍena tīrthānām sevayā dānatarpaṇaiḥ /
ebhir vihāya pretatvam mṛto yāti parām gatim // 17

ato'tra loke'mutrāpi lālanīyah suto mataḥ /
gamane putrakā yūyam cīram jīvata jīvata // 18

evam rahaḥ prakāśam vā sānukampam vacomītam /
āsvādyā paritṛpyanti pitaraḥ karṇapāyinah // 19

nīvāpāmbupradātāram putram dṛṣṭvā prayāsyataḥ /
āsvāso jāyate yasmāttasmāt putro mahattarah // 20

tasmādapatro dattena putravantam yathāvidhi /
sādhayet tvarayātmānam prāptam kālamalaṅghayan // 21

punnāma narakād yasmāt trāyate'tobhidhīyate /
putra ityauraso jātyā dattō mantraprabhāvataḥ // 22

[Māṭrādāyādīvyavasthā]

yeśāntu bhāgineyāḥ syuḥ piṇḍadāstairapi svayam /
apramattair yathākālam bhāvyamatrārthagauravāt // 23

svikāryo bhāgineyastair dattāḥ putra ivanyataḥ /
atantukartāpyātmānam uddharediti hetunā // 24

kiñca strīnām vivāhastu samantrām karma netarat /
dattasvīkaraṇam teṣu keśāñcicca samantrakanam // 25

bhāgineyātmadāyādairapi dattavidhānataḥ /
tasmānna kevalā grāhyā bhaginītyāha bhārgavah // 26

kasmīmścit bhāgineye tu vartamāne tadāparām /
kulatantuvidhānārtham dattām anumatām viduh // 27

niśādasthapatinyāyo nesyate smṛtigauravāt /
bhaginī bhāgineyaśca niśpattistatra karmaṇā // 28

na taylor janmanā tena yattayostadapeksi tat /
ataḥ pumāṁsamādadyuretayā nānyayā saha // 29

sahodaram sahodaryā yasmād dātṛṣu mukhyatā /
mātureva dvayostasmādeśa ślāghyatamo vidhiḥ // 30

eke punardvayoh kāmāt bahvīnām nṛṣu mukhyakam /
dānām icchanti nāriṇām svikārañca yathāmataḥ // 31

ayañca khalu pūrvasmādanyūno'styaparo vidhiḥ /
ūḍhāmajātprasavām dattām gr̥hṇātī yattathā // 32

ayam tu pūrvato nyūnah kiñcidityavagamyatām /
prasūtāyāḥ parigrāham sarveśāmadhamam viduh // 33

ukteṣu teṣu sarveṣu samantrām karma yad bhaved /
dvārīkṛtya pumāṁsam tat strīsamskārakṛtām vrajet // 34

rathyāsu vātavarsābhīyām duṣpraveśāsu taskaraiḥ /
sannidhāne'pi dipasya prakāśstu na yujyate // 35

rathyāprakāśanepyarthe dipah prāśādamūrdhani /
nidheyastatra yogyantad anyatropakariṣyati // 36

bhāgineyātmadāyādādattasvīkaraṇe tathā /
samantrakarma nānveti strīnāmupayamo na yat // 37

tadeva pumsi yogyatvād anyatropakariṣyati /
tasmāt pumāṁsamādadyuh striyaśca kulavṛddhaye // 38

yathākālam yathākāmamiti bhārgavaśāsanam /
sati svabhāgineye tu tamevātra niyojayet // 39

sahodarīvihino'yaṁ yato na kulatantave /
prasūtām sahasantānām dadyād gr̥hṇita cedr̥śīm // 40

tatsantāneṣu puruso nāsti ceditaraḥ pumān /
dātavyaśca pratigrāhyastayā sākamiti sthitih // 41

sūtrinām aviśeṣena bhrātaivodakapūrvake /
bhārgaveṇa samāmnāto na pitrādikramo mataḥ // 42

vivāhe hi taylor mantrair vidyate ca karagrahaḥ /
agneḥ pariṇayo läjahomaścāśmādhiropanām // 43

saptapadyubhayośśirsasamyoगास्त्रभिविष्णुम् /
dhruvarkṣa⁹ darśanām paścād vāgvisarga iti kramāt // 44

avaśīṣṭakriyākāndo mantrapūrva iti sthitih /
tadanvayodbhavām kanyām saha bhrātrā samarpayet // 45

saha tena ca gṛhṇiyād anyathā karma niṣphalam¹⁰ /
veditavyam yathāvacca prāyaścittam dvayorapi // 46

yatra jātā tu tatrasyām tāmāha jamadagnibhūḥ /
yasyā vivāhe läjānām havanām mantrato bhavet // 47

tasyā dānepyupādāne bhrātrīśāhityamāśrayet /
anyathā niṣphalam karma tadāvartanām arhati // 48

jāyate tena sambandhaḥ karmajo na kadācana /
ayathāvidhidattāyām svikṛtāyāñca yositi // 49

jāto na bhāgineyatvam labhate na ca piṇḍadah /
striṇām sambandhavaiśeṣyam pumśāhityanibandhanam // 50

pumśassambandhavaiśeṣyam mantramātramapekṣate /
tathāpi tām striyām hitvā pumāṁsam naiva dāpayet // 51

dattañca naiva gṛhṇiyāt kulavṛddhistato na yat /
yadi vāṁśe sutā kācittadā tasyām kadācana // 52

9. B dhruvarkṣe.

10. A Commentator quotes the following stanza in support of the view:

pitā tathā sodarabhinnābhijau
dattaśca teṣām tanayāḥ pitāmahaḥ /
pitṛyatatputra sapiṇḍa sodaka
mātā ca mātāmaha mātulau kramāt //

jāyeta piṇḍadah kopityato nāpekṣyate pumān /
yeṣām samantrām naivāsti kiñcit karma vidhānataḥ // 53

dattasvīkaraṇām teṣām mantrahinām vidurbudhāḥ /
tatrāpi dānasyākārau kanyāyā eva cottamau // 54

ūḍhāyā madhyamau tau tu sūtavatyāstathādhamau /
tatrāpi sūtavatyāstu svikāre saprājo vidhiḥ // 55

na kevalām samantre'sminnucyate tasya kāraṇām /
nānyāḥ sambandhavicchedī putrasya svasya cobhayoḥ // 56

mātā pradīyamānā tu sambandhāntarasamgame /
samśkāraṇām kāraṇikṛtya samprasthāpayitum kṣamā // 57

bhrātrā jyesthena mātṛā vā mātulenāpi vā bhavet /
naite vicchettumarhanti tasyāḥ putre tadiyatām // 58

yathā janmagṛhasthāyāstasyā dāyādinām nṛṇām /
putrasyaiva tu mukhyatvam tathā dānāt parañca tat // 59

bhavedeva tayā pūrvam sambandho yādrīśo'sya tu /
tasya dānāt param kim vā tādrīśatve vighātukam // 60

hīne'pi mātṛsambandhe vaibhavād dānakarmaṇāḥ /
yathāvat putra sambandhaḥ sthāsyatyevetyasamśayah // 61

hīnatāprāpane putrasambandhasya tu saikikā /
kṣamate sādhu sāmkalpasamayādyair na cetarā // 62

asiddham sādhayitvaiva siddhamūnayitum kṣamā /
tasmāttad dānamevātra tayāpekṣyam na cetarat // 63

yadyo¹¹ janmagṛhasthebhyo mānassambhāvyyate tayā /
putrasya siddhasambandhastairasya svayameva ca // 64

11. B yādyā.

ato na tebhyo dātavyah kāraṇam ghaṭanāditi /
santānāstu sasantānāmanuyāntyeva dharmataḥ // 65

kṛtākṛtprasāṅgitvamatastat kāraṇam mataṁ /
taṁśat prasūtāsvikāre tatsantānāṁśca dāpayet // 66

mantrakarmavihinānāṁ pumḍānādānayoriha /
kāmacāraḥ pareśāṁ tu pūrvoktaṁ vartma vistarāt // 67

iti ṣaṣṭhasyādhyāyasya dvitiyah pādaḥ

ATHA TRTĪYAH PĀDAH

[Pitrādīvyaवasthā]

na dadyād agrajam putram anyasmai dharanīsurah /
na lobhāt parighṇiyād dāsyamānamāpi svayam// 1

yasmin jāte tu tadvamīyāḥ pitaro muditāśayāḥ /
kulatantukaro'smākam nivāpāmbu pradāyakah // 2

asya putraiśca putraiśca modayīyāmahe vayam /
ityevābhvudayaśrāddham svikuryussa katham sutah // 3

anyasmai pitrśāpāya dadyāt kah svikarotu ca /
pitrkarṇavihinānāṁ tat prasādānapekṣiṇām // 4

aihikāmuṣmikasukhasamṛddhiḥ setsyate katham /
ekaputro nijam putramanyasmai nopapādayet // 5

upapāditam apyenam tyajed vidvānanākulah /
parahṛīmāṁsamuddhṛtya svadeham poṣayet katham // 6

udvāhe yāvadākhyātassam̄bandha ucitah purā /
tādṛk sambandhinam putram svikuryāt bhūsuro gṛhi // 7



ayamevottamah panthā itarastvāpadiṣyate /
dauhitro bhāgineyaśca ninditau sutakarmanī // 8

atyāpadyapi putratve bhāgineyam vivarjayet /
iti brāhmaṇamaryādā samkṣepena nirūpītā // 9

dānasvīkarane pautre vidhistūpari vaksyate /
kṣetrajaḥ kṛtīmāḥ putraḥ svayamdatta iti trayah // 10

putradharmeṣu vīprānām niṣiddhā bhargavarṣinā /
sahodhastu sahodhaśced vidhinā putratām vrajet // 11

ūḍhāyāmauraso yādṛg vidhātā tādṛg eva saḥ /
aurase vā sahodhe vā putre jivati nāparam¹² // 12

svikuryādavidhānānna putraḥ syāt svikṛto'pyasau /
svikartā tasya dātā ca sa ceti puruṣāstrayah // 13

prāyaścittam vinā pañktim na labhanta iti smṛtiḥ /
putrasya sveṣu dāreṣu sandihānena saṁbhavam // 14

svikṛte dattaputre tu jātaśced aurasah sutah /
kāniyānapi vīpreṇa jyeṣṭhatāparikalpanam // 15

tasminneaurase kāryameśā dharmasya paddhatih /
mriyamāṇaprajām drṣṭvā bahukṛtvō mṛtaprajām // 16

prathamām adhivindeta dvirdvitiyām sakṛt parām /
kāraṇāni ca varjyāni prajānāśasya yatnataḥ // 17

12. A Commentator quotes Yāñnavalkyasmṛti as follows:

aurasah putrikāputraḥ kṣetrajo gūḍhajasthā //
kāniñah pañcamah proktah ṣaṣṭhah paunarbhavasmṛtah /
dattah kṛtāḥ kṛtīmāśca syayañdatta itirītah //
sahodhajo' paviddhaśca putraḥ dvādaśa kīrtitah //
another view is quoted as:
"kāniñah kanyakājāto mātāmahasuto yataḥ"
yet another statement is as follows:
"piṇḍadomśaharasteśam pūrvābhāve puraḥ paraḥ".

karmāṇi yāni yāni syuḥ smṛtisiddhāni jānatā /
teṣāmalopah prathamam prāyaścittam ca lopite // 18

sadāraputraputrañām¹³ svadattakṣetra vāsinām /
uccaistarām prarudatām vivāsāḥ putraghātakah // 19

sāmudrasalilasnānām¹⁴ kṣaurañca pretadhāraṇām /
patnyāmāpannasatvāyām varjyam vipreṇa jānatā // 20

ādhānarkṣe tu vijñāte tatra nābhyaṅgamācaren /
guruvare tu tailasya na bhājanamapi spr̄set // 21

pitryamannam na bhuñjita parakiyam nimantritah /
vāsasānāhatenāngamācchādyā śayanam tyajet // 22

garbhīṇyām na ratīm kuryānnāgnernirvāpayecchikhām /
pavitramupavitañca na badhnīyānna mekhalaṁ // 23

gr̄hiṇī ca sasatvā na karma kuryāttathāvidham /
na ghṛtaśrapaṇām kuryāt kūśmāṇḍam na ca khaṇḍayet // 24

kūpodakam na prekṣeta sandhyāyām śayanam tyajet /
muktakeśā na seveta nidrām nottānaśāyinī // 25

ucchiṣṭahastā nekṣeta bhāskaram na vinā patim /
paśyet somam vasiṣṭhañca sarvathā natvarundhatim // 26

evamāpannasatvāyām patnyām ye gr̄hamedhinaḥ /
atandritā askhalantaḥ svadharmāt syuranāpadah // 27

dharmaśca teṣāmadhunā samkṣepena pradarśitaḥ /
vistaro vistarādeva vedyo bhārgavaśāsanāt // 28

13. A pātrāṇām

14. A Commentator quotes another smṛti text on follows in support of this view:
udanvadambhasi snānam vapanam pretadhāraṇām
antarvatnyāḥ patiḥ kurvannaprajo bhavati dhruvam.

āsthāya dharmāṇyuktān sākalyenānuvāsaram /
tāvad yāvad prasutih syād dāmpatū nāparādhyataḥ // 29

yayor eteṣu na śraddhā śraddhābhaṅgo'pi vā kvacit /
aprajāvihatau syātām pretya vā kṛtaniṣkṛti // 30

iti ṣaṣṭhasyādhyāyaḥ tṛtīyah pādah

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Śiśuparipoṣaṇaprakārah]

grahāveśādi vipadah samṛakṣetanayām sadā /
bādhāscasya yathākālamāmūlam māntrikair nudet // 1

ūrmikāñca sarudrākṣam kanṭhe sandhārayet sadā /
kaṭiṣṭre ca śarddūladantān kanṭhe ca tannakhān // 2

rambhāpatreṇa kaupinamathavānyaiśca tadvidhaiḥ /
niṣiddham prāg upanayāccelākaupinadhāraṇām // 3

pratimāsañca janmarkṣe śive rudrābhiṣecanam /
bilvamālānivedyādīn dūrvāhavanameva ca // 4

ādityasevāmāyusyamanyat sarvañca kārayet /
rakṣedāgantukāpadbhyyassa yato nākṣamastadā // 5

svāpayennāndhakāre vā vijane vā kadācana /
mitam śvādu hitam medhyamanucchiṣṭamavikṣitam // 6

bubhukṣitair janaistādṛg bhakṣyañca viniyojayed /
krīḍāparicchadaistaistair mano'muṣya vinodayet // 7

bibhiṣikābhūtajantuvyākhyānaistrāsayenna tam /
ramyāstathā sumadhurāḥ śrāvayecca dine dine // 8

avyaktavarnamadurair vacanair dhūlidhūsariḥ /
aṅgairaṅkādhirūḍhasya tanayasya mṛduṣmitaiḥ // 9

dīnānyutsavakalpāni prayānti gṛhamedhinām /
rājavat pañca varṣāṇi daśa varṣāṇi dāsavat // 10

prāpte tu śodaśe varṣe putraṁ mitravad ācaret /
uddhartavyo yathā svātmā vidvadbhiḥ pratiṣiddhataḥ // 11

tatastathātmanah putrānuddhareccāprayatnataḥ /
venustambasya dāvāgnir yathā nāśāya kalpate // 12

duṣputraḥ kulanāśāya kalpate niyatam¹⁵ tathā /
bālassadvamśajāto’pi bālye kupathago yadi // 13

kenāpi nārjavam gacchecchibikādandavat punah /
apathe vāsanām drṣṭvā nopekṣeta tadātmajān // 14

saivā prābalyamāśādyā yad durucchedatām vrajet /
śubhāśubhābhyaṁ mārgābhyaṁ sarit sarati vāsanā // 15

tām vijānan prayatnena yojayet śubhavartmanā /
satputreṇa yathā śuddhir ubhiyor vamśayor bhavet // 16

asatputreṇa cāśuddhisthathaivāvyabhicārataḥ /
dvijatvañcāsyā samśkārair jāyate nātra samśayah // 17

baijikam gārbhikañcaino yattair evāpanudyate /
saṃskṛto mukurah pāṃsutailasaṅgānmalimasaḥ // 18

jāyate’gniśikhāyogād rūpahāniṁ bhajeta ca /
asatasāṅgāt prayatnena tasmāt putrān nivārayet // 19 •

apramattah prayatnena gehinī ca tadā tadā /
prāg aṣṭamābdād bālena yadyad ācaritam bhavet // 20

tasya tasya phalam kṛtsnam pitaraū samanuvrajet /
dharmye¹⁶ vartmani tasmāt sa tābhyaṁeva pratiṣhitah // 21

netavyo drḍhayatnena tadvadeva ca bālikā /
gṛhamagnīm dhanām patnīm putrān putrimśca sarvadā // 22

svām ca rakṣan ya ātiṣṭhet sa gṛhi netaro gṛhi // 22 ½

iti śāṅkare dharmāśāstre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām
śaṣṭhasyādhyāyasya caturthah pādah /
śaṣṭho’ dhyāyah samāptah //

15. A niyatam.

16. B dhārmye.

SAPTAMO'DHYĀYAH

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Gr̥hakartavyavidhiḥ]

gr̥havāstuni kuṭyartham na dadyāt kvacana sthalim /
kasyacid viprakṛṣṭasya jātvanyagaterapi // 1

goghnādinam brahmahanam pulkasam ca vanecaram /
viprastriyam ca kulaṭam vāstau nākrāmayed gṛhi // 2

veśmabhūsimarakṣārthe goghnantu na niyojayet /
prānte vṛtikriyāyām ca pulkasañcāpyanāpadi // 3

na bijam madhusallakyā vapet sadanavāstuni /
svayam jātām tu tāmāśu cchedayenna tu pālayet // 4

madyārthe mañjaricchedam kārayenna gṛhi kṣitau /
viditvā tatpratighātam kurvita ca vicakṣanah // 5

yajñāṅgaśca latāvṛkṣāṁstasyāmutpādayet svayam /
jalāśayānyamedhyāni sarvadā tatra varjayet // 6

jalamatridinacchedyam asprśyam yasya vāstuni /
vartate tad gṛhe devā na gr̥hṇanti vaṣṭṛtim // 7

kālenāśuddhimāpanne yāpanīye jalāśaye /
gr̥habhūmau tamācchadya kenāpi divasam nayet // 8

gr̥habhūdirghikāprānte śūdraveśma na kārayet /
antaram na diśettasmājjalāvataraṇasya vā // 9

kāsāro dirghikā cāṅghrijanmano gr̥havāstunah /
avatārapatham prāpya prāpnuvādapavitratām // 10

ṛtumatyā vṛṣalyāstu pādanyāśam gṛhāṅkane /
dāhakasya ca śudrasya vārayet gṛharakṣakah // 11

etena śauṇḍikādyāśca vyākhyātā rajakasya tu /
śnānāmbaranidhānārthe vipulañcet gṛhāṅkaṇam // 12

dūrataḥ kvacana prāptiriṣyate nanyadā tu sā /
viprakṛṣyāḥ spr̄ṣeyur na vinā vṛṣalamālayam // 13

praveśam viprakṛṣyāñām agnyagāre na kārayet /
anyatrāpi vinā śūdrām dāṇḍahastam na vārdhakīm // 14

lohaṅkārañca tasyānuyāyinam saha sādhanam /
sandhānikāmāhāśūtrasahitañca śilācchidam¹ // 15

sarvatra viprakṛṣyāñām sannikarṣamupeyusām /
preveśam vārayedantar naiva takṣṇā sahāgatān // 16

vijātiyāmśca śūdrāmśca satyarthe tu praveśayet /
yathā na ca spr̄ṣeyuste śayyāvastrādikam tathā // 17

svayam sañcārayed gehī nayecca bahir eva tān /
uddhārayeyuh patrāṇi bhuktavadbhīr abāndhavaih // 18

catuśśālāntarāle ced ucchiṣṭānnakanāñdibhiḥ /
tatsthāne gomayāñbhobhir lepanam kārayecca taiḥ // 19

dāśibhir athavā svābhīr nānyah patroddhṛtau mataḥ /
athavā śuddhahastena kenacit kārayecca tām // 20

teṣām utthānataḥ pūrvam tadiyena svakena vā /
hastaprakṣālanāñbūni gaṇḍūṣitajalāni ca // 21

pādāvanejanam cāmbu viprādanyasya kasyacit /
nālametat trikam soḍhūm vipragartāṅkaṇasthali // 22

mūtram purīṣam² niṣṭhyūtamiti sarvasya ca trikam /
aprakṣālyā tu nocchiṣṭam bhājanam sthāpayed gṛhe // 23

sandhyayor ubhayor nāpi rātrāvaśanataḥ param /
prātassāyañca sammārjya prokṣayed gomayāñbhasā // 24

gṛhāñtarāle sarvatra prātar eva gṛhāṅkane /
tisṛbhi³stisṛbhir dikṣu vidikṣu ca dinātyaye // 25

vartibhir gṛhtasiktābhīr jvalatābhiśca madhyataḥ /
gartāṅkaṇasya nyastābhiḥ priṇayed gṛhiṇī śucih // 26

santānadevatā nityam yatavāg gṛhapālinī /
jalamagniśca śāliśca vrihir vā śuklataṇḍulāḥ // 27

dadhi pañcakamītyetanniśi nocchedamarhati /
janmarkṣe bhaumabhr̄gvośca vārayor na gṛhe gṛhi // 28

atītaśayanasthānam hitvā'nyatra śayīta ca /
retasāḥ kṣatriyādinām na sekasyāntaram diśet // 29

catuśśālāntare śūdrām vāsayettu pṛthag gṛhe /
taskarādi praveśe tu prāyaścittam ca vakṣyate // 30

tacca kuryād yathācāramanyaceti dṛgīritā // 30 ½

iti saptamasyādhyāyasya prathamaḥ pādaḥ /

ATHA DVITĪYAH PĀDAH

[Gṛhyāgnirakṣā]

vaitānikāgnessamrakṣā vedyā vākyācca vaidikāt /
gṛhyāgnirakṣāṇam kiñcid uktamanyad ihocaye // 1

2. AB nīṣṭyātām.

3. B titṛbhi.

1. A silācītam.

yathā sādācca vicchedād rakṣyo vaivāhiko'nalah /
tathetarāgnisamāyogad rakṣya eṣa prayatnataḥ // 2

tathātyalpālpamadhyebhyo mahadbhyaścāpyanāratam /
rakṣyo mahattamebhyāśca doṣebhyassa vipaścītā // 3

mayūrānyakhagocchiṣṭamāghrātām cākhubhojinā /
castuṣpādbhir api sprṣṭamajām cāsvam vinetaraiḥ // 4

havir anyabalau kīrṇam śigrugrñjanayuk ca vā /
sprṣṭam nakulyā bhūspṛṣṭam vṛṇasprṣṭam athāpi vā // 5

kṣatabindukṛtsparsām sprṣṭam pādena buddhitah /
kunakhasprṣṭamasprṣṭyabhūmāu patitaśeṣitam // 6

haviḥ paryuṣitam cānnamacaturthaiśca jantubhiḥ /
sahapakvam havir likṣāmakṣikāmaśakādibhiḥ // 7

ūhah pipilikāvyaśāptataṇḍulena kṛtam haviḥ /
uṣṭikābaḍavārvāṇimeśādinām payastathā // 8

nāryāśca goḥ punar duḥkhadugdham cāvatsaśeṣitam /
anyavatsasya cocchiṣṭamāśaucinyāśca goḥ payaḥ // 9

ghṛtam vā dadhi vāgnipakvam vā kākaśeṣitam /
silindhram hiṅgu nirmālyamiti doṣassamihitah // 10

ebhyo'lpakebho gṛhyāgnidūṣakebhyo gṛhāśrami /
rakṣet prayatnād daivena tad yoge niṣkṛtim caret // 11

tathā ghṛtācikā vamri makṣikā nīlamakṣikā /
talpakotthāḥ kacothāśca⁴ yūkāścāpi ghuṇāhvayāḥ // 12

prāṇinaśca pataṅgādyāḥ piṇḍasamvarttakonmukah /
kṣudrakāṇṭakavāṭūlamakvaṇā⁵ hvatanūruhah // 13

4. B kucotta.
5. B makkun.

svedāṁbu copayuktādravasanāṁbu mukhāṁbu ca /
anadhyayanavelothavādah pādena laṅghanām // 14

ākhorviṭ ca tad eteśām samsparsādeśca yogataḥ /
rakṣed yathāyathām pṛpte niṣkṛtiñca samācaren // 15

aśrūṇi karṇanāsākṣimālāni nakharam tathā /
ākhubhakṣakavīṇmūtrayogo'ṇuprāṇinām śavah // 16

tathocchiṣṭāñca viprāṇāmete vedyā havirbhujah /
sākṣat sparše na doṣāya kalpante gehinām iti // 17

tatrāpi jāte daivena vismr̄ter vā pramādataḥ /
niṣkṛtim niṣkṛteḥ kāṇḍe vakṣyamāṇām samācaren // 18

śūdreṇa pakvamagnau yadanārdramathavārdrakam /
sāmbhah snehaprayogeṇa śūdrocchiṣṭamapidṛṣam // 19

sāmbhah pakvamadurgandhi ciraparyuṣitam tathā /
patitānāmamīṣāñca dāhād rakṣyo hutāsanah // 20

tatrāpi niṣkṛtim kuryād daivādāpatite punaḥ /
sṛgāle duṇḍubhe grāmasūkare caraṇāyudhe // 21

vānare cānalām sakṣat sprṣṭavatyapi cācaren /
ebhir āyatane doṣam nītepi ca yathāvidhi // 22

tathā mṛtasya śūdrasya cāṇḍālāyatanasya ca /
jātitah patitasyāpi yenakenāpi karmanā // 23

sūtikādāhakodakyākharānām cāsrjastathā /
māṁsasyāsthnaśca viṇmūtraretomajārasasya ca // 24

pūtighrāṇāmbunaścopasparṣenāgnim vināśataḥ /
samrakṣet sa caturthaścet sthālipāko'sya niṣkṛtiḥ // 25

kartavyah pavamānākhyasūtrajāte yathoditam /
śāvāsucer upasparśāt sūtakāśaucināpi vā // 26
gr̥hasthah pālayed agnim̥ viprakṛṣyebhya eva ca // 26 ½
iti saptamasyādhyāyasya dvitīyah pādah

ATHA TRT̥IYAH PĀDAH

[Agnyaśuddhiḥ]

pādaśatkād⁶ bahiṣṭhet śūdro'gneḥ patitastathā /
padatrayādvā sacchūdro rajakah padaśatkataḥ // 1
padadvādaśakānnāri bahiṣṭhed rajasvalā /
aṣṭādaśakṛte bāhye padānām sūtikā caret // 2
caturvīṁśatikāttesām dāhakah pracared bahiḥ /
takṣaśca lohakāraśca svarṇakāraśca kāṁsyakṛt // 3
⁷śilācchicchaṇḍikāścātha tato dviguṇato bahiḥ /
śvapacah̥ pulkaso vyādhāścāite ṣatrimśatā padaīḥ // 4
mitād bahir anuktāstu catuṣṣaṣṭyā tu kecana /
icchanti śvapacādinām viprakarṣam padair budhāḥ // 5
sādhāraṇopavarnānām sarvesām na tu kevalam /
gr̥hyāgner eva boddhavyassamudācāra īritah // 6
yathāpramāṇabāhyasthāste'mi vaivāhikānalam /
nopaspr̥ṣeyustatrāpi jāte niṣkṛtiriṣyate // 7
upasparśena viprasya snānayogyasya naṣyati /
tam̥ varjayet prayatnena tam̥ rakṣed apramādataḥ // 8

6. B ṣadkāt.
7. A B śilācīt.

parihārād bahiṣṭhasya nāśuddhyupahatasya ca /
upasparśena śūdrasya caturthe niṣkṛtīm caret // 9
jātito vedabāhyānāmābhāsottamajanmanām /
mā bhūd agner upasparśo bhūte niṣkṛtiriṣyate // 10
viprasyānupanitasya sakṣātsparepi sā matā /
narasya tair upasparśe vahnimuddharatopi vā // 11
naukāyāne tu gr̥hyāgnimuttarottaramāhite /
trt̥iye bhājane nyasya naukām śūdreṇa vāhayet // 12
avibhakto ya āśaucī tasya sparśo'gnināśakṛt /
upasparśe vibhaktasya yathāvanniṣkṛtīm caret // 13
vakṣyate sūtakāśaucinopasparśepi niṣkṛtih /
akṛtvā śaucamutṣṭamalasya sparśane'nalāḥ // 14
naṣyatyeva tato rakṣed bālaścedastī niṣkṛtīh /
traivāṛṣikasya bālasya dhātrīm spr̥ṣṭvā rajasvalām // 15
agneḥ sparśe tathā pañcahāyanasyāpi ceṣyate /
sparśe pañcādhikābdasya tadānimeva cetarām // 16
tadaivāpi ca śūdrāñca naṣyatyeva hutāśanah /
niṣkṛtistu⁸ śiṣoh̥ sparśe kartavyocchiṣṭatājuṣah // 17
kumāri dhyānāhōme tu yogyeti na niṣidhyate /
doṣāñāmiti diñmātramagner atra pradarśitam // 18
kānde tu niṣkṛtē'mi vakṣyante tāratamyataḥ /
śāmyanti samidāhutyā kecidanye sruvāhavaiḥ // 19
ubhayaistaiḥ pare kecīt pūrṇāhutyaiva kecana /
pavamānādika sthālipākair api tathetare // 20

8. A niṣkṛtistu.

vicchedakārinah keciditī sāmānyasamgrahaḥ /
doṣāñāñica laghutvādi dharmāśtrānurodhataḥ // 21

laukikavyavahārācca budhvā niṣkṛtimācaret /
prāg eva niṣkṛtyarhebhyo doṣebhyah pālayeta cet // 22

sa eva prathamaḥ kalpo ye'gnyccehedakarāḥ punaḥ /
doṣāstebhyah prayatnena gopāyeccānalam sadā // 23

iti samgrahataḥ proktam gṛhyāgneh parirakṣanam /
śringagrāhikayā naite sarve bodhayitum kṣamāḥ // 24

tathāpyupari bhūyiṣṭhā vakṣyante svayamūhane /
sāmānyajñāpanāyaiva prāyo mandadhiyāḥ hi tat // 25

iti saptamasyādhyāyasya trīyah pādaḥ

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Bhāryābharaṇam]

iti hāsaiḥ purāṇoktair asakṛccopavarmītaiḥ /
vyabhicāram sadā patnyā manaso'pi nivartayet // 1

yāpayet saha dāsibhiḥ sacchatrāvaraṇām bahiḥ /
dūram dāsaiśca viśvasthaiḥ pravayobhiḥ kṛtātmabhiḥ // 2

āniyamāno vāso na śuklādanyattu dhārayet /
karayoh kañkanān kāṁsyānirmitān navanisvanān // 3

dhārayed athavā rūpyamayān naiva hiraṇmayān /
nāśikābharaṇam keśonnahanām tilakakriyāḥ // 4

vāsaḥ praveṇikābandham varjayeta kulāṅganā /
sauvarṇe saptake dhārye karṇapālyor anādaram // 5

saptakā⁹ sahitam sūtram kanṭhe kārpāsatantujam /
samgrāme devyātrāyāḥ nāṭakiyārthadarśane // 6

udyānabhūvihāre ca gānakandukakeliśu /
jalakrīḍāpaṇaprāptirājadvārapraveśane // 7

mlecchabhūyīṣṭhamārgeṇa gamane ca pravartanam /
kārayenna vaśi bhāvamadhigacched gṛhi striyāḥ // 8

pādaṅguliyakam gulphakiṅkiṇīmapi nūpuram /
cūḍāratnañca sīmantagarbhikāñca lalātikām // 9

nābhi veṣṭanamanyacca tādṛk sarvam na dhārayet /
antargarbhiteśāgrām vartayecchucikarmasu // 10

dvijāṅganānāmācāraḥ samyag yo'yamudīritah /
avāntarakulastrīṇām¹⁰ sama eva mato hi saḥ // 11

nātītikṣṇo na cātīva mṛduḥ sarvatra sarvadā /
arandhradāyi pāpasya gṛhastho gṛhīṇīm nayet // 12

kāmān asyā yathāśakti sādhayed anasūyayā /
bijasamgrahaṇe tailagṛhītakṣirādikarmasu // 13

dāśīsu cānnapāne ca paribhukte ca vāsasi /
vācāpi manasā cāsyāḥ prabhūtam upapādayet // 14

yathācāram vratādīni sarvāṇyasyāśca vartayet /
evam kūṭumbī samṛakṣan dārān śarma samāpnuyāt // 15

asvargyamayaśasyañca kulaṭātvam kulastriyah /
kulānāśakaram tasya nāvakāśam kadācana // 16

9. A B saptamāsahitam.

10. A Commentator quotes a work called Jātinirṇaya to explain the class of people as follows:
avāntarāvubhau nyūnāvācāraih karmāṇa dvijau /
tayoś ūivadvijo vṛtteragrimastvaparodhataḥ //

dadyāt pratīkṣed atyartham parapumbhāṣāṇādikam /
paranārīratir bharturanyapumskāmatām nayet // 17

api svadarmacārīṇyāḥ kandarpo hi bali mataḥ /
tasmāt svadāraikarato lālāyan svakūṭumbiniṁ // 18

sādhayan kāmitān asyā na loke vācyatām vrajet /
yasya rāṣṭre tu cārītracalitā bhūsurāṅganāḥ // 19

kim tena rakṣitām rāṣṭram tamo'ndham praviśenṛpah /
strīnām cārītraśuddhau¹¹ tu loko'yam sampratiṣṭhitah // 20

asūkṣmadhiṣāṇā nemam vidur dharmām sanātanām /
rāmakṣetre viśeṣena cārītraparipālāne // 21

ācārabhedā bahavo vihitā bhṛgusūnūnā /
sthātavyamapramādena sarvāistat paripālāne // 22

iti śāṅkare dharmāśāstre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām
saptamasyādhyāyasya caturthaḥ pādah //
saptamodhyāyāḥ samāptaḥ //

11. A Commentator quotes the following stanza to illustrate the various stages of amorous feelings:

smaraṇam kirtanām kelih prekṣaṇam guhyabhāṣāṇam /
saikalpodhyavasāyaśa kriyānirvṛtireva ca //
etanmaithunamāṣṭāṅgam pravadanti maniṣināḥ //

AṢṭAMĀDHYĀYĀḥ

PRATHAMĀH PĀDAH

[Smārtavicārah]

saṃprāpte vyabhicārasya samśaye gehabṛt svayam /
samānābhijanān prāpya puraskurvan purodhasam // 1

sviyasamśayamāvedya tānāniya tu pañcaśān /
vāgmināḥ kuśalān satyaratāmśca sapurohitān // 2

sādhvir dāsir pṛthānī¹ nitvā tisrastair anuyojayet /
sviyasamśayanirdeśapūrvakam rahasi kvacit // 3

tābhiḥ prabalaṭām nīte sandehe'smin kuṭuṭbināḥ /
gr̥hiṇīm pañcāme veśmānyanuveśya nivāsayet // 4

atha taissaha nirgamyā rājānām sadasi sthitām /
avedayed gr̥hi svīyam samśayam tu tathāvidham // 5

yathā mucyeta sandehād asmādeśa janastathā /
kṛtvā dharmasya rakṣā ca tāryetyabhyarthayeta ca // 6

nrpo'tha caturo dūtair ānāyya pariniṣṭhitān /
mīmāṃsakāmśca smārtāñca preṣayet tad gṛham prati // 7

viprañca svapratinidhim vastram datvāvagunṭhakam /
teṣu mīmāṃsakāḥ praśnān kalpayeyuḥ svayā dhiyā // 8

rājapratinidhim vipram smārtāñca rahasi kvacit /
gr̥hayeyuśca tiṣṭhantastad bahirveśmani kvacit // 9

1. A pṛthānī.

devālaye vā yat satyam tatprakāśanatataḥ /
sākṣināḥ sūryacandrādin² prārthayanto dhṛtavratāḥ // 10

ādhāya manasi praśnān smārto rājñāśca pūruṣaḥ /
ubhāvetau gṛhaṣṭhaśca pravīśeyur gṛhañca tat // 11

kuḍyēnāntaritah smārto dvāropāntē niveśitām /
parokṣamupavīśyātha pṛcchedar³thān hr̄di sthitān // 12

rājapratinidhistasya sannidhau maunamāśritah /
vastrāvaguṇṭhitāśirā niviśetāvadhānataḥ // 13

asamīcīnatāprāptau praśnasyaiṣa kvacit kvacit /
apaniya śirovastram bhūtale nikṣipet sudhīḥ // 14

tam dr̄stvā samanudhīya yathā mīmāṃsakoditam /
tathaiva pṛcchet smārtañca jāyamāne'sya sauṣṭhavē⁴ // 15

sa tu tad vastramuddhṛtya bhūyaśca śirasi kṣipet /
sandhigdhadoṣayā dattānyuttarāñi ca tāvubhau // 16

dhārayetām prayatnena smārto mīmāṃsakān prati /
nivedayecca tatrāpi tasya dharmāḥ puroditāḥ // 17

evam yāvat prayatnena doṣassammatiḥ vā /
cchedo vā samśayasya syāttāvatparyantamācaret // 18

svīkriyeta yadaivāgah pṛṣṭā dharmyena vartmanā /
tadā tām sammukhībhūya pṛcchet prathamapūruṣam // 19

2. A Commentator quotes a stanza to elucidate the view:

ādityacandrāvanilālalau ca
dyau bhūmirāpo hr̄dayam yamaśca /
ahaśca rātriśca ubhe ca sandhye
dharmasha jānāti narasya vṛttam.

3. A pṛśced.

4. A B sanṣṭane.

tasminnukte tadanyaścedastī tam cāpi vācayet /
evamāgasmṛta⁵ssarvāṃstanmukhācchruṇyāt kramāt // 20

kālamanyacca samproktam⁶ sarvam cāpyavadhānataḥ /
śrutvā hr̄di nidhāyātha sthāne samśayamāgatam // 21

mīmāṃsakāśca vijñāpya pārśvasthe rājapūruṣe /
prathamo'yaṁ dvitiyo'yaṁti rītyā tu tanmukhāt // 22

śrutam yathā tathā sarvam atha tair akhilairapi /
rājāpi copasartavya āvedyam tatra cākhilam // 23

āvedanasya samyaktve vaiparītye ca pūruṣaḥ /
rājñastatra na sākṣi syātē tu mīmāṃsakāstathā // 24

anāvṛtaśirā eva tasmāttatra pravīśya saḥ /
smārtenāvedyamāneśu dattakarṇam vaset kvacit // 25

āvedanasyāsamīyaktve smārtam mīmāṃsakāḥ svayam /
smārayeyuḥ śrutam samyag brūyur vā svayameva tat // 26

athāvasita etasmin bahir gacchet sa pūruṣaḥ /
atha tām nijadeśyena vidhīnā sthāpitāgasam // 27

bahir vidhāya kutrāpi vāsayennijamāṇḍale /
paścāttāpavatīm paścād apramādāparāyaṇām // 28

avṛtyā naiva yuñjīta tām bhrāṣṭām api pārthivāḥ /
pūruṣāśca bahiṣkāryāssarve tanmukhatāḥ śrutāḥ // 29

kālajāmstu yathākālamadhaḥkuryād yathāśrutam /
duṣṭāyāmaviduṣṭāmśca samīśaye'pi ca niścaye // 30

duṣṭāyām jārajan sarvān bahiṣkurvīta niścaye /
evam kulebhya uddhṛtya sarvebhyaḥ kuladūṣakān // 31

5. B āgaskṛta.

6. A sampekṣam.

varṇāśramoditān dharmān samrakṣet kṛtadhiḥ sadā /
sandigdhārthasya śūnyatve dāśipraśnena niścīte // 32

saṁānābhijanāḥ brūyuh śuṣkasamśayaniṣkṛtim /
aśūnyatve vidheyo'mbuvicchedo tān gr̄hād bahiḥ // 33

nissārya rājñā nirdiṣṭe kāle śuddhair janaissaha /
vidhāya caitat⁷ saḥ śāntiḥ gr̄hastho bhoktumarhati // 34

evameva bahiṣkṛtya puruṣāṁstat kulodbhavāḥ /
tat saṁsargabhadvān doṣān prāyaścittair vyapohya ca // 35

sabhyaisamānābhijanaissaha bhuñjiyureva te /
saṁsargāt duṣkṛtām nityanaimittikamaśeṣataḥ // 36

dūṣitam tad viśuddhyartham prāyaścittam vidhiyate // 36

ityaṣṭamasyādhyāyasya prathamah pādah /

ATHA DVITIYAH PĀDAH

[Bālakāśuddhivicāraḥ]

saṁskāraih sukṛtaiḥ prāpte kāle pumśavanādibhiḥ /
gārbhikād baijikāccaghāt putro rakṣyāḥ kuṭumbinā // 1

teṣām kālānanuṣṭhāne vakṣyamāṇam vidhim caret /
utkarṣāpādakam karma saṁskāro hi dvijanmanām // 2

janmamātreṇa śūdrāste dvijatvam karmānirmitam /
evam apyavanidevaśiśave stanyapāyine // 3

stanyam na dāpayet pātum śūdrayā sukṛtāgrahī /
vṛṣalāsprṣṭayā mātrā diyamāṇam stanam pīban // 4

7. B caitasah.

snānāt prāk śiśurabrahmavarccasvī syād asamśayam /
sūtavatyā śucirdāsi tvāśaucāpagamāt puraḥ // 5

sparśe rajakanirṇiktam vāsah sarvam ca nānyadā /
aśūdrayā na ca stanyam dāpayed apavitrayā // 6

stanye mātūr vidyamāne netarasyāḥ praśasyate /
asprīsyasprītamasnānam vārayet pānabhojanāt // 7

māsādādvādaśād bālāḥ prokṣaṇena bhavecchuciḥ /
bālasya śūdrasparśe tu nāśuddhiḥ kvacidiṣyate // 8

kaṭīvat kaṭīṣūtrantu kaṇṭhasūtram ca kaṇṭhavat /
bālakasya lalāṭasthalepanam tu lalāṭavat // 9

stanyapasya śucir mātā stanyapāne rajasvalā /
vayasastu caturthāt prāg vidhireṣa pradarśitāḥ // 10

ucchiṣṭam pitṛśeṣam ca striśeṣam gatavāsaram /
hiṅgumaccāśayennaiva kiñcid dravyam gr̄hi sutam // 11

ārabhya vapanāt putram vṛṣalāsprṣṭamāṇbuni /
snapayenna ca śūdrānnām kāmacāropi so'rhati // 12

akṣarārāmṛbhaṇādīni yathākālam samācāret /
yathā sa tu vinītāḥ syāt tathā varteta yatnavān // 13

duhitṛṣvapi tulyo'yamuktaḥ samkṣepato vidhiḥ /
draṣṭavyo vistarastasya bhārgavoktamahāgame // 14

ekam tyajet kulasyārthe bahvarthe dvau parityajet /
gr̄hārthe tu tyajet sarvamātmano'rthe gr̄hānapi // 15

upādhyāyamavaktāram tyajecchisyyamapāthakam /
adughadoinīm gām ca rājānam cāpyarakṣakam // 16

dāsānātmaniyantīṁśca bhāryāmapriyavādinīm /
bibhṛyānna gr̄hi vidvānātmarakṣaṇatparah // 17

yat svagṛhyoditam karma kāryatvena dine dine /
pratyaham tadanuṣṭhāyi kāmyakarmāṇi varjayet // 18

pratipakṣam ca yat kṛtyam prativāsaṁ athāpi vā /
pratyabdamapi gṛhyoktaṁ tat sarvamanuvartayet // 19

pratiṣiddhānnivarteta sarvasmād api yatnavān /
prārabdhabhogaistrpyeta na kuryāt kāmanām kvacit // 20

etāvatyātmarakṣeyam viprasya gṛhiṇāḥ smṛtā /
evam kramād gṛhādinām rakṣayā vindate sukham // 21

ātyantikamihānyatra yat kāmastat samāpnuyāt /
tadāpyetādṛśam jñātvā tatra saktaśca mā sma bhūt // 22

ityaṣṭamasyādhyāyasya dvitīyah pādaḥ /

ATHA TRTĪYAH PĀDAH

[Gr̥hasthasya sāmānyadharmāḥ]

karmāṇambheṣu sarveṣu devaḥ pūjyo gaṇādhipaḥ /
mātaraśca gr̥hasthena brāhmaṇena vijānatā // 1

gaurī padmā śaci medhā sāvitri vijayā jayā /
devasenā svadhā svāhā mātarō lokamātarah // 2

sālagraṇaśilāpūjāṁ gitāpārāyanam tathā /
sahasranāma viṣṇośca na tyajet prativāsaram // 3

ekādaśyavasānena yuktam tūpavasedahāḥ /
ādityodayataḥ kecidahna ārambhamūcire // 4

arunodayato'nye tu tyājyā sā daśamīyutā /
tathāivopavased vidvān simhe māsyasitāṣṭamīṁ // 5

caturdaśīṁ tathā māghepyasitāmitare'pi ca /
tisṛṣvetāsu sarveṣāmupavāsaṁ pracakṣate // 6

dharmaṁ niṣkāraṇam tasmānna tat kālaṁ parityajet /
pitrye karmaṇi tu prāpte tyajyate śiṣṭabhoktṛbhiḥ // 7

nimantritaśca tatkartrā bhoktṛbhir vaiṣṇavī tithih /
śaivi ca nānyadā teṣāmapi tattyāga iṣyate // 8

yeṣāṁ tu śiṣṭabhuktau na nirbandhaḥ pitryakarmaṇi /
saṁprāpte'pi na sā tyājyā nityatvāditi manmahe // 9

yesāṁ tu vidyate śiṣṭabhuktau cāvarjanīyatā /
yāvatā śiṣṭabhuktih syāttāvatte'dyur na cādhikam // 10

paścādūpavaseyuśca dharmalopamanicchavaḥ /
yathākāmam tu bhuñjīraṁ bhoktāra'tra nimantritāḥ // 11

paścādabhojane sthitvā prātaranyedyurāplutāḥ /
niṣkṛtir vratalope yā vakṣyate dharmakāraṇāt // 12

tāṁ ca kuryustadāyattair bhāvyam taiḥ pūrṇabhojibhiḥ /
ekādaśyāṁ na hotavyāḥ sālāyo'gnau vijānatā // 13

iti kecinna tad gr̥hyam rāmakṣetre tviha kvacit /
nāgnidevāśca pitaraḥ pitrarthe ye ca bhūñjate // 14

nādhikriyante yasmātta ekādaśyāmīti sthitih // 14 ½

ityaṣṭamasyādhyāyasya trtīyah pādaḥ

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Viśeṣadharmaḥ]

nivarteta ca kāmyebhyo vratebhyo buddhipūrvakam /
śiṣṭācārānurodhena nityavat vā samācaret // 1

yad yad vratamanuṣṭhātumihate gṛhamedhini /
tatra tatra ca tām vidvān kurvīta sahacārinīm // 2

patyau jīvatī yā yoṣit svayameva vrataṁ caret /
patyurāyuhkṣayam nītvā sā ghoram narakam vrajet // 3

vinā na tasmād bhartāram bhāryā tūpavaset satī /
aśnanyā bhartrśiṣṭānnam vratalopo na vidyate // 4

kāmyeṣu na ca bhartāram codayed vratakarmasu /
coditaścānuvarteta necchet sa ca phalaṁ tathā // 5

evam vai vartamānassa yāvat paśyan nijam vayah /
gataprāyam vanam yāyāthayā sampannaputrakah // 6

patnīm vinyasya putreṣu putravayor vātha putrake /
datte'pi vāthavā śiṣye gacched vā vanamādṛtah // 7

patnyā saha vanaprāptim varjayeta kalau yuge /
rāmakṣetre viśeṣena bhārgavasya vaco yathā // 8

snātakastu vanam gacchet prāyena gatayauvanah /
anāpadyāśramānnāpi gṛhastho bhārgavakṣitau // 9

nityair nāmittikair evamudayacchet svakarmabhiḥ /
karmabhir vā viśiṣyoktaih kṣīṇapāpah praśāntadhiḥ // 10

vītarāgo mumukṣuśca pravrajet sa gṛhāśramat /
tatraiva vā vasannāyusseṣam cānindito nayet // 11

rāgī cet sa tu tatraiva sthātum karma ca kāmadam /
sāṅgam ca vidhivat kartumarhatyeva yathā vane // 12

gṛhasthasya tu dharmāni vyākhyātāni samāsataḥ /
āśramatrayaniṣṭhā ca yathādeśam nirūpitā // 13

vanasthānām tu ye dharmā ye ca dharmāśca bhaikṣavāḥ /
ubhaye te'bhidhāsyante samāsānna tu vistarāt // 14

īti śāṅkare dharmāśtre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām
aṣṭamasyādhyāyasya caturthah pādah/
aṣṭamo'dhyāyah samāptah /

NAVAMO'DHYĀYAH

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Vānaprasthāśramavidhiḥ]

kāleṣu triṣu kartavyam snānamapsu vanasthitaiḥ /
dhāryāṇi nakharomāṇi bhakṣyamannamaranyajam // 1

tenaiva homastenaiva śrāddham cātithipūjanam /
śākamūlaphalāhāraiśśākamūlaphalair api // 2

śraddadhānair anuṣṭhānam svairevānnairiti smṛtih /
vanyānneṣu ca gṛhyantām nīvārādini dharmataḥ // 3

turye turye'thavā ṣaṣṭhe ṣaṣṭhe yadvā'ṣṭame'ṣṭame /
vanastho vanyamaśniyādannam kāle dvijottamah // 4

pakṣānte vā yathāśakti māsānte vā tapaścaran /
grīṣme pañcāgnimadhyastho¹ varṣakāle nirāśrayah // 5

hemante ca jale tiṣṭham²stapasā divasān nayet /
svānuṣṭhānāsamarthasya jarayābhīhatasya tu // 6

bhr̥gvagnijalasampātair mṛtireva vidhiyate /
atha sampannayogaścet svayameva kalebaram // 7

utsrjya kutracid gacched dagdhvā vā yogajāgninā /
uttarām vā vrajedāśām karma samnyasya cākhilam // 8

kalyastatra vasanneva svārtham yogena sādhayet /
yogamaṅgair dr̥dhikṛtya dr̥dheṣvaṅgeśvatandritah // 9

1. B pañjagni.

2. B tiṣṭām.

svādhāyabandhuḥ kāmena vanasthāḥ pretya modate /
na yogāt paramāḥ panthāḥ pretya lokān yiyāsataḥ // 10

na yogāt paramāḥ kiñcit pāpānāñca viśodhanam /
yathāgnir dahati svigdhaḥ śuṣkādrāñyaviśeṣataḥ // 11

tathaivopacito yogaḥ karmapāśān nikṛntati /
yathā mahāradām prāpya mrtpindassamprāṇasyati // 12

tathā yogodakām prāpya karmapiṇḍaḥ prāṇasyati /
yadetat parameṣṭhitvāḥ parameṣṭhīni yacca vā // 13

viṣṇor viṣṇutvamāmnātaḥ rudre rudratvameva vā /
sarvām tadyogajāḥ prāhur nāsti yōgena durlabham // 14

anyena labhyate tanna yattu yōgena labhyate /
svādhāyād yōgamātiṣṭhēd yogāt svādhāyāmāvrajet // 15

evam svādhāyayogābhām yogī kālaḥ nayenmuniḥ /
cittavṛttinirodho'yaḥ yoga ityudito mayā // 16

yathā yogaśikhetyādau yōgaśabdena³ netaraḥ // 16 ½

iti navamasyādhyāyasya prathamaḥ pādāḥ

ATHA DVITIYĀH PĀDAH

[Yogābhāyāsavidhiḥ]

yamāṁśca niyamāṁstadvadāsanam prāṇasamāyamām /
pratyāhāram dhāraṇāñca dhyānam cāṅgam pracakṣate // 1

samādhiñcāsyā yōgasya tānyaṣṭau tena dhārayet /
anye ṣaḍāsanādīni yōgāṅgāni pracakṣate // 2

yamasca niyamaśca dvau yena cānyatra coditau /
ahimsādaya evātra yamāḥ snānādayo'pare // 3

upaveśanamevāhurāsanam vividhañca tat /
tat siddhāsanamityādi nānāśabdair nigadyate // 4

tāvadevāsanam prāhur yāvad dehohyacañcalah /
yatram sthitavataḥ pumasaścetaḥ syād dhyānavartmani // 5

supracāram tadevāhurāsanam nānyadisyate /
prāṇasamāyamānam nāma prāṇasya gatirodhanam // 6

indriyāñām nijārthebhyaḥ pratyāhāro nivartanam /
dhyeiakatānātā vṛttissamādhiriti kathyate // 7

yamānbhikṣṇām seveta niyamāṁśca munir yadi /
yogādhvanā samiheta gantumaprahatakramāḥ // 8

rjukāyaśirogrīva āśināḥ stimitāṅgakāḥ /
ekadhaiva muhūrtārdham muhūrtam vā tato'dhikām // 9

kālamabhyāsayogād vā yāmārdham yāmameva vā /
vardhayannanurudhyāva kramām dairghyamanehasaḥ // 10

ekāsanasthamātmānam yāmāmātramacañcalam /
yadā paśyettadā vidyāttatrātmānam pratiṣṭhitam // 11

evam jitāsano bhūtvā prāṇāyāmām samācaren /
syandeta cānyathā vāyurāyattopī kvacit kvacit // 12

prāṇaspondānmanāḥ spandām vidyād yogavighātukam /
prāṇāyāmām tataḥ kuryān manorodhanatparāḥ // 13

mantrasādhanamālasyam dhūrtagoṣṭhiparigraham /
dhātustrīlolatāñcātra pratyavāyām pracakṣate // 14

3. B śabdena.

kum̄bhake kevale siddhe na kiñcid api durlabham /
bhūvi vā divi vā'nyatra loke vā tasya yoginah⁴ // 15

tat sādhayet prayatnena yogī kevalakum̄bhakam /
kum̄bhayitvānilam̄ dirghakālam̄ tasya tu tiṣṭhataḥ // 16

prasvedah syāttanau pūrvam̄ tena mardanamācaret /
drāghiyasyā tatopyasya vāyor dhāraṇayā punah // 17

āsanasthasya jāyeta dehakāmpo rujām̄ vinā /
tato'pyadhipayā tu syād dardurasyeva cotplutih // 18

bhūyo'pyadhipakambhyasya kālam̄ pavanadhāraṇām̄ /
bhūmīm̄ tyaktvā vased yogī vyomanyapi kṛtāsanah // 19

atimānuṣaceṣṭāsu sāmarthyam̄ codbhavettadā /
bahudhāpekṣyamāṇopī svasāmarthyam̄ na darśayet // 20

svalpamūtro'lpavarcāśca svalpanidropi ca kramāt /
jāyeta ca jaye vāyor yogī taddhāraṇāśrayat // 21

atha parvatasamsiddhiḥ vāyordhāraṇayā bhavet /
pūrvābhādyadikaya tasya balabāhulyalakṣaṇam̄ // 22

mriyeta prahṛtastena gajo vā gavayopi vā /
hastiastataleneva vyāghro vā simha eva vā // 23

syācca kandarpavat rūpam̄ tasya trailokyamohanam̄ /
urvaśyādyā api prekṣya kāmkṣeyustasya saṅgamam̄ // 24

striyam̄ ca yadi seveta tasya vīryakṣayo bhavet /
tataḥ sa varjayedeva strīsevām̄ svārthatatparah // 25

prāpya vāyujayodrekaṁ samruddhaḥ pavanaḥ kvacit /
skhalate yadi cettatra prāṇavam̄ dirghitam̄ japet // 26

enasāmapanodārthametāvāneva yoginah /
paryāpto vidhirākhyātastattadāgamavedibhiḥ // 27

etasyaivākṣaram̄ brahma etadevākṣaram̄ param /
etadevākṣaram̄ jñātvā yo yadicchati tasya tat // 28

etad ālambanam̄ śreṣṭhametad ālambanam̄ param /
etad ālambanam̄ jñātvā brahma-loke mahiyate // 29

iti yohyañjasā vidvān̄ prāṇavam̄ prayato japet /
pāpāni tasya naśeyussukṛtañcardhīmāpnuyat // 30

iti navamasyādhyāyasya dviṭīyah pādah

ATHA TRTĪYAH PĀDAH

[Yogasiddhiḥ]

prāṇavasya japaṇaiva vighnānutaśārya dūrataḥ /
vāyudhāraṇayā śaśvad ghaṭāvasthām̄ bhajenmuniḥ // 1

prāṇāpānamanobuddhijīvātmaparamātmanām̄ /
yadaikyaghaṭanā seyam̄ ghaṭāvastheti kathyate // 2

indriyāṇindriyārthebhya āhṛtyātmani dhārayet /
kalpayedātmanā teṣāmarthavattāmathārthīnām̄ // 3

yadyat paśyettadā dr̄gbhyām̄ tattadātmeti bhāvayet /
karṇābhīyām̄ śr̄ṇuyād yad vinded yadyacca nāsayā // 4

gr̄hṇiyājjihvayā yadyat tvacā yadyat spṛśedapi /
evam̄ bhāvanayopeto yāmātram̄ dine dine // 5

kevalena nayed yogī vāyoh kum̄bhakakarmanā⁵ /
etenā cittasāmarthyamatuccairayamāpnuyat // 6

4. B yoḍhinah.

5. B kum̄bhakaramāṇā.

dūram gacchet kṣaṇenaiva syād dūraśravane paṭuḥ /
dūradarśī ca vāksiddhaḥ kāmarūpo bhavecca saḥ // 7

adr̥syakaranim labdhvā sarvādr̥ṣyaśca sañcaren /
tasya viñmūtralepena hiranyatvamayo bhavet // 8

santatābhyaśayogena jāyeta ca vihangamah /
tadā buddhimatā bhāvyam yoginā yogasiddhaye // 9

siddhoyo yogavighnāstanna rametāsu yogavit /
kṣudrāsu priyamāṇasya yogabhājo’tra siddhiṣu // 10

dūrādeva mahāsiddhistasmāttām nādriyeta ca /
adarśayan svasāmarthyam apramatto divāniśam // 11

svānuṣṭhānam viviktastho vartayeta dine dine /
yathā mūḍhatamah kaścid yathā mūrkhatamo’pi vā // 12

yathā hi badhirah kaścittathā varteta paśyatām /
svasvakāryesu śiṣyāstām prārthayeyuranāratam // 13

uccaissatkṛtya satkṛtya tatra cāvahito bhavet /
pranayāttēvanukrośādathavā tadabhipsītam // 14

sisādhayiśurutthāya svavārthamapi vismaret /
api smaran gurorvākyamabhyasettanāratam // 15

evam santatamabhyasya ghaṭāvasthānica sādhayet /
vinā sā santatābhyaśād vṛthāgoṣṭhyā na siddhyati // 16

tasmādanāratam kuryādabhyaśām yogasādhakāḥ /
tasyaivam vartamāṇasya yogādhvani manasvināḥ // 17

labhyā paricayāvasthā durlabhaḥ kṣudrayoginām /
yasyām paricito vāyur dhāraṇāyogasamśrayāt // 18

suṣumnāmagninā sākam pravīśedanurodhataḥ /
tenaiva saha cittañca tat prāptau tatra yasya tu // 19

dhāraṇāpañcakam kuryāccittena vaśavartinā /
ā padbhyaṁ āca jānubhyaṁ sthānamāhur bhuvo budhāḥ // 20

caturaśram bhuvo rūpam lāksaram pītamucyate /
bhuvasthāne’nilam nītvā lakārenānvitam sudhīḥ // 21

dhyāyan hiraṇmayākāram caturvaktram⁶ caturbhujam /
tatraiva dhārayamścittam nītvā pañca tu nādikāḥ // 22

bhūjayam prāpnuyāttasya bhūyogānna mr̥tirbhavet /
ā jānubhyaṁ āca pāyor apām sthānam pracaksate // 23

ardhendu⁷sannibhaṁ rūpamapām pā bijam ucyate /
śuklañca tāsām sthāne tu vāyum nītvā sabijakam // 24

devam nārāyaṇam dhyāyamścaturbāhūm kīriṭinam /
śāṅkhendudhavalacchāyam viśadāṁbaramacyutam // 25

tatraiva dhārayamścittam gamayet pañca nādikāḥ /
mocanam sarvapāpebhyo jayañcāpām tadāpnuyāt // 26

jalayogena mṛtyunna vindeta ca tataḥ param /
ā pāyor ā ca hr̥dayād vahnisthānam pracaksate // 27

vahnestrikonam rūpam tu raktam ram bijāmucyate /
vahnisthane’nilam nītvā vahnibijasamanvitam // 28

varadam trikṣaṇam⁸ rudram bhasmoddhūlitavigraham /
taruṇārkanibhaṁ dhyāyan suprasannamatandritaḥ // 29

tatraiva dhārayamścittam gamayet pañca nādikāḥ /
āpnuyācca jayam vahner na gacched vahninā mr̥tim // 30

6. B vaktra.

7. B arthenda.

8. B trikṣaṇam.

patite vahnikundepi na dahyeta ca vahninā /
 āhur ā hr̄da ā kūrcāt sthānam vāyor maniṣināḥ // 31

 ṣaṭkoṇam⁹ vāyurūpam tu kṛṣṇam yam bijamucyate /
 vāyusthāne'nilam nītvā svabijena samanvitam // 32

 iśvaram tatra sarvajñam samsmaran viśvatomukham /
 tatraiva dhārayamscittam gamayed pañca nādikāḥ // 33

 āpnuyād vijayam vāyostato'sya na mṛtir bhavet /
 ā kūrcād ā ca phālantādākāśasthānam ucyate // 34

 vartulākāram ākāśam dhūmram ham bijakām matam /
 vyomnah sthāne'nilam nītvā vyoma bijasamanvitam // 35

 tatra yogī smaranneva vyomākāram sadāśivam /
 bindurūpam param brahma śuddhasphatikabhāsuram // 36

 saumyam pañcamukhopetam sphurad bālenduśekharam /
 sarvabhūṣaṇadīptāṅgam daśahastam trilocanam // 37

 sarvāyudhādhyam varadām sarvakāranakāraṇam /
 umārdhadeham tatraiva kurvamścittasya dhāraṇām // 38

 gamayennādikāḥ pañca tato vyomajayi bhavet /
 vyomadhāraṇayā tasya mṛtirna syāttataḥ punah // 39

 āpnuyāt khecaratvāñca tā ittham pañca dhāraṇāḥ /
 tābhīr dattaśarīrasya na mṛtyustasya yogināḥ // 40

 na sīdet pralayepyeṣa mahātmā parameṣṭhināḥ /
 iyameva vanasthānām siddhāvasthā tapasvinām // 41

 enāmāsādyā vartante munayah punyakānane /
 tasmād vanastho¹⁰ yogārtham uttiṣṭhet prayato dvijah // 42

9. B ṣaṭkoṇam.

10. B vānastha.

devakhātam bilam prāpya punyaśailasya sānuni // 42 ½

iti navamasyādhyāyasya tṛṭīyah pādah

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Yogapariśiṣṭam]

athābhyaṣen munir dhyānam vyomaruddhānilassadā /
 devatāyā abhīṣṭāṅgadhyāyī syāt prag yathoditam // 1

idantu saguṇadhyānam anīmādiphalapradam /
 yuktasya nirguṇadhyāne samādhīśca tato bhavet // 2

saṃprāpya samatāvasthām jīvātmparamātmānoḥ /
 samādhīsthaścaredeṣa munir loke nijecchayā // 3

athavā dehamutsṛjya liyeta parame pade /
 gatvā tenaiva dehena vihared¹¹ devabhūmiṣu // 4

yadyadicchenmunissiddhastattad yogena sādhayet /
 esa mukhyatamah panthā vanasthasya samīritah // 5

atrāśakto ythāśāstram vanyām vṛttim samāśrayet /
 tasyām apyapaṭostasya bhṛgvāder mṛtirīritā // 6

śaktasyāpi mumukṣutve samnyāsāśrama iṣyate /
 samnyasya śravaṇādīnī kṛtvā niśitayā dhiyā // 7

sākṣatkṛtya param brahma vipro nirvāṇamāpunyāt /
 viprāṇāmeva samnyāso na tu rājñām na vā viśām // 8

tañca varjyam kalāvāhuriṣyate bhārgavakṣitau /
 vipretarastu samnyāsi pūjyā tān prasādayet // 9

11. D vicard.

cāturmāsyādyanuṣṭhāne śaktā sahāyyamācaret /
nāmasamkirtanair vīprasevayā tīrthasevanaiḥ // 10

mahākṣetreṣu bhajanaissamsāram nistaret sudhīḥ /
durlabhaḥ khalu deho'yaṁ mānuṣaḥ kṣaṇabhaṅgurah // 11

lokottarasadācāraviśeṣātyantaśobhite /
rāmāvanītale janmasiddhiścātyantadurlabhaḥ // 12

kaḥ sudhīṣṭādṛṣam janma sukṛtaiścirasambhṛtaḥ /
saṁprāpya sarvam vismṛtya kāmārādhanalampataḥ // 13

pratigrahaikanirato vāranārivaśamvadah /
tadiyahāvabim̄bokair vismaran sandhyayor dvayoh // 14

moksamārgapathinām svamātmānam pātayedadhaḥ¹² /
ato'pramattaissatataṁ bhāvyamityeṣa vistaraḥ // 15

iti śāṅkare dharmāśtre laghudharmaprakāśikāyāṁ
navamasyādhyāyasya caturthaḥ pādah /
navamo'dhyāyah samāptaḥ /

DAŚAMO'DHYĀYAH

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Samnyāsāśramavidhiḥ]

brāhmaṇastapasā kṣīṇapāpaśsamadamānvitah /
vītarāgo mumukṣutve samnyāsāśramamāśrayet¹ // 1

mātaram pitaram bhāryām putrāṁśca svajanān api /
anumodyartvijaścātra vṛṇīteṣṭimitiśayā // 2

kṛtvā vaiśvānarimistiṁ sarvam datvā ca dakṣinām /
āropyāhavaniyādau prāṇādin pañca mārutān // 3

visrjya saśikhān keśān cchitvā yajñopavītakam /
putram vilokya tvam brahma tvam yajñastvamidam samam // 4

anumantryetthamātmānam eva tañcānucintayan /
nāvekṣamāṇassan prācimudicīm vā parivrajet // 5

sarvavarneṣu bhiksārtham vicared pāṇibhājanah /
prāṇasandhāraṇāyānnamaśniyādauṣadham yathā // 6

yathālābhām yatha na syānmedovṛddhistathaiva ca /
ekāham nivased grāme pañcāham nagare vaset // 7

cature vārṣikān māsān grāme vā nagare'pi vā /
kanyāgāre vased bhikṣur vṛkṣamūle'thavā vaset // 8

tīre vā sarito daṇḍam bibhṛyād kūbarāñkitam /
kāśāyam kaṭīṣūtrañca vāso nānyad anāpadi // 9

dr̄ṣṭipūtān nyaset pādān vastrapūtāḥ pibedapah /
satyapūtām vaded vācam bhikṣāpūtañca bhakṣayet // 10

12. B pātayedataḥ.

1. A sanyāsa.

dandapūtamuśassnāyī manahpūtam samācaren /
 maraṇam nābhinandeta jīvitam vā nirāgrahāḥ // 11

 bhavecca nirahamkārō nāvamanyeta kañcana /
 ativādām²stītikṣeta sthalam kuryānnatū sthiram // 12

 yatavāk sarvadaiva syādāpadarthaṁ vadecca vā /
 asinā cchindato bāhūm limpataścandanena vā // 13

 ubhayorapyakalyāṇam kalyāṇañca na cintayet /
 prāṇyāmaparo nityam dhāraṇādhyānasamśrayaḥ // 14

 syācca paśyedanityatvam ākīṭād ācaturmukhāt /
 amedhyatām śarīrasya jarayā cāpyahṛdyatām // 15

 śārīra³mānasāgantuvyādhibhiśca nipīḍanam /
 nityāndhakāre strīgarbhe madhye mūtrapuriṣayoh // 16

 vāsam tatra ca śītoṣṇaduhkhanusahanam sadā /
 bahuduhkhanubhūtiñca yoninirgamasamkātañ // 17

 jāyamānasya sarvasya jantor mohañca śaiśave /
 pāratantryañca sarvatra rāgāndhatvañca yauvanam // 18

 yogam durvisayaistena narakeṣu ca pātanam /
 narakeṣu mahaduhkham tiryagyonisu janma ca // 19

 īdrśam yadyad anyacca tattat samavalokayet /
 nādhyaset kañcidapyarthamanukūlam triviṣṭape // 20

 tadvad anyatra loke vā maskari sūkṣmadarśanah /
 yāni syuḥ sukhasamjñāni svāpeksāmātrakāraṇāt // 21

 tesāmanityatām dr̄ṣṭvā kācantu na dr̄śorvahet /
 tatrāpyalabdhe samtāpam bhūyiṣṭham sukhamanyathā // 22

2. B ativādām.
 3. B śārīra.

viditvā naiva saktah syādanāsaktih param sukham /
 striyah kāmena naśyanti brāhmaṇā nṛpasevayā // 23

 nṛpāstu brahmadañdena yatayah kāmasamgammāt /
 ato nirasya tat sūkṣmam satyam sadasataḥ param // 24

 jñātvā tadahamasmiti svārthaṁ na khalu vismaret /
 iti samkṣepataḥ prokto bhikṣudharmo na vistarāt // 25

 rāmakṣetre višeṣo'tra na sarvānninatām bhajet /
 anūnābhijanair vīprair gṛhasthaiḥ prārthito yadi // 26

 tad gṛheṣu yatiḥ kuryādaśanam netarālaye /
 asprīyasparśane snāyād vīprakṛṣyopasarpaṇe // 27

 vamane ca divāsvapne snāyāt skanne ca retasi /
 prātaśca pratyaham sāyam api vā śaktyapekṣayā // 28

 saṅkhavādān puraskṛtya sānugo gantumarhati /
 sarvatra pādacāri⁴ syād bhārgavasya vaco yathā // 29

 sarvasamskārasampannassarvato vigatasprahā /
 asāsūyādirahitassadhanānām catuṣṭaye // 30

 sampanne'rthati samnyāsam kartum vīprakulāgraṇīḥ /
 naivānabhijano vīpro na rājā norujopi vā // 31

 asamānaśikho vīpro hino nābhijanena yaḥ /
 tena pakvañca sarvānnamaśnīyādeva veśmani // 32

 anyat samānāmityetad diñmātramupadarśitam /
 dharmasya samanugrāhyam taddhi yaccātha vakṣyate // 33

iti daśamasyādhyāyasya prathamaḥ pādah

4. A Commentator quotes a line:
 "vāhanasthaṁ yatiñ dr̄ṣṭvā sacelasnānamācare".

ATHA DVITIYAH PĀDAH

[Rājadharmaḥ]

rājadharmaṇāthākhyāsyे pūrvasmādapi vistarāt /
rājā rājye'bhiṣktastu pālayet putravat prajāḥ // 1

tattad dharme vyavasthāpya sa hi dharmasya rakṣitā /
āśrayejjāngalām deśām sasyopetañca gohitām // 2

vipratripādām viśūdrapādām śitoṣṇayossamām /
dhanvadurgām⁵ nṛdurgām vā mahidurgamathāpi vā // 3

vanadurgām vrkṣadurgām śailadurgamutāvāset /
grāmādhyakṣān nṛpāḥ kuryād daśadhyakṣāmśca kāmścana // 4

śatādhyakṣān dharmaguptyai deśādhyakṣāmśca dhārmikān /
grāmādhyakṣair apanayed grāmadoṣān mahipatiḥ // 5

aśakyaparihārāmstān daśadhyakṣebhya īrayet /
teṣāmapi tathābhūtāñcchatādhyakṣebhya īrayet // 6

teṣāmapi tathābhūtān deśādhyakṣebhya īrayet /
deśādhyakṣāḥ prayatnena taddosoddharanām yathā // 7

kuryustathā te kartavyām rājñā nihśreyasārthīnā /
āptān rahasyakāryeṣu dharmakāryeṣu dhārmikān // 8

5. B viśūdra.

6. A B give the reading 'dhanadurga'. The commentator of A explains the word to mean a fortification spending much wealth.

But Manusmṛti (VII.70) gives the correct text as 'dhanvadurga' meaning area surrounded by barren waterless land as follows:

dhanvadurgām mahidurgamadurgām vārķṣameva vā /
nṛdurgām giriḍurgām vā samāśrītya vāset purām //

The concepts of grāmādhyakṣa etc; is taken from Manusmṛti (VII.119) etc; where it is stated:

daśi kulaṇ tu bhuñjīta vimśi pañca kulāni ca /
grāmām grānaśatādhyakṣāḥ sahasrādhipatiḥ param //

nipuṇānarthakāryeṣu śūrān samgrāmakarmasū /
ugrānugreṣu kauṭilyabhājāḥ kuṭilavṛttiṣu // 9

klibān strīṣu niyuñjīta nīcān nīceṣu karmasū /
dātṛn dānādhikāreṇa yojayennatū lobhīnāḥ // 10

vidvān vidyādhikāreṇa viduṣāḥ prekṣya yojāyet /
prajābhyāḥ phalaṣṭhāmśamādadyāt prativatsaram // 11

ghṛtamākṣikayor amśam grhṇiyat pañcamām nṛpāḥ /
caturthām gandhasārānām trikamākarajanmanām // 12

ardham madyasya māṁsasya pādāmstrīmśca nidherapi /
hastino daksīṇām dantām vaiyāghre nakhacarmanī // 13

bālām⁷ camaryāḥ śrīge dve kṛṣṇasārasya carma ca /
vṛṣaṇau pauskalau rājā grhṇīyāt sakalam phalam // 14

maricādi latājātām rudrākṣatarujanma ca /
śākāñca śitiśākāñca śuṣkapatrādṛte⁸ ubhau // 15

śodaśāmśāñca grhṇīyād rājā sāravatastaroḥ /
nādadyallavaṇasyāmśam alpamapyavani patiḥ // 16

rte ca dakṣināvartāñcchañkhān sāgarajanmanām /
brāhmaṇebhyāḥ karādānamakṛtvā yo'vanipatiḥ // 17

rakṣet prajāḥ sa tu pretya brahmaṇakamavāpnuyāt /
āpanno'pi na kurvīta rājā tebhyaḥ karagraham // 18

ārāṇyekebhyo bhuñjīta tapāḥ ṣaḍbhāgamaṅkṣayam /
dharmasthāsu prajāsvāsām dharmāṣṭbhāgamarhati // 19

tathā pāparatāsvāsu rājā tad bhāgamarhati /
vṛttādhye rājñī vṛttasthā durvṛtte duṣṭavṛttayāḥ // 20

7. B vālām.

8. B patrāhate.

anukurvanti rājānam yathā rājā tathā prajāḥ /
svadeśapanyadravyasya rājā daśamamarhati // 21

bhāgamanyatrapanyasya tasyārdham pādameva vā /
tadidam śulkamityāhuḥ śulkasthānamativrajet // 22

dambhād yastasya kurvita sarvāpaharaṇam nṛpah /
sarvathā prakṛtidviṣṭam samārāmbham parityajet // 23

rājā balavadālocya hanyāt prakṛtidūṣakān /
cāracaksur nirikṣeta svarāṣtrapararāṣṭrayoh // 24

etad viśiṣyate rājñaścakṣuścārātmakantu yat /
viprāḥ paśyanti vedena gāvō gandhena pārthivāḥ // 25

cārena cākhlānarthān neme paśyanti cakṣuṣā /
sādhūnām pūjanam kuryād duṣṭān dāṇḍena yojayet // 26

upāyāmścaiva sāmādin yathāpātram prayojayet /
samdhyaścīna guṇāmstadvat svadharmam na parityajet // 27

prāpto'pyanyatra kutrāpi viṣaye viṣayāt svataḥ /
sarvān rakṣed višeṣeṇa govipraśaraṇāgatān // 28

nopekṣetākṣamo'pyetān eṣa tasya mahāmakhaḥ⁹ // 28 ½

iti daśamasyādhyāyasya dvitīyah pādah

ATHA TRT̄IYAH PĀDAH

[Rājanitayah]

na kuryān mrgayāsaktim mrgayāmapi na tyajet /
brāhmaṇānām vanasthānām raksārtham mrgayeṣyate // 1

9. B mahamaghah.

tebhyo'parādhyato'pyatra¹⁰ rājā vanyasya dantinah /
vadham na kuryādutsārya vanāntaramamam nayet // 2

mrgayām pariśrānto rājā kṣutṛtsamanvitah /
upasprśyādbhiraśniyāt pibecca na kṛtāplavah // 3

śvabhiḥ sprśto'pi paulindam sāmipyamapi lambhitah /
bāṇoddhāraṇakṛd dehāt parāsorapi pārthivah // 4

mrgayām pariśrānta ācamyāpo viśudhyati /
iti bhārgava āśāste rājā medhyo vanecarah // 5

nākṣeṣu sajjenna strīṣu madyantu parivarjayet /
vākpāruṣyam tyajed dūram dāṇḍapāruṣyavannṛpah // 6

naivārthadūṣanam kuryāt saptaitāni maniṣināḥ /
bhūbhūjo mrgayādīni vyasanāni pracakṣate // 7

saptabhyo vyasanebhyo yo buddhipūrvam nivartate /
sa yaśāḥ ślāghyamāpnoti rājā pretya ca modate // 8

śikṣejjālamucam¹¹ vṛttam rājaudāryam prakāśayan /
paraṇca prāptavarsī syāttathā na jalamanīyathā // 9

nidhau labdhe tadardham tu viprebhyah pratipādayet /
koṣe praveṣayed ardham avaśiṣṭam mahipatih // 10

aniveditavijñātām sarvāñcāpaharennidhim /
rakṣed bāladhānam rājā strīdhānañcāvadhānatāḥ // 11

aśaktasya ca rakṣyām rakṣed abhyarthito dhanam /
vinaṣṭasvāmikam vittamaviprasya harenṛpah // 12

vinaṣṭasvāmikam jñātvā brahmaśvam tatra pārthivah /
svāminam svecchayā kuryānna haret tat pramattadhiḥ // 13

10. B to'tra.

11. B D jālamucam.

vijñātasvāmikam vittam corebhyo'vāpya tasya tu /
ardham dadyānnṛpastasya svāmino'rdhena¹² daṇḍayet // 14

āveditaścet prāgeva sarvam dadyācca taddhanam /
dadyācca sarvathā vipro yadi svāmi tu taddhanam // 15

ajñātasvāmikam corāt prāpya tat svayameva tu /
nissvebhyo vitaret kāmāt kṣiped vā hradaवāriṇi // 16

sāntisvastyayanair daivān upaghātāñcchamaṇ nayet /
paracakropaghātāṁśca śastranityatayā¹³ jayet // 17

śrutiśmṛtitihāsārthakuśalam kulasammataṁ /
tapasvinam̄ śamopetam̄ vidadhita purohitam̄ // 18

śucinavahatāñacchaktisampannān¹⁴ krtacetasaḥ /
sarveṣu ca nayed rājā svastyai samyak sahāyatām̄ // 19

vyavahārān svayam̄ paṣyed vidvadbhir brāhmaṇaissaḥ /
brāhmaṇam̄ vā niyuñjita vyavahārasya darśane // 20

janmakarmavratopetā rājñā kāryassabhāsadaḥ /
ripau mitre samāḥ kenāpyahāryāḥ krodhavarjitāḥ // 21

sarvakāryeṣu cādhino rājā bhavitumarhati /
devāṁśca brāhmaṇāṁstadvat sādhūn sampūjayedtathā // 22

bhajeta vṛddhān rājanyo brāhmaṇam̄ nāvasādayet /
satkarmarataṁ anyam̄ vā dadyād viprāya medinīm̄ // 23

prāyacchat sarvato bhāgān brāhmaṇebhyah prajāpatih /
tāneva ca puraskuryāt sarvakāryeṣvamāyayā // 24

svadattam̄ paraḍattam̄ vā daivadattamathāpi vā /
svatāḥ prāptam̄ kulādvā na teṣām svam̄ nṛpatir haret // 25

12. B C arthena.

13. B śastranityatayā.

14. A B sampannāt.

amukhyam̄ yojayettatra prāṇaṣte mukhyabhāgini /
sarvasaṁbandhavicchede rāja taddhartumarhati // 26

putrādyāstasya dāyādā dāsāntā¹⁵ bāndhavā matāḥ /
bhāgīṣvāvidyamāneṣu sarvathā tasya taddhanam̄ // 27

trīṇi varṣanī gopāyet svāminam̄ pratipālayan̄ /
alabdhvā bhāgīnam̄ paścānnikṣipet sindhusaṅgame // 28

evam̄ brahmahite jāgrat sarvāḥ pālayati prajāḥ /
sa vai prajāpatih sākṣat prajāpatyam̄ padam̄ vrajet¹⁶ // 29

iti daśamasyādhyāyasya trītyaḥ pādaḥ

ATHA CATURTHAḥ PĀDAḥ

[Rājñāḥ ātmarakṣā]

ātmānam̄ sarvato rājā gopāyed apramattadhiḥ /
bahavo ripavastasya svarāṣtrapararāṣtrayoh // 1

višeṣato'nnapāneṣu viśvasthān viniyojayed /
viśvastānāpyaviśvatān citte samavadhārayet // 2

amitram̄ mitratām̄ yāti kārye mitramamitratām̄ /
mitrāmitravibhāgo'yaṁ divyānāmapi durlabhaḥ // 3

bhāryā dadāti garalaṁ bhartre pitre tathātmajah /
nanu svārthaparo loko parasvaharaṇotsukah // 4

yadyasti jīvite śraddhā tarhi kiñcinna viśvāset /
prāyena vijane rājā gahane ca gṛhe vāset // 5

āvaśyake tu saukaryam̄ darśane copapādayet /
viṣaghnamagadām̄ mantram̄ maṇīnīca bibhṛyāt sadā // 6

15. B dāsānta.

16. A vrajeyat.

smitapūrvābhībhāśī syād vācā santarpayejjanān /
vadhyeṣvapi na kurvīta bhrukuṭībhīṣṇām mukhaṁ // 7

aparādhānurūpañca daṇḍam daṇḍyeṣu yojayed /
dvitīyanna kṣametāgah pūrvam ca balavattaram // 8

svadharmaṣya parityāge nādaṇḍyo’sti mahipateḥ /
nyāyyadaṇḍah svarāṣṭre syād bhrīṣadaṇḍaśca śatruṣu // 9

ajihmaḥ suhṛdi snigdho vīpreṣu syāt kṣamāparah /
mahāpātakino hanyād vinā vīprān mahipatiḥ // 10

atyantāgaskṛtam vīpram kṛtacīhnām svarāṣṭrataḥ /
rājā nirvāsayedeṣa daṇḍastasya na cetaraḥ // 11

vīprasya brahmahatyāyāmaśīraskam mahipatiḥ /
phale tu puruṣam kṛtvā deśattam cyāvayennījāt // 12

surākumumbham surāpāne stye’pi ca śunah padam /
gurutalpagatau yonimanyatrāpi ca tādṛśim // 13

vyavahāravidhau yadyad uttaratropadekṣyate /
sādhu tattad apekṣeta prāyaścitte’pi yacca tat // 14

uktāḥ prāyeṇa samkṣepād rājadharmā yathākramam /
yānātiṣṭhan nrpaḥ kīrtim pretya svargam ca vindate // 15

iti śāṅkare dharmāśāstre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām
daśamādhyāyasya caturthaḥ pādah /
daśamo’dhyāyah samāptaḥ

EKĀDAŚO’DHYĀYAH

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Vaiśyadharmaḥ]

rājadharmā yathā proktāstathā dharmān viśāmapi /
abhidhāsyे viśām dharmo vāṇijyam goṣca pālanam // 1

kṛsiścādhyayanaṁ dānam yāgaśceti puroditam /
satyānṛtena yo vaiśyo vṛttimicchet sa sarvadā // 2

varjayet satatam jāgradavikreyasya vikrayam /
lavaṇam carma lākṣā ca yajñasūtrañca mekhalaḥ // 3

sālagrañmaśilā māṁsam madhu tailam manaśsilā /
avikreyāṇi samkṣepād daśaitāni vidurbudhāḥ // 4

anye govikrayam kanyāvikrayam vedavikrayam /
annasya vikrayañcāhussomavikrayapañcakam // 5

varjanīyān samāsena tacca viṣṭeta cetarat /
sahasramaṣṭau cācakhyāvavikreyāṇi bhārgavāḥ // 6

tatra pañcadaśādyāni samkhyātānyatigauravāt /
prativarṣam yathā vṛddhir daśamāṁśena jāyate // 7

mūlasya sāttvikam prāhustathā satyānṛtam budhāḥ /
rājasam pañcamāṁśena tadādhikyena tāmasam // 8

tatra tāmasamujjhītvā dve caite samupāśrayet /
ekatratvāvībhīṣandhiśed tādā sāttvikamāśrayet // 9

vīprānna vṛddhimanicched anviccedavanipateḥ /
sāttvikim rājasim caikāmathavā kramatastayoh // 10

vaiśyo vaiśyād yathākāmam yathālābhañca śūdrataḥ /
dāsāya dadyād ādāya yatkiñcit pāritośikam // 11

gām prabhāte payo dugdhwā vatsocchiṣṭām pracārayet /
paśavyesu pradeśeṣu pracchāyatatuśāliṣu // 12

himśrasatvavihineṣu ṣaṣṭpanirjharaśobhiṣu /
āvarjayecca sauhitye pratyākarseṇa bhakṣanāt // 13

pānād vā sarvathā naiva prahared īrṣayā hṛtaḥ /
śrīne rajjuṁ na kurvita śrīṇībhir na vāhayet // 14

gobhyo grīṣme tu madhyāhne viśramam pratipādayet /
anyatrāpi ca vijñāya śrāntim taistaistadiṅgitaiḥ // 15

ya icched godhanasyardhiṁ sukṛtasya ca vardhanam /
dadhinirmathanaṁ darśe varjayecca prayatnavān // 16

vṛṣānakleśayan kuryād āmadhyāhnācca karṣanam /
yathākālam yathādeśam kurvāno nāparādhyati // 17

na parvāni na samkrāntau na sandhyāyām na vā niśi /
na ca kṛṣṇacaturdaśyām na janmarkṣe na śārkare // 18

noparāge na bhūkampe¹ na riktāsu tithiṣvapi /
kurvita karṣanam yatrāpyācāro na ca dr̄ṣyate // 19

nirlikhya mṛttikāstyājyāḥ khanitreṇetareṇa vā /
halayajñād² vinānyatra tatodbhiḥ kṣālayecca tān // 20

āśvāsayed goṣṭhagatān ṣṭrasauhityatarpaṇaiḥ /
goṣṭhānniṣkāsayenmūtragomayādīn dine dine // 21

vastrābhyangādi dānena lālāyeccā svakīmkarān /
teṣām kautūmbikam kṣemam pratyaham prārthayeta ca // 22

1. A bhūkampe.
2. B phalayajña.

vyasaneṣu ca sarveṣu viśrāntim pratipādayet /
snihyeyuste yathā svasmīmstathā sarvañca³ kārayet // 23

annam bahuguṇam vidyāt sarvaprāṇyavalambanam /
krṣṇāyattañca tattasmāt krṣikarmavivṛddhaye // 24

varṇāśramādyabhedenā yatitavyamatassadā /
brāhmaṇastapasā bhūpassūkarādinirākṛteḥ // 25

vaiśyāḥ svayam pravṛtyā ca śūdrastat sāhyadānataḥ /
svadharma iti vaiśyasya višeṣo 'tra pradarśitah // 26

evam satyānṛtādau ye vartante satatam viśah /
anyatrādhyayanādau ca teṣām kṣemamanargalām // 27

ityekādaśasyādhyāyasya prathamah pādah

ATHA DVITĪYAH PĀDAH

[Śūdradharmaḥ]

atha dharmān pravakṣyāmi śūdrasyāpi samāsataḥ /
svadharmanirataḥ śūdraśśamavānanasūyakah // 1

kuryād dvijānām śuśrūṣām tebhyo labdhena dhārayet /
prāṇān gr̄hān gurūn putrāmstenāiva bibhṛyāt sadā // 2

karṣitah karṣanājjivettatkṣetre tadanujñayā /
āhūtassarvadā vīpraiḥ pravīśedavilaṅghayan // 3

adyedamanyat kartavyamiti teṣu na cintayet /
svenārabdhām tyajet karma dvijārthe 'tyayavat vinā // 4

rājñāḥ kāryam pratijñātaḥ brahmaṇārthepi na tyajet /
viśah kāryam tyajedeva svakāryamiva sarvadā // 5

3. B sarvāñca.

brahmaṇārthe sadāyatto brāhmaṇān paritoṣayet /
adhiṣṭo pi na brūyād abrahmaṇyam jaghanyajah // 6

āgah ksantavyatām tebhyo brūyāccaiva pade pade /
na vadet saṃskṛtām vāṇīm nāśrayellipīmukatām // 7

naiva śāstram⁴ paṭhennaiwa śṛṇuyād vaidikākṣaram /
na snāyādudayāt pūrvam tapo mantrāñca varjayet // 8

kuryāt pūrtañca kurvita maunena pitṛkarma ca /
surāṇyō’pi naiva syānmāṁsanityo’pi vā tathā // 9

na pibet kapilākṣīram pañcagavyañca pādajah /
viṣayeṣu prasaktātmā svecchācāram na darśayet // 10

yasmādyasmānnivāryeta yatra yatrāgrajanmabhīh /
tasmatasmānnivarteta tatra tatrāvicārayan // 11

yatra syāccodanā kṛtye viprāṇāmanasūyayā /
tatra cāśu pravarteta sarvakālamatandritah // 12

evam yo vartate śūdro vartante ye dvijāstathā /
svadharmapariptūtaste sarve yānti param padam // 13

atyāpannasya śūdrasya vṛttih kārukaṭakriyā /
vedadūṣakanicānām sevanām sa tu varjayet // 14

vikrayam lavaṇādinām kuryād vā vṛttikarśitah /
sarvam vā vikrayed⁵ dravyam tasyeṣṭam māṁsavarjitam // 15

gaṇarātravrataṁ śūdro nātiṣṭhettasya kāraṇāt /
vrata pratiniḍhiṁ dānam kṛtvā mucyeta pātakāt // 16

nordhvapuṇḍri bhavennaiva puṇḍram gomayabhasmanā /
dhārayed vīraculliṣthabhasmanā dhārayecchuciḥ // 17

4. B pitur.

5. A vikraye.
B vikriyed.

itihāsapurāṇāni na pathecchrotumarhati /
etenā sarve vyākhyātāḥ prabandhāḥ ṛṣibhīḥ kṛtāḥ // 18

śaivāt ṣadakṣarāt tyaktvā pranavam siṣṭapañcakam⁶ /
japannāpi vinaivāṅgam naiva śūdro’parādhyati // 19

varṇasādhāraṇatvena proktam sarvam samācāret /
sadvidveṣṭuṣu tatrāpi prārabdhamapi tattvajet // 20

na kiñcidapi jānāti dharmam vā’ dharmameva vā /
śūdrastasya sadācāre pramāṇam viprabhāṣitam // 21

pratikālam pramāṇāni bhidyante kālavaibhavāt /
pratideśañca bhidyante tat paṣyed bahusammatiṁ // 22

kāle sarvatra deṣe ca viṣṭya vaideśikam tyajet /
evam dvijān puraskṛtya vartamānah pade pade // 23

nāvasidati śūdro’tra pretya svargañca vindate // 23 ½

ityekādaśasyādhyāyasya dvitīyah pādāḥ

ATHA TRTĪYAH PĀDAH

[Ahimsādīdharmāḥ]

asam̄skṛtān paśūn mantrair na khādeyur dvijātayaḥ /
khādeyussam̄skṛtān mantrair vaidikam vidhimāṣṭhitāḥ // 1

yāvanti paśuromāni tāvanyenāṁsi tad vadhāḥ /
vṛthāpāśughnāḥ prāpnoti na hanyustad vṛthā paśūn // 2

kṛtārthāḥ paśavāḥ pūrvam visṛṣṭāḥ paramesṭhinā /
kratubhūtyai hi nirdiṣṭāḥ kratau tasmād vadho’ vadhaḥ // 3

6. B viṣṭapañcaka.

tādrśam na bhavedeno mrgahantur dhanehayā /
yādrśantu bhavedeno vṛthā māṁsāni khādataḥ // 4

atipannāḥ kratorarthe saṁskārair vidhivattrayah /
prāpnuyantyutthitīm paścādoṣadhyāḥ paśavo drumāḥ // 5

yajña eva paśor himsā kāryā na pitṛkarmāṇi /
daivike'nyatra cāpyeṣā madhuparke'pi neṣyate // 6

kratvarthe paśuhantāro vedatattvārthavedināḥ /
ātmanāḥ paśubhissārdham nayeyur gatimuttamāḥ // 7

gurur gṛhepyaranye vā vipro rājorūjo'pi vā /
āpadyapi na kurvita vadham vidhivivarjitam // 8

vedena vihitā himsā yajñakarmāṇyanugrahāt /
jñātavyā sā tvahimṣeti vedo dharmapravartakah // 9

ahimṣakāni yo bhūtānyahinasti sukhecchayā /
jīvannapi mṛtaḥ paścād duḥkhād duḥkhamavāpnu�āt // 10

praninām bandhanām himsā saṁkleśanamiti trayam /
dūrād vihāya loke'tra kṣemam pretya ca vindate // 11

yadartham yataste yatra ramate yadutecchati /
tasya siddham hi tat sarvam nivṛtto yaḥ parādanāt // 12

nāhimṣayā kvacijantor māṁsamutpattumarhati /
jantuhimṣā na ca svargyā tasmānmāṁsam vivarjayet // 13

bandhanācca vadhājjantoh prekṣya māṁsasya saṁbhavam /
dayayā vā nivarteta sarvamāṁsasya bhakṣaṇāt // 14

śrūyate mahiṣādibhyo duḥkhadhārā marutvataḥ /
tasmād yajñavadho'pi syād duḥkhaleśāptaye kvacit // 15

abudhyā bhakṣite māṁse prāyaścittam cared dvijah /
buddhipūrvam pravṛtto'tra patitatvamavāpnuযāt // 16

na khādati vidhim hitvā piśāca iva yaḥ paśūn /
sa vai lokasya cakṣuṣyo na ca rogaissa pīdyate // 17

pāśadah kanthākarṣi ca prsthaghātī⁷ vadhe guruḥ /
anumanta nihantā ca kretā vikrayakṛt tathā // 18

saṁskartā copahartā ca yo vai māṁsasya khādakah /
ekādaśāmī saṁproktāḥ sarve'pi paśughātakāḥ // 19

yatra svamāṁsam puṣṇiyāt paramāṁsair acoditah /
nātah pāpiyasiṁ kāñcid avasthām bhārgavo'bravīt // 20

tasmān māṁsam na khadeyuh keralasthā viśesataḥ /
hutašeṣam vinā vīprā vedoktenaiva vartmanā // 21

himṣāpi tadvattyājyaiva vedābhupagamo na cet /
prativerṣaṇa paśum hatvā yo yajeta samāṁ samāṁ // 22

yaśca māṁsam tathāśniyāttavubhau sukrte samau /
steyam na kuryāt sarvo'pi svarṇasteyāt patedadhaḥ // 23

na gacchet parakiyām strimagamyāgamane patet /
gogāmi na na duṣṭām strīm gacched budhvā gataḥ patet // 24

śūdrām na gacched vipro vā rājā vā vaiśya eva vā /
vṛṣalyām ramamāṇo yadekarātrena sādhayet // 25

tadbhaikṣabhuḍ jappannityām tribhirabdaiḥ parānudet /
keralesvabhimanyante vṛṣalīgamanām prati // 26

bhārgavasyābhyanujñānam snātakā api bhūsurāḥ /
drṣyate na ca tat kvāpi yujyate na ca sarvathā // 27

nārigamanasāmānyam snātakāḥ parivarjayet /
viśeṣād vṛṣalīsevāmīti rāmanidarśanam // 28

7. Bṛṣthe.

jātitasūttamāṁ nārīmagamyāmadhamāmapi /
samānāmapi cānyasya sagotrāñca vidur budhāḥ // 29

surāpānād dvijassadyo buddhipūrvat patatyadhadhāḥ /
abudhyā patite tatra prāyaścittantu vakṣyate // 30

pāpātmanā yena sākāṁ sāṁsajyeta sa vatsarān /
prāpnuyāt tat samānatvām tat sāṁsargamatastyajet // 31

ityekādaśasyādhyāyasya tṛtīyah pādah

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Bhojanavidhiḥ]

yatheṣṭānnāṁ cared vipro vasan gurukule'nvaham /
tadeva medhyām vai tasya tadevāṁṛtamucyate // 1

devān pitṛn manusyāmśca bhṛtyāmśca gṛhadevatāḥ /
priṇayitvā ūrdhvām tu gṛhasthāḥ śeṣabhuḍ bhavet // 2

vanyānnabhuḍ vanasthāḥ syād ulūkhalavidhiṁ vinā /
dantolūkhala eva syād athavā vāyubhojanāḥ // 3

bhikṣānnam yatiraśniyād amṛbhasā puṭitam sakṛt /
tadeva brahma tanmedhyām medhyām sa brahma cārhati // 4

annām nāmeti yat kīñcid aśucistat parityajet /
uparāgāt purā yāmau dvāvanne varjayet sadā // 5

tataḥ parañca nirmukteḥ snāto bhojanamarhati /
gobrāhmanoparāge tu na jñāte bhojanam caret // 6

naivādyād vysanasthe tu rājñī bandhujane'pi vā /
nārdharātre na madhyāhne nājiṇe na ca sandhyayoh // 7

nārdravāsā na nagno na jālastho na nabhasthitāḥ /
na bhinnāsana āśino na caivotkuṭikāsanaḥ // 8

notsange na śayānaśca na ca bhinne tu bhājane /
na pāṇau na ca medinyām na yatra lavaṇām purā // 9

bālān nirbhatsayannādyānnaikāḥ sākāṁ na śatrubhiḥ /
na dārair na ca pañktisthāḥ pañktih pūtā na ced budhāḥ // 10

na rātrau tilasammiśram na dadhyahani no payah /
nāhutvā naiva cādatvā svapitrō na ca kṛtyavān // 11

nocchiṣṭām nāghṛtam cānnamanarcitvā na bhāryayā /
bahūnām prekṣamānānām naiva nāpi bahir gr̥he // 12

naikasmin bahavo naiva śūnyagehe na garhitām /
na praudhāpādah kṣemārthi nātisauhityamācaren // 13

śuddhāvācāramāhāram kurvāṇasya muhurmanah /
śuddham syādatiśuddhe'tra viśvātmā samprakāśate // 14

tasmād yateran sarve'pi svācārāhāraśodhane /
anyathāndham tamah prāpya duḥkhād duḥkhamavāpnuyāt // 15

iti śāṅkare dharmaśāstre laghudharmaprakāśikāyām
ekādaśasyādhyāyasya caturthaḥ pādah /
ekādaśo'dhyāyah samāptah //

DVĀDAŚO'DHYĀYAH

PRATHAMAH PĀDAH

[Sadācārāḥ]

yaśca vyākurute vāṇīm yaśca mimāṁsate kratum /
tāvubhāvapi vṛttasthau jñātavyau pañktipāvanau // 1

tābhyaṁagrāsanam datvā bhoktavyam pañktisamīśritaiḥ /
esa bhārgavanirdiśṭaḥ¹ panthāḥ keralavāsinām // 2

sadācārān pravakṣyāmi samāsena śubhāvahān /
avamānam na kurvita kasyacit kṣemakautuki // 3

hināṅgān adhikāṅgān vā vikṛtāṅgān athāpi vā /
na hināṁśca na mūrkhāṁśca prahased vyādhitān api // 4

na hinasevanam kuryānna svādhyaṁyam dvijastyajet /
varṇasya cāśramasyāpi vayaso'bhijanasya vā // 5

śrutasya ca dhanasyāpi deśasya samayasya ca /
anurūpeṇa veṣeṇa varteta na ca garhitāḥ // 6

nityam śāstrārthavikṣi syājjirṇavāso na dhārayet /
malinañca tathā tadvat sacchidram vibhave sati // 7

na nāstityabhibhāṣeta mlecchabhāṣām na cābhyaṣet /
na paśyed varca ātmiyam nātmānam tailatoyayoh // 8

na kruddhasya guror vaktrām na bhuñjānāñca gehinīm /
na ca nagnām na codakyām na striyām bhrasṭakañcukām // 9

1. A nirdiśṭaḥ.

nānyaguhyam nijam guhyamanyasmai na ca darśayet /
kanyāyonim na vikṣeta tiraścāñca na maithunam // 10

nāmedhyam prakṣiped agnau nāgnim padena langhayet /
padau na tāpayed agnau tamārṣṭim na kuśaiścaren // 11

na kāmsyabhājane nyāsyannākrāmedaṅghrimaṅghrinā /
na loṣṭamardanam kuryānna caiva bhuvamālikhet² // 12

na dantair nakhalomāni cchindiyād dyūtam vivarjayed /
vastramanyadhr̄tam naiva dhārayennatu pāduke // 13

upavitam na bibhṛyād bhinnañca vidhivarjitam /
nocchiṣṭahaviṣi dadyānna śūdrāya na cākṣaram // 14

na tilānnam na śūdrasya paurohityamupāśrayet /
nodakyāmabhībhāseta suptam naiva prabodhayet // 15

parakṣetre carantim gām na brūyānnāpasārayet /
na vatsakam pibantam vā śūdrarājye sthitim tyajet // 16

adhārmikajanākīrṇe vaidyahine ca nirjale /
vṛthā ceṣṭam na kurvitāpyaślilamanṭam tyajet // 17

natmānamavamanyeta paramaramāṇi na spr̄śet /
sandhyām ciramupāsita śastrakridām parityajet // 18

nimittena vinā khāni na sp̄śed aśucini ca /
na kuryāllokavidviṣṭam dharmamapuyitam kvacit // 19

kuryāt parvasu śāntyartham japahomādikāḥ kriyāḥ /
iti proktassadācārassamāsenā na vistarāt // 20

śiṣṭeṣvartheṣu sādhūnām vṛttasyaiva pramāṇatā // 20 ½

iti dvādaśasyādhyāyasya prathamaḥ pādah

2. B ālipet.

ATHA DVITĪYAH PĀDAH

[Strīdharmāḥ]

baḥusmṛtyuditam samyak sādhubhiśca niṣevitam /
ācāramāśrayennityam dharmakāmo jitendriyāḥ // 1

ācārād āpnuyād āyurācārādipsitam gatim /
ācārācchriyamakṣayyāmācārācca kaler jayam // 2

sarvalakṣaṇahino'pi sadācāram samāśritāḥ /
śraddhāvan anasūyuśca jived eva śatam samāḥ // 3

strīdharmānabhīdhāsyāmāḥ pṛthagevātha kāmścana /
śayanādutthitā dhautapañcakā dhṛtamamśukam // 4

parivartya punar dhautapañcakā gṛhakarmasu /
pravartetodayāt pūrvam gṛhasammārjanam tathā // 5

dadhinirmathanañcāpi kurvita gṛhamedhini /
amāvāsyā ca samkrāntih pitryāṇi karma purogataṁ // 6

trayametadatītyaiva dadhno mathanamācaren /
manthamāvarjayed dadhni yad gṛhe darśa āgate // 7

tasya gāvāḥ prāṇasyeyuśśapeyuh pitaraśca tam /
samkrāntau pitrahūḥ śrutva dadhīrmathānadhvanīm // 8

aruntudamivāvāpya pratiṣṭheran parāṇmukhāḥ /
pitrye karmāṇi nedīṣṭhe mathanam yatra jāyate // 9

na tatra kavyam pitaro havyam nādyuśca devatāḥ /
ādyo niṣedhāḥ sarveṣām samāno'tra tato dvayam // 10

āśāste brahmaṇasyaiva muniḥ keralavāsiṣu /
tataḥ prakṣalya pātrāṇi gām dugdhvātha visṛjya tāḥ // 11

snāyādāvaśyakañcānyat kurvita tadanu svayam /
samit kusumadarbhādi sarvam sampādyā sādhanam // 12

havyam kavyam tathānnañca pacedamalināñmbarā /
nādrāñmbarā na visrastakeśā samyak prabudhadhīḥ // 13

prayatopacared agnim bhartāñca sadotsukā /
abhuktavati naivāyād bhuñjāne vā svabhartari // 14

ekasminneva bhuñjita bhājane sati sambhave /
patipravañatām³ hitvā na kṣanam sthātumarhati // 15

patyuh pratipān na vaded vācā vācamyamam patim /
vilokya tam na bhāseta kruddhe smeramukhī bhavet // 16

śaktvā sarvatra dākṣināyamātiṣṭhedanasūyaya /
sapatiñsu sakhiñvṛttimanutīṣṭhedanāratam // 17

tathā gurūñām śuśrūṣām kuryānnityamatandritā /
putrān na bhartsayed bālān poṣayecca hitāśanaiḥ // 18

stanyāśine yathākālam stanyam dadyāt prasannadhiḥ /
annamannāśine dadyācchiśave na śapet krudhā // 19

rudantam sampratikṣeta nopekṣetānyadutsukā /
arcayed devatā nityam bhartṛmukhyā śucivratā // 20

tīrthayātrām na kurvita pativatnī kulānganā /
bhartuḥ pādodakam tasyāstīrtham netaradiṣyate // 21

vidhavāpi na tīrthāya svasimānamativrajet /
simā tu ⁴dākṣinātyāñām sindhuḥ kumbhavati matā // 22

auttarāñāntu tāmāhuh saritam tu payasvinīm /
sarveśāmapi sahyādriḥ simeti trividhā matā // 23

3. B paripravañatām.

4. A dāñitya.

keraleśu na cānyatra sīmñā kāpi nibandhanā /
tīrthasrāddham na kurvita dvijānāmīha yoṣitah // 24

snāyādañmbuni gaṅgāyāḥ keraleśu niilaiva⁵ sā /
nadyā rodhasi vastavyā nadyām snāyattadicchayā // 25

na dūrasthām nadim gacchenna vedam śrūnyād vadhuḥ⁶ /
nātyakṣarāñi grhṇiyat gītam nrītañca varjayet // 26

nānyam pumāñsamīkṣeta sādhvī guptaiva niṣsaret /
vinā dāśīm na nirgacched acchatrā na kadācana // 27

na rātrau sarvathā gacchennotsave devamandiram /
ittham samkṣepataḥ proktāḥ strīñām dharmā bṛhāttamāḥ // 28

yāñ kārṣṇyena samāsthāya striyo yānti parām gatim // 28 ½

iti dvādaśasyādhyāyasya dvitīyah pādah

ATHA TRTīYAH PĀDAH

[Rajasvalādharmāḥ]

ahanyeva bahir gacched yatavāg rajasi srute /
avarjyapasarśanādanyadasprīṣṭaiva grhād vadhuḥ // 1

na sprīṣcecca grhām kvāpi paścāt svasthānamāśrayet /
na dantadhāvanam kuryānnābhyaṅgam nāñjanam drśoh // 2

na kuryāt kasyacit sparsamātmapakaraṇād vinā /
svasantānād vināpyeṣā stanyapānopajīvanāt // 3

5. A Commentator quotes Parakroḍamāhātmyam an anonymous work of Kerala asnilāyā uttare tire navākṣetram sudurlabham.

6. A Commentator quotes Bhāgavata strīśūdradvijabandhūnām trayi na śrutigocarā.

tr̄tyehani na snānamudakyāyā vidhīyate /
pr̄ptau tūpavasettatra snātvā kāryasya karmaṇah // 4

sandhyāyām na bahiṣṭhed dīrgham vartma na laṅghayet /
anāhataṁ na bibhryād vāso mālyam na dhārayet // 5

na kāṁsyabhājaneśniyāt parṇabhuग brahmacārini /
nyavased bhūmiśayyām ca divāsvāpam parityajet // 6

yadi mālyam bibhartyesā khalatir jāyate sutah /
sutāvāñjanamakṣnocejjātyandhāvuditau ca tau // 7

tau tu śvitrayutau limpatyaṅgāni yadi puṣpiṇī /
karoti yadi sābhyāṅgam tau jāyetām hataprabhau // 8

karoti yadi tūdakyā dantadhāvanamāplavāt /
prāg jāyate tataḥ śyāvadantau tau dantaroginau // 9

yadvoccāvacadantau ca sandhyāyām ced bahiḥ sthitih /
bhajate'pasmr̄tigrastau laṅghayatyayanaṁ yadi // 10

khañjāvanāhatam vāso bibharti yadi kuṣṭhinau /
aśnāti kāṁsyapātre ced bhiksācaryopajivināu // 11

brahmavarcasasamyuktau parṇabhuग yadi puṣpiṇī /
atha parṇabhuग apyeṣā pālāśam parivarjayet // 12

patram pippalasam̄bhūtam naiyagrodhamathāpi vā /
caturthe'hani tu snāyād ādityodayataḥ param⁷ // 13

snānāṁbaram vasānaiva dattam rajakayoṣitā /
nivṛttavṛṣalikarmā susnātā ca dvijāṅganā // 14

7. A Commentator substantiates the view by quoting lines from Āśaucadipaka a text of Kerala, as follows:

puspodabhedadināt tr̄tyakaniśāyāstvanyavedāṁśake- /
pyāplāvām vitanotu vā kusumitetyāhur budhāḥ kecana //

nityakarmaṇi samśudhiṁ labhate nātra samśayah /
athādvijamahelā cet susnāne naiva śuddhyati // 15

dvijābhāsavadhūtinām dvijastrīvaccā dṛṣyate /
snāne prāyaśa ācārastamevātra pramāṇayet // 16

sarvā snātā caturthe'hni sparśayogya yathāvidhi /
māhānasikakṛtye ca kulastrī vihitāplavā // 17

bhartur eva mukham paśyedṛtusnātāgatāṅganā /
anicchayāpi vikṣeta nānyasya vadanam sati // 18

ete rajasvalādharmā bhārgaveṇa nidarśitāḥ /
pradhānāḥ kathitāssarve noktā vistarato bhayāt // 19

iti dvādaśasyādhyāyasya tr̄tyah pādah

ATHA CATURTHAH PĀDAH

[Catuṣṣaṣṭyanācārāḥ]

athāto'upravakṣyāmi nṛṇām keralavāsinām /
anācārān samāsena bhārgaveṇa pradarśitān // 1

anyatrācaraṇābhāvād anācārān bhrgūdvahāḥ /
yānācasta catuhṣaṣṭimākhyāsyē tatra tānapi // 2

varjayed dantakāṣṭhāni nityasnāne sacelatām /
snānavastreṇāṅgamārṣitām sandhyāprāṇi majjanām tathā // 3

pacanādikamasnātvā caikarātrositām jalām /
snānādau phalasam̄kalpām pātrocchiṣṭasthitodakām // 4

sūdrādi sparsane snānam kuryuśśuddhimabhipsavaḥ /
antyajānām sannikarṣe cāpi majjanamācaret // 5

sparsane cāntyajaspr̄ṣṭakūpavāpisthavāriṇāḥ /
sammārjitatksitau pādanyāse ca prokṣaṇādṛte // 6

ūrdhapuṇḍre tripuṇḍram ca kuryācchuddhena bhasmanā /
sarveṣāṁ karmāṇāṁ mantram svayamevoccare dvijah // 7

annam paryuṣitam prāyo vyañjanam ca tathāvidham /
śiśucchiṣṭāñca naivedyam śivasya ca vivarjayet⁸ // 8

hastadattam ghṛtam śākam vinā daryā na bhakṣayet /
mahīṣighṛtagdūḍhādi havye kavyepi ca tyajet // 9

bhuñjīta kabalikṛtya nocchiṣṭāñca yathā bhavet /
aśucir naiva tāmbūlabhakṣanādikam ācaret // 10

brahmacyāśrāme niṣṭhāṁ vratānāṁ karaṇam tathā /
dakṣināṁ ca guroḥ kuryād vīthyāmadhyānantu na // 11

kriyāḥ sōdaśa kurvīta yathākālam yathāvidhi /
kanyāvikrayaṇam naiva kuryāt kāmyavratāni ca // 12

rajasvalāyāḥ sparśe tu striyāḥ snātvaiva bhojanam /
tantuवायाया राजकाश्यापि कर्मा vivarjayet // 13

kṣatrādināṁ na kartavyam rudrākṣādau śivārcanam /
brāhmaṇo naiva kurvīta śūdraśrāddhapratigrahanam // 14

kuryāt pitāmahaśrāddham śrāddham mātāmahasya ca /
tat patnyorapi darśe ca śrāddham vidhivadācaret // 15

pitroḥ samvatsarasyānte sapindikaraṇam tathā /
tāvad dīkṣā ca kartvāyā śrāddham ṛksapramāṇataḥ // 16

anyasya putrātām yātāḥ svapitroḥ śrāddhamācaret /
svabhūmau śavadāhastu kartavyo netaratra tu // 17

stridarśanam na kartavyam samnyāsāśramavartibhiḥ /
mṛteṣu teṣu na śrāddham kuryād uddiṣya tān kvacit // 18

vipraṣtriyo na draṣṭavyāḥ pūṁbhir anyaiḥ patiṁ vinā /
gr̥hād bahir na gantavyam tābhīr dāsim vinā kvacit // 19

vastram śvetetaram tasyā nasāvedhaśca neṣyate /
surāpānānyavipraṣtrisaṅgamādyaiḥ pated dvijah // 20

devālayeṣu pretānāṁ pratiṣṭhāṁ naiva kārayet /
śūdrādi sparśanāṁ devapratimāsu vivarjayet // 21

niveditānnamanyasmai devāya na nivedayet /
ahaviṣyāñca devānāṁ vivāhādi na kārayet // 22

āśīrvādo na kartavyo namaskāraśca bhūṣuraiḥ /
vārṣikī paśuhimsā tu na kāryā mokṣakāmibhiḥ // 23

śaivavaiṣṇavatantroktamāṭād anyattu varjayet /
ekayajñopaviti syād jyeṣṭhabhrāṭā gr̥hi bhavet // 24

kuryuḥ kṣatrādayaḥ śrāddham mātulasya yathāvidhi /
dāyādā bhāgineyāḥ syuṭeṣāṁ naiva tu sūnavāḥ // 25

abrahmaṇo na samnyāsam kuryāt patyau mṛte vadhūḥ /
naiva kuryāt sahamṛtīm pātivratye'pi niścīte // 26

etāvanto hyanācārāḥ prādhānyaparicintayā /
bhārgavēṇa samāmnātā ye cānye kiñcid ūnatām // 27

bhajantaste na cākhyātāśśatañcaiva sahasrakam /
aurdhvadehikakarmāṇī śāvāśaucañca sūtakam // 28

prakīrṇasamgrahañcātā ākhyāsyē bhāga uttare // 28 ½

iti śāṅkare dharmāśṭre laghudharmaprakāśikāyāṁ
dvādaśasyādhyāyasya caturthah pādah /
dvādaśodhyāyāḥ samāptah
[Pūrvabhāgah samāpūrṇah]

8. C vivarjayet.

THE MEMORIAL LAWS OF ŚĀNKARA

OR

A BRIEF EXPOSITION OF VIRTUES

CHAPTER ONE

QUARTER-1

[The origin of the *varṇas* and their duties]

Bowing before gods and sages who are proficient in righteous religious duties and meditating upon Śāmba-Śiva (lord Śiva) attended by his consort Ambā (goddess Pārvati), Śaṅkara (the author) full of self-restraint (makes this attempt). 1

He is moved by the condition of the gentle-minded people who feel it difficult to understand the *Dharmaśāstra*-rules of conduct handed down by Bhārgava, because of its vastness. Having perused the same here and there and moved by compassion towards them (the present attempt is made). 2

Mostly the same treatise is epitomised here in mild words using a limited vocabulary though comprehensive in its scope to form a separate manual. 3

It is just like another beacon of light on religious duties, flawless in concept and entitled 'Laghudharmaprakāśikā', a brief exposition shedding light on religious duties of *varṇas* (castes) and *āśramas* (the [four] stages of life). 4

Brāhmins, *Kṣatriyas*, *Vaiśyas* and *Śūdras* are the four castes that were produced respectively from the face, hands, thighs and feet, in older times, from the Self-born (lord the creator). 5

Hence they are called *Prākṛta*, the natural ones owing to their origin from nature; also they are called *Vaikṛta*, having undergone transformation (from their nature), and *Saṅkīrṇa*, the mixed ones by interaction between them. 6

All these mixed ones have deviated from virtues, the duties ordained by the Vedas which are conducive to the well-being of progress and which are unopposed. 7

Adharma, the non-virtue, is the opponent since it reverts from Vedic ordinances. One becomes virtuous indeed by knowing the distinction between virtue and non-virtue. 8

Āśramas (the stages of life) vary like *Brahmacarya* (celibacy) and as such are called *Brahmacārins* (the celibates), *Gṛhasthas* (the householders), *Vanasthas* (the forest-dwellers) and *Bhikṣus* (the ascetics). 9

They have different attires, different duties and different food-habits. Hereafter you may understand the common duties (of these four castes). 10

All human beings irrespective of castes are expected to follow certain duties and hence they are called general rules (applicable to all). 11

They are: patience, truthfulness, control (of sense organs), purity (of body and mind), non-violence, abstinence from theft, omission of harsh words, keeping away from inciting others, absence of greed (and) humility; 12

(And) freedom from jealousy, feeling of equality (for both friends and foes), kindheartedness and offering of alms according to one's financial ability, do epitomise these (general duties). 13

As self-restraint to gods and pity to demons, the supreme virtue of the human being is munificence (These are respectively referred to as *Dama*, *Dayā* and *Dāna*). 14

It is said that all of them (gods, demons and humans) of yore just after their creation meditated upon the creator and asked him as to what they should do. 15

The Self-born 'creator' having been asked by his progenies as to what they should do, meditated for some time and spoke to them the eighteenth alphabet (which is 'da'). 16

He repeated it three times and said that since all of them are his own sons, his ordinance to them should also be the same irrespective of their class. 17

The gods interpreted the letter as (standing for) self-restraint, demons took it for pity (or compassion) and the humans for alms (bestowing gifts) - (an explanation suited to their tastes). 18

Then he told the gods that self-restraint be their supreme duty (or characteristic); to demons that pity (or compassion) be their duty and to humans that offering of gifts be their utmost function. 19

Hence as far as humans are concerned giving away of gifts is the principal duty and it be done according to their capacity resulting in the cessation of all worries. 20

This will enable them to reach a world of plenty after their death, where they enjoy many desires unobtainable in the world of humans. 21

The duty of the *Brāhmins*, *Kṣatriyas* and *Vaiśyas* is respectively the performance of penance, protection of the Vedic lore, taking care of guests, offering of oblations and performance of *Agnihotra* sacrifice. 22

For the first two castes the domestic rituals (like the investiture of sacred thread etc.) shall be to the accompaniment of *Mantras* (sacred hymns), but for the others (*Vaiśyas*) this is avoided as far as *Rāmakṣetra* (the land of Kerala created by Paraśurāma) is concerned, where the nephews inherit the property (of the family). 23

This (inheritance) is among non-*Brāhmins* and hence the duties differ accordingly, all of which shall be ordained later as occasion demands. 24

Brāhmins and *Kṣatriyas* should attain proficiency in archery as their common duty and the study of the *Gopathabrahmaṇa*. 25

To *Brāhmins* and *Kṣatriyas* the study of *Bhūsūkta* (principles of agriculture enshrined in the Vedas) is a common duty in addition to *gośthaśayyāvratā* (sleeping in the cow-pen as a religious-agro ritual) and *Kusida* (lending of money upon interest or collection of usury) as a means of livelihood. 26

Śūdras and *Brāhmins* should feel that they are respectively the servants and masters, beside sharing common features in their dress and habits. 27

Kṣatriyas and *Vaiśyas* should get up and show obeisance by standing up and saluting when a *Brāhmin* approaches, even if the latter is a young boy. 28

In *Rāmakṣetra* (the land of Paraśurāma, Kerala) *Śūdras* do not generally prostrate before others, but they only stand aside in obedience with folded hands, as ordained by the rules of *Bhārgava*. 29

With exception to the land of *Bhārgava* (Kerala), in all other regions the duties of *Kṣatriya* and *Vaiśya* are the three functions of study, giving of gifts and the performance of rituals. 30

But here it is the duty of *Kṣatriyas* and *Śūdras* to lay down their lives for the sake of a *Brāhmaṇa* without the least hesitation. 31

Further these two castes should cut grass and bring fodder, engage themselves in the cultivation of lands and be prepared to lay down their life for the sake of cows. 32

Brāhmaṇas and *Vaiśyas* should tolerate the offence of a *Kṣatriya* without entertaining any long-standing feud. 33

Thus certain rules pertaining to castes are enumerated. The rest shall be narrated as and when the occasion demands. 34

Thus the first quarter of the first chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Special duties of Brāhmaṇins]

The Self-born (creator) has fixed three duos for *Brāhmaṇins*, viz; *Adhiti* and *Adhyāpana* (learning and teaching), *Dāna* and *Ādāna* (giving and accepting of gifts), and *Yajana* and *Yajana* (offering and conducting sacrifices). 1

The creator, of Yore, has bestowed the three duties of *Adhyayana* (learning), *Dāna* (giving of gifts) and *Yajana* (conducting of sacrifices) upon *Kṣatriyas* along with the function of administering the people (of the country). 2

The *Vaiśyas* should do these along with the protection of the cows while the *Śūdras* are expected to serve the *Brāhmaṇins* and bestow gifts on them. 3

Brāhmaṇins should live by *Rta* (by collecting grains left-over and lying scattered in a bazaar; *Amṛta* (using grains discarded by the owner in a field after the harvest) and *Mṛta* (by begging alms). 4

They may also resort to *Pramṛta* (by engaging in agriculture) or *Satyānṛta* (business activities, which necessarily involve truth and falsehood). *Rta*, consists of both *Uñccha* and *Sila* (left-overs in a bazaar and in an agricultural field). *Amṛta* is that which is not obtained by begging. 5

What is obtained by begging is called *Mṛta* and *Pramṛta* is what is gained by agricultural activities. *Satyānṛta* stands for business. Among these

Uñccha and *Sila* are better as also *Amṛta*. For them (the *Brāhmaṇins*) *Uñccha* and *Sila* are of greater merit. 6

Also *Amṛta* (is acceptable) though the other two (agriculture and business) are desirable. If the *Brāhmaṇins* are *Janmīns* (landlords) they could live by the rentals accrued from the land. 7

(They may) subsist on what is given by the agricultural labourer as share of the profit (from the land). Bhārgava ordains that this is applicable to all kinds of landlords. 8

Lord Viṣṇu, the sustainer of the virtues is none other than Bhṛgu himself and as such one holds that a *Brāhmaṇin* fit for self-restraint will become despised and will be put to shame (by the acceptance of land). 9

Those who are expected for restraint become despised by the acceptance of land as gifts. Such a land is referred to as *jalma* which has undergone change due to transference of syllables (to form the word '*janma*'). 10

The ownership of the land is referred to as '*janma*' due to this factor. The *Brāhmaṇins* who live by the share of profit obtained from such a land (over which those who have title called *janma*) should spend part of it for the benefit of sacrifices, teachers, relatives and beggars seeking alms. 11

By living upon the rentals given by the tenants one will not perish, but one should give six handfuls of grains to the senior member of his household. 12

A senior householder after setting apart a handful of grains each to the five categories of sacrifice, teacher, guest, relative and beggars, should maintain himself besides members of the household and children. 13

(Further the owner of such property) should maintain servants, maids, cows, cattle, brothers and the dear ones of the brother. This is how Bhārgava has ordained the life style of the propertied *Brāhmaṇin* and by living thus one shall attain pleasure in this as well as in the other world. 14

[Duties of *Kṣatriyas* and others]

A *Kṣatriya* should live by the revenue and tax from the land as well as from the forest or by his prowess for protecting the people with single-minded devotion. The *Vaiśya* should maintain himself from the income got by breeding of the cattle, engaging in agriculture or by trade. 15-16

But here it is the duty of *Kṣatriyas* and *Sūdras* to lay down their lives for the sake of a *Brāhmaṇa* without the least hesitation. 31

Further these two castes should cut grass and bring fodder, engage themselves in the cultivation of lands and be prepared to lay down their life for the sake of cows. 32

Brāhmaṇas and *Vaiśyas* should tolerate the offence of a *Kṣatriya* without entertaining any long-standing feud. 33

Thus certain rules pertaining to castes are enumerated. The rest shall be narrated as and when the occasion demands. 34

Thus the first quarter of the first chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Special duties of Brāhmaṇins]

The Self-born (creator) has fixed three duos for *Brāhmaṇins*, viz; *Adhiti* and *Adhyāpana* (learning and teaching), *Dāna* and *Ādāna* (giving and accepting of gifts), and *Yajana* and *Yājana* (offering and conducting sacrifices). 1

The creator, of Yore, has bestowed the three duties of *Adhyayana* (learning), *Dāna* (giving of gifts) and *Yajana* (conducting of sacrifices) upon *Kṣatriyas* along with the function of administering the people (of the country). 2

The *Vaiśyas* should do these along with the protection of the cows while the *Sūdras* are expected to serve the *Brāhmaṇins* and bestow gifts on them. 3

Brāhmaṇins should live by *Rta* (by collecting grains left-over and lying scattered in a bazaar; *Amṛta* (using grains discarded by the owner in a field after the harvest) and *Mrta* (by begging alms). 4

They may also resort to *Pramṛta* (by engaging in agriculture) or *Satyānṛta* (business activities, which necessarily involve truth and falsehood). *Rta*, consists of both *Uñccha* and *Sila* (left-overs in a bazaar and in an agricultural field). *Amṛta* is that which is not obtained by begging. 5

What is obtained by begging is called *Mrta* and *Pramṛta* is what is gained by agricultural activities. *Satyānṛta* stands for business. Among these

Uñccha and *Sila* are better as also *Amṛta*. For them (the *Brāhmaṇins*) *Uñccha* and *Sila* are of greater merit. 6

Also *Amṛta* (is acceptable) though the other two (agriculture and business) are desirable. If the *Brāhmaṇins* are *Janmins* (landlords) they could live by the rentals accrued from the land. 7

(They may) subsist on what is given by the agricultural labourer as share of the profit (from the land). Bhārgava ordains that this is applicable to all kinds of landlords. 8

Lord Viṣṇu, the sustainer of the virtues is none other than Bhṛgu himself and as such one holds that a *Brāhmaṇin* fit for self-restraint will become despised and will be put to shame (by the acceptance of land). 9

Those who are expected for restraint become despised by the acceptance of land as gifts. Such a land is referred to as *jalma* which has undergone change due to transference of syllables (to form the word 'janma'). 10

The ownership of the land is referred to as 'janma' due to this factor. The *Brāhmaṇins* who live by the share of profit obtained from such a land (over which those who have title called *janma*) should spend part of it for the benefit of sacrifices, teachers, relatives and beggars seeking alms. 11

By living upon the rentals given by the tenants one will not perish, but one should give six handfuls of grains to the senior member of his household. 12

A senior householder after setting apart a handful of grains each to the five categories of sacrifice, teacher, guest, relative and beggars, should maintain himself besides members of the household and children. 13

(Further the owner of such property) should maintain servants, maids, cows, cattle, brothers and the dear ones of the brother. This is how Bhārgava has ordained the life style of the propertied Brāhmaṇin and by living thus one shall attain pleasure in this as well as in the other world. 14

[Duties of Kṣatriyas and others]

A *Kṣatriya* should live by the revenue and tax from the land as well as from the forest or by his prowess for protecting the people with single-minded devotion. The *Vaiśya* should maintain himself from the income got by breeding of the cattle, engaging in agriculture or by trade. 15-16

The *Sūdra* is expected to perform the menial duties of the upper castes or by selling crafts. He may also subsist by the balance of income over and above the rentals due to the landlord. 17

In the land of Bhārgava none else should engage in agricultural activities if one could live otherwise. People of the lower class should never perform the activities of the upper castes on no account. 18

[Dignity of one's own duty]

Even in exigencies one should not resort to the activities of the higher caste people. The *Brāhmaṇ* should learn the *Vedas* and teach them with devotion. 19

He should not desist from the teaching profession even if he is in danger. Further, he should not accept much even though it may appear beneficial in the given circumstance. 20

Even in the face of the greatest danger he should not accept the gift of a prohibited item. He should remain attached to his duty without selling *Veda* for remuneration. 21

A *Brāhmaṇ* who never accepts any unworthy (or prohibited) gifts shines forth like blazing fire. So also is a *Kṣatriya* who protects the people from danger himself remaining not too harsh or not too mild. 22

Remaining watchful to the activities of people he should see to that they always remain attached to their own duties and functions. Such a king should look after the welfare of the cattles and *Brāhmaṇ*s. 23

Never rejecting (or turning back) any one who approaches for help, he will not become the target to ensure. Moreover he will reap much fame and will accomplish all his desires. 24

Further after death he reaches celestial worlds where there is no worry at all. The other two castes (the *Vaiśyas* and *Sūdras* also reap benefit by adhering to the principles and duties assigned to them. 25

They too reach a position by overcoming seemingly difficult situations of sorrow in both the present world and the one hereafter. A man who transgresses such rules of virtue and customs is in for trouble. 26

Such a man is destined to live in the hell and is due for unbearable calumny. Hence one who is desirous of well-being should always follow the path of virtue. 27

In this world of terrible consequences, virtue alone is the greatest friend. Here I have narrated the virtues to be followed by each caste in a nutshell. Hereafter I will be dealing with these in detail. 28-28½

Thus the second quarter of the first chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[The routines of a *Brahmacārin*]

Brāhmaṇ, *Kṣatriya* and *Vaiśya* are the three castes referred to as *dvija* the twice - born, since they are supposed to have two births. 1

Of the two births the first is the natural birth, while the second is due to the *Upanayana* ceremony - the investiture of the sacred thread. 2

By performing *saṃskāras* (domestic rituals) up to *kṛṇavedha* (the piercing of the ear-lobes) to the accompaniment of *mantras* (hymns adapted from *Vedas*) the twice-born should protect his son from the two types of sin. 3

The ceremony of investiture should be performed by the father or by any other educated and qualified person following the instructions of one's own *Grhya* (domestic) rules, with restraint at the proper times. 4

The *Brāhmaṇ* (boy) should be initiated at the age of eight selecting a suitable and auspicious time, while for the sake of teaching the *Vedas*, this could be done at the age of six also from the month of conception. 5

The *Kṣatriya* could be initiated from the eleventh year after conception with an option to do it at the age of seven for the sake of early training in martial arts. 6

The twelfth year (from conception) is the proper time fixed for a *Vaiśya*, though for the sake of business purposes it could be done in the ninth year itself and these boys with the sacred thread on them are called the *Brahmacārins*. 7

The maximum age limit prescribed for *Brāhmaṇ*s, *Kṣatriyas* and *Vaiśyas* for the ceremony of investiture are respectively sixteen, twenty-two and twenty-four before which the boys of these castes must be initiated with the sacred thread. 8

Those who are not thus initiated after these ages are despised and excom-

municated from their own castes (and are treated as belonging to low class). 9

These uninitiated ones are called *Vrātyas* (out-caste for want of sacred thread) and are admitted to initiation by performing *Vrātyastoma* (a sacrifice performed to recover the right forfeited by the non-performance of the due *samskāras*) and the sages have prescribed this only in other regions than Kerala. 10

The special feature of Kerala prescribed by Bhārgava is that all those who are enjoined to have the sacred thread should be consecrated before they attain the age of sixteen lest they be treated as outside the purview of their caste. 11

The peculiar customs of Kerala (the land of the Bhārgava) is that one could not regain the status symbol by performing the rite called *Vrātyastoma*. 12

Further, in Kerala a *Brāhmaṇacārin* should not wear the tuft of hair as is done in other places where one could shave his head bald, wear matted hair or wear a tuft. 13

Śikhā - the tuft of hair on the head is called *Daivī* (godly) when it is with four *Āṅgulas* (*Āṅgula* = 8 yava or 3 cm) upwards and with four *Āṅgulas* (a measurement equal to 3 cm) in circumference. 14

Paiśācī (demonic) types and *Āsuri*-types (un-godly and devilish) are respectively the same distance upwards with the same circumference added. Of these, two alone (viz., *Daivī* and *Paiśācī*) are approved for human beings. 15

(Of the 64 villages in Kerala, half of them) located in the South should accept the mode of *Daivī* variety and non-else; those in the North (located in 32 Northern villages) should wear the *Paiśācī* type alone according to the dictum of Bhārgava. 16

By not strictly following the traditional mode of wearing the tuft or by sporting a different type according to his will the twice-born becomes an outcaste. 17

Brāhmaṇin should wear a blemishless skin of black antelope, *Kṣatriya* could use the skin of a deer and *Vaiśya* that of a goat though all of them are permitted to wear cotton clothes as garments. 18

For *Brāhmaṇins* clothes should be of saffron colour, for *Kṣatriyas*, cloth of the colour of *mañjistha* (the Indian madder), and *Vaiśyas*, cloth of the colour of *haridrā* (turmeric) are prescribed elsewhere. But these rules are not applicable to Kerala. 19

Members of all these three castes should always wear girdle, loin cloth (to cover the private parts), the sacred thread and the skin of antelope (as waist band). 20

The girdle shall be made of the thread of cotton without changing its colour, having a single knot after a four-fold strand. 21

Kaupīna - the loin cloth with just enough breadth to cover the private parts and length to reach the back of the buttocks should also be of cotton. The tail part should have sufficient length to peg on to the girdle. This should not be from a cloth torn breadth-wise but only lengthwise, especially when it is to be used by *Brahmacārin*. 22

The sacred thread shall be either red, brown or even white in colour and made of cotton threads (for all twice-born people). 23

For a *Brāhmaṇin* desirous of penance the brown one is recommended, while for a king given to bravery *Mañjistha* - the yellow one is preferred. 24

For a *Vaiśya* the colour of the thread shall be that of *Turmeric* since he is fond of cattle. According to custom all these castes should wear the sacred thread reaching up to their navel. 25

A sacred-thread made of anything other than cotton is not approved for according to sage Bhārgava it is prohibited. 26

Since people other than those belonging to the *Brāhmaṇin* caste here (in Kerala) follow the matrilineal mode of inheritance, there are differences in rules, but as regards the sacred-thread they follow the *Brāhmaṇins*. 27

For all *Brahmacārins* (of the three castes of twice-born) the staff shall be of *Palāśa* (*Butea Frondosa* tree) and sacred thread of cotton, according to Bhārgava. 28

All *Brahmacārins* shall hold the staff with appropriate length as prescribed by tradition. It shall not be less or more in size. 29

Here, in Kerala, the *Brāhmaṇin* shall hold the staff having a length up to his hair (on the head) and it shall be made from the *Palāśa* tree. The length should be exact - not to be more or less than is prescribed. 30

Here one should not hold a staff which is burnt, having any damage on the bark or devoid of bark. Similarly one that is too big, worm eaten or dry is unfit. 31

A staff with several branches ahead, crooked (curved), brought by untouchables, cut on a day when the moon is in conjunction or on the eighth day of the full-moon, or tainted by impure objects should not be carried. 32

According to Bhārgava the *Brāhmaṇas* should wear on their neck a gold ring and a Rudrāksa (Elaeocarpus Ganitrus) berry tied to a thread while performing the different rites. This rule is not applicable to the other two castes. 33

After the daily routines like morning bath, worship of the sun, and domestic rituals like the worship of fire, the *Brahmacārin* should collect alms and on return eat them after securing the permission of the preceptor. 34

Thus the third quarter of the first chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[Study and service before preceptor]

Having thus attained the status of the twice-born all of them become eligible for the study of *Śruti*, *Smṛti* and *Pūranas*. 1

Here only the initiated *Brāhmaṇin* is fit to be instructed in Vedic lore and hence he alone should remain in the house of the preceptor; for the others have no right to the study of Vedas. 2

On an auspicious day fixed by the preceptor after the performance of a ritual to the accompaniment of *mantras* the Vedic study may be started after chanting the *Praṇava* and *Gāyatrī mantras*. 3

(As an introduction) the teacher should instruct the *Dharmaśāstra* to enable the boy to understand the nature of the rites of cleansing the body and soul, expiation etc. 4

The boy should properly understand this since one who has not done so is apt to disregard the virtuous path. 5

After understanding the customary rules from the preceptor, one should perform the duties according to the time and place without being lazy. 6

He should revert from doing anything prohibited by custom and thus getting trained from the preceptor he would shine like a blazing fire. 7

He should bow before the preceptors and other elders properly and should not bow before others without the permission of his own preceptor. 8

At the proper time he should voluntarily touch the feet of the preceptor with his outstretched hands in a crossed position left foot by the left hand and right foot by the right hand. 9

After the ceremonial salutation, the study begins and comes to a close when the teacher advises him to do so. Once again the teacher is to be saluted at the end of the lesson. 10

He should perform such acts according to the wishes of the teacher. If any act is dear to the teacher one should not desist from doing it even if it is unworthy. 11

He should carefully desist from doing anything against the wishes of the teacher either openly or covertly, respecting him always. 12

Those who despise the teachers who had taught him even a single alphabet, will certainly go to the hell called *Kum्भipāka*. 13

If the teacher scolds him, he should not retort and if he is beaten by him should not desert. For the purpose of learning the disciple should even lay down his life. 14

Seeing the teacher entering, the student should stand up and lead him into the room receiving him properly and standing by his side. 15

Once the teacher is led into the room the disciple shall politely enquire about his wellbeing and once he is seated fan him (to make him comfortable). 16

While the teacher reposes the student should stand by his side in reverence and when the former is on a journey the latter should accompany him and should even run after him if he chooses to run. When the teacher is seated with the head bent down, the disciple shall stand in front of him. 17

When the teacher becomes angry, the student should appease him by entreaties. If there is anything to be told to the teacher, the student may tell him directly either slowly or quickly as the occasion demands. 18

On seeing the teacher coming towards the student from a distance the latter should go forward to receive him and should not sit before him without showing proper respect. 19

It is improper to pronounce the name of the teacher casually, and to imitate him by movement, action and words on no account. 20

When others criticise him or utter ill words scandalising him, the student should not remain there and he should not share the seat with the teacher. 21

(To sit by the side of the teacher) is improper unless one is travelling in a boat, occupying a stony step (flight of stairs) or mat. Even then one should sit along with him under his instruction, choosing a lower seat. 22

He should always lie down in a lower position and should not sleep before the teacher does; and should get up earlier without fail and conscious of the rites. 23

When the teacher of the preceptor arrives, he should be treated as one's own preceptor and this mode of behaviour is to be followed towards the son of the teacher also in general. 24

It is not necessary for one to salute the son of the teacher by touching the feet, nor one should eat the left-over by him at the meals. The wife of the teacher should be looked upon like one's own mother. 25

(Thus living with the teacher) the student shall get up early, take bath and perform worship including rituals in fire in all the three junctures of a day. This daily routine shall be followed scrupulously by performing *Agnikārya* (sacrifice in fire), engaging in studies and eating what is collected by way of alms. 26

After studying up to the noontime and after worshipping the sun at midday, one should take his staff and go out for collecting alms after getting permission from the teacher. 27

He should eat his meals served in a plantain leaf after washing and cleaning it with the left hand and sip the water poured into his hand from the vessel called *kundi* by a different person. 28

He should not consume certain items like *Kulattha* (= a kind of pulse = *Dolichos uniflorous*), *Māsa* (= a kind of pulse = a bean = *Phaseolus Radiatus*) *Rasona* (= *Allium Ascalonicum* also called *Laśuna*), *Grījana* (= a kind of onion or garlic), *Niryāsa* (= resins like *Asafoetida* for household use); *Kṣāras* (= saline substances like Nitre), *Śākas* (=edible leaf); *Śaugrava* (prepared using *śigru* = *Moringa Pterygosperma*; oil of coconut; uncooked food, mixture of milk and molasses, parched grain kept in a copper vessel, and item with

change of colour, brackishness and fermentation; raw salt, honey; water mixed with molasses and ginger (*Guḍa* = molasses; *Nāgara* = dry ginger) called *Pānaka*, *Rasāla* (= mango) fruit, *Ikṣurasa* (= juice of sugarcane as also all impure food items). 29-32

He should remain quiet while taking the meals and if at all it becomes essential he should speak in Sanskrit. All through the meals his left hand should be placed at the tip of the leaf (and should never take the hand from it). 33

Nothing should be left-over in the leaf when he is to sip the final handful of water until which the left hand should be kept on the leaf. One should partake only a limited quantity. 34

Afternoon nap is to be avoided and in case he happens to sleep, he should take another bath before resuming the daily routines. He should not jump into the pond (taking a dive) and should not climb a tree or ride an elephant. 35

He should not move from one place to another without holding the staff or wearing the clothes. The tuft should be knotted and the body should be smeared with ashes. 36

He should avoid unguents, eating of pan, smoking, use of bodily decoration, looking at mirror, applying of collyrium to the eyes and use of obscene words. 37

He should not look at the sun on improper occasion, should not sleep with a stranger and avoid watching animals like dog in copulation. 38

He should not converse with women and should not perform dance, recite song, play percussion instruments or produce sound with mouth or nails (to beat time). 39

Laziness, falsehood, harming of animals and such things which are not approved by the teacher should be purposefully avoided. 40

Except on holidays, he should learn the lore with its auxiliaries. But when the temple is conducting the festival the study may be suspended for the time being. 41

He who scrupulously follows the period of *Brahmacarya*, diligently performing the duties like the rituals on the three junctures of a day, will reach the divine world. 42

The loss of semen on the part of a twice-born during the period of *Brahmacarya* is considered as an infringement of the vow and this should always be avoided. 43

During the first stage of life there should not occur any blemish; for it is in this period that the Brāhmaṇhood is firmly established. 44

[Thus the fourth quarter of the first chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śaṅkara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

First chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER TWO

QUARTER-1

[The study]

After following the rules of *Brahmacarya* scrupulously according to one's tradition, one should learn four, three or two of the *Vedas*; 1

Or one *Veda* as prescribed with its auxiliaries like *Vedāṅgas*, *Vākovākya* (a speech and reply, dialogue) following the tradition of his school. 2

It is the study of *Vedas* that gives life to the performance of penance, sacrifice and vow, and hence on no account one should avoid the study of the *Vedas*. 3

The twice-born who studies the *Rgveda* attains the merit of pleasing the gods with honey and milk and manes with honey and ghee respectively. 4

He who studies the *Yajurveda* according to his ability acquires the merit of pleasing the gods with ghee and nectar and manes with honey. 5

He who sings the *Sāman* everyday according to his ability reaps the merit of pleasing the gods with *soma* juice and ghee and the manes with honey and ghee. 6

The twice-born who studies *Atharvaveda* everyday according to his ability bestows health to the gods and honey and ghee to the manes. 7

He who studies *Vākovākya* (speech and reply), *Purāṇas* (which are 18 in number beginning with Brahma to Brahmānda), *Nārāśāmṣi-gāthās* (relating to the praise of men), *Itihāsa* and *Vaidyaka* (*Ayurveda*) everyday acquires merit (of pleasing gods and manes). 8

Study of these according to one's ability is like pleasing the gods with honey, milk, flesh, rice-ball and ghee and manes with honey, ghee etc. These offerings will please them (gods and manes). 9

The gods and manes pleased by the study of the *Vedas*, bestow upon the human (the twice-borns) all property. 10

The twice-born *Brāhmaṇin* who performs his daily routines reaps the benefit of all sacrifices and penances. 11

The *Naisṭhika Brahmacārin* (one who likes life-long abstinence or prefers celibacy) should always live with his preceptor (in his home even after study) or the son of the preceptor during the entire lifetime. 12

By doing this the *Brahmacārin* possessed of control over the senses attains *Brahmaloka* - the state of liberation and one never takes another birth in this world. 13

The other *Brahmacārin* having completed the study of the Vedas and having undergone penances, is to give *Dakṣiṇā* - the fee to the preceptor and after getting his permission shall perform the sacred bath signifying the culmination of studies. 14

Thus becoming a *snātaka* (=one who has performed the ceremony of ablution on his finishing *Brahmacarya*) he may go to his house for life (to become a householder) or forest or even to lead a life of hermit if he is fed up with worldly life. 15

[Life of a householder]

Only one should take to the life of a householder (in a family of twice-born *Brāhmaṇin*) that one is the eldest son and not others. The son of a brother fulfils the duty of the son for all of them (in religious matters like performing *śrāddha*). 16

If the senior son fails to have an issue, the next younger member should marry to beget an issue and this is the custom in *Rāmakṣetra* (the land of *Kerala* created by *Rāma*). 17

The *Brāhmaṇin* with intention on marriage should select a proper maiden belonging to one of the three classes like *Kanyā* (ten-year old), *Rohiṇī* (nine-year old) or *Gaurī* (eight year old), but not a *Madhyamā* (one who has already attained the puberty). 18

In *Rāmakṣetra* a maiden who had attained puberty could be considered fit for marriage, provided that she be a lady with her maidenhood intact. 19

The maiden should be noble, of good habits, of attractive speech, having a brother and belonging to a different *gotra* and without having any *sapinda* relationship. 20

[The *sapinda* relationship]

Here the concept of *sapinda* relationship shall be explained briefly for common knowledge of all. The term 'sapinda' implies having the same 'piṇḍa' or rice-ball offering. 21

A *Brāhmaṇin* become a *kūṭastha* (a person who stands at the head in genealogical table) has two branches (paternal and maternal) in the matter of relationships. 22

A maiden from the seventh generation in the descending order onwards from a *kūṭastha* is fit to be married, that much distance being appreciated (for a matrimonial relationship.) 23

If the *kūṭastha* belongs to another *gotra* on the mother's side, a girl of the sixth generation in distance could be considered (in which case both the husband and wife would be sixth generation people as regards relationship). 24

If there is no difference in the *gotra* of the *kūṭastha* he can be taken as related to the father. 25

For a boy of the seventh generation from his father, a girl with the same gap of generation from her father, is suitable. A boy of first generation away from the mother's side is suitable for a girl with the same distance from her mother's sides. 26

For a boy of the fifth generation from his father's side, a girl with that much distance from the father's side is suitable. A *madhyamā* (one who has attained puberty) girl can be chosen in exigency, according to authorities. 27

By the power of *Arthavāda* (practice adducing historical instances in support) in the explanation of the words of the Vedas a fourth descendant from the mother's side also is considered suitable (for marriage). This relation is *uttama*, the best. 28

For the fifth descendant of a *kūṭastha* a girl of the fourth generation is considered as *Adhama* (lower in merit); the one from the fifth is *Madhyama* (middle) and from the sixth generation onwards it is *Uttama*. 29

Distance of generation on the side of the girl is considered as of greater merit than that from the boy's side and it is accepted by most as ideal. 30

According to them for a sixth generation a girl of the fifth generation is most suited and there is the dictum that the sixth one shall marry a fifth generation maiden. 31

Relatives on the side of the father are, sons of father, of father's sister, of father's mother and of father's uncle. 32

Thus despite the difference in *gotra* a *kūṭastha* can be treated as belonging to the father's side, though this may result in various difficulties. 33

For the maternal grandfather of one's father a maiden born to his great grandfather by a different stock will be deemed as belonging to the seventh generation from the *kūṭastha*. 34

Such a girl born on the father's side also could not be accepted as suitable for marriage. On the father's side the *sapinda* relationship ceases from the eleventh generation onwards. 35

For a boy a girl from the sixth generation from mother's side is suitable. 36

Hence *sapinda* relationship cases from the fifth generation from the mother's side. But this is not accepted by all. 37

By which principle a girl becomes unsuitable for a boy, by the same principle one could not hold that she becomes suitable for the father. 38

Hence *sagotra* (the same *gotra*) becoming a *kūṭastha* on the father's side is acceptable. For him alone the *sapinda* relationship is applicable, and not for others. 39

On the father's side there are six *sapindas*, three on the mother's side like maternal grandfather of the mother and paternal grandfather of the mother. 40

Paternal grandfather of the mother, paternal grandfather of the maternal grandfather and of the grandmother; 41

As also of the grandfather and the grand-parents of the above four classes could have a *kūṭastha* from among them for both the branches. 42

There is the *sāpiṇḍya* relationship among the above-mentioned people and the relationship is mutual for both men and women. These other than belonging to the family in general could not be *sapindas*, according to the learned. 43

Among the *gotra* and *pravara* there could be conjugal relationship even if the *sapinda* relation is absent according to authorities. 44

When there is a common relationship on the mother's side marriage is not permitted according to some authorities. This is because the family of the mother is equated with the relationship existing on the father's side also. Herein the boy and the girl are considered as brothers. 45

Thus the first quarter of the second chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Different views on *sapinda* relationship]

In consideration of the *sapinda* relation there are factors like worthy tradition, practice is supported by historical evidence, and the implication of the *Śrutis* (Vedas). 1

From the eighth generation on the paternal side and sixth generation on the maternal side the *sapinda* relation ceases and hence marriages are permitted by all authorities among these families. 2

There are views that the *sapinda* relation can be extended further upwards. Hence it is necessary to draw a line in this regard to fix the generation limit. 3

In the case of two family branches produced by the same *kūṭastha* there could be a boy at a particular number in one and a girl at that particular number in the other branch. 4

They are eligible for a position in the other branch also and hence they have *sapinda* relation up to a particular position. 5

The *sapinda* relation ends there and not further. Hence it is decided that from the *kūṭastha*, the relationship shall be limited to the fifth generation. 6

This kind of *sapinda* relation can be noted in the case of the fourth, and third generation boy of one branch with the fourth and third generation girl of the other branch (these two branches having been sprung from the same *kūṭastha*). 7

There could be union between these two categories of boys and girls, though it is not a peculiar feature in the matter of marriage relationship. 8

In the case of women born in different places it is not easy to trace the *sapinda* relationship. Hence in order to decide whether she is suitable or not only up to four or five generation is considered. 9

Traditionally the family tree of such girls could be decided. Thus in the case of the girl fourth generation from the *kūṭastha* and in the case of the boy fifth generation is traced. 10

The *sapindas* can be categorised as sixteen in total of which four can be related to *vara* (the boy), the *kūṭastha* (the head in the family tree) and *madhyama* (those born in between). 11

There can be four *kūṭasthas* in the same way, *kanyā* (the girl), the *kūṭastha* (the head in the family tree) and *madhyama* (those born in between). 12

There can be four more *kūṭasthas*, mother's grandfather (both on the paternal and maternal side) and there can be four daughters to these separately. 13

There can be four maidens relating to *vara* (boy) son of *kūṭastha* (the head of the family), his sister's daughter, and brother's daughter. 14

For others there could be four and thus there are sixteen *sapindas*. In the case of the great-grandfather, his son (the grandfather) can also be a *kūṭastha* for the next generation. 15

When there is a *kūṭastha* there can be four maidens produced through next generation. Mother's grandfather and grandmother are related to them. 16

In the case of mother's grandmother, these girls are of the line of grandmother in relation of *sapinda*. Hence this classification in detail is necessary. 17

The relation between *vara* and *kūṭastha* can be applied to *kanyā* and *kūṭastha*, since the relationship is of the similar category. 18

In the matter of categories a particular number of maiden may be omitted from the purview of marriage. In a family the first maiden is to be rejected by all since she will be a *sagotra* girl. 19

The last girl in a family tree also is to be discarded since she will be of the same *gotra* as of the mother. Hence only the fifth generation girl is to be accepted as suitable. 20

There can be eight *kūṭasthas* and girls numbering sixty-four in all. In the

following generations the mutual relationship between boys and girls is already discussed. 21

From the eighth generation of a *kūṭastha* maiden and boys may be treated as suitable for marriage as men and women in general (without bothering about *sapinda* relation). 22

Woman, bride, man, boy, maiden, husband, bride-groom, etc, are the terms related to human beings in the matter of matrimonial relationship. 23

In all there are eight such terms though with overlapping meanings since all of them refer to two ultimately (that in boy and girl). There can be eight *kūṭasthas* also in this connection. 24

On the side of the father and of the mother there can be father, grandfather and great-grandfather as well as mother, grand-mother and great-grandmother. Thus born each on the side of the boy's father and mother make eight. 25

Similarly there can be eight *kūṭasthas* on the side of the girl also when one takes into account her parents and grandparents along with her. 26

The children of the *kūṭasthas* also account for another group of eight progenies. 27

Then there are grandchildren from one's brother, sister, son, daughter and a girl each in this category makes four in number. 28

In South India *Brāhmaṇas* marry the daughter of the uncle as a rule. So also do in Central India, such as labourers, artisans and people who eat cattle. 29

Generally the people in the eastern region who eat fish have peculiar characteristics. There the women folk are prone to be prostitutes, grown up men are liquor-mongers (drunkards) and those who have attained puberty could be married (without attracting sin). 30

Those in the mountain regions marry the widow of a brother for the sake of family. Thus in different regions there are different rules and customs. 31

Thus the second quarter of the second chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[Eight types of marriages]

A Brāhmaṇī boy should marry a girl from his own caste for the sake of progeny. Due to lust he may marry, from the castes of Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas but never from Śūdras. 1

Seven types of marriages are auspicious and they are Brāhma, Daiva, Ārṣa, Prājāpatya, Āsura, Gāndharva and Rākṣasa. 2

Paiśāca is the eighth type and that brings calamity to the race. It is inauspicious and hence it is sinful even to the sinners. 3

All the first four types are auspicious to the Brāhmaṇins and Kṣatriyas. For Kṣatriya, the Gāndharva and Rākṣasa types are best suited. 4

For Vaiśya, the Āsura form is befitting, but not for Brāhmaṇins and Kṣatriyas. Even in exigency a Brāhmaṇī should never resort to this (Āsura) form (of marriage). 5

The Brāhma type of marriage is that in which the father gives away the girl decorated with clothes and ornaments to the bridegroom. 6

In Daiva the daughter is well-decorated and given away at a sacrifice to the officiating priest who is chosen as the bridegroom. 7

In Ārṣa type the father of the bride receives a pair of cows from the bridegroom in return for his daughter and blesses the couple saying: "may both of you perform duties together". 8

In the Āsura form the bridegroom purchases the bride from her relatives by paying an amount as consideration. 9

In Kerala this custom is prohibited among Brāhmaṇins. A girl purchased giving money could not be treated as wife. 10

According to Bhārgava such a girl can be considered only as a maid-servant. Hence this rule is not applicable for the three castes of the twice-born. 11

In this Āsura form the one who gives away a girl for money is just a vendor of meats. The Gāndharva marriage is that in which the bridegroom or the bride take their own decision prompted by love or mutual inclination. 12

In the Rākṣasa type of marriage the girl often waiting is forcibly carried away from her relatives by putting up a fight involving cutting, piercing and felling (of people). 13

In the eighth type called Paiśāca, the lover ravishes a maiden without her consent when she is sleeping or intoxicated or deranged in mind. 14

A father should marry away his daughter according to one of the types enumerated as Brāhma etc. But the boy should test the qualities of the girl and the girl should put the boy to the test (before final decision). 15

[Test for selecting a bridegroom]

According to śāstras, the first test is with regard to the manhood of the bridegroom, for a girl should not be given in marriage to a eunuch under any circumstance or contingency. 16

There are sixteen types of eunuchs such as (1) one who has no outward sign of man or woman, (2) one who always appears as sleepy, (3) one who has no virility when one approaches a woman, (4) one who discharges early, (5) one who defiles his mouth by doing fellatio, (6) cursed by teacher, (7) impatient, (8) intolerant, (9) impotent, (10) having long disease, (11) atheist, (12) polygamous, (13) with limited discharge, (14) doing masturbation (self-defilement), (15) lustful and (16) aged. 17-19

These people under any circumstance do not deserve a girl in marriage and hence distinguishing them carefully the father of the girl should not give her in marriage to such people. 20

Girls should not be given in marriage to persons who are mad, dumb, deaf, lame, crippled, blind, epileptic, low-caste, of different religion, tuftless and despised by them. 21-22

The father should give away the girl taking into account the seven qualities of manliness, youthfulness, beauty, wealth, education, agreeable words and the inclination to give alms. 23-24

(In selecting a bridegroom) one should deserve to be congratulated by relatives, feel self-satisfaction and should not become the target of ridicule. 25

A second marriage of a girl who had already been married to another, after due consideration is not permitted in Kerala. 26

It is the husband who receives the hand of the girl in marriage and not his representative and hence utmost care should be taken in the selection of a bridegroom. 27

[Test for the selection of a bride]

By marrying an unworthy maiden the bridegroom despatches himself and his relatives to the worst hell. 28

One should never marry a girl who has extra limbs, or deformed in limbs, hairless or with too much hair, talkative and one who always remains looking through the windows. 29

The one worthy of marriage should have fragrance and beauty, one who smiles with a little twist of the head and one having even and hard breasts in addition to possessing noble qualities. 30

The horoscopes of the bride and bridegroom should be examined by dependable, ungreedy and noble astrologers to find mutual compatibility. 31

In the case of the male member his habits and other things have to be taken into consideration. But in the case of the lady, something more is to be said in this regard. 32

Thus the third quarter of the second chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[Selection of the bride using lump of clay etc.]

During *Uttarāyana* (the progress of the sun to the north of the equator), on an auspicious day of the week and a lunar day when moon traverses the star *Uttaraphālguni* (the twelfth lunar mansion consisting of two stars) one should prepare for conducting a test bathing himself at the auspicious moment of *Maitra*, and perform the worship of *Ganādhipa* and draw on the ground sixteen lines (to form a diagram). 1-2

Eight lines should be drawn towards the eastern direction and eight towards the north. There should be long and contracted lines as well as broad ones. 3

There should be sixteen columns thus made of lines, divided into four units of four columns which should be close together. 4

The tips of the line should demarcate the limit of the column and these should appear as clear-cut units. 5

Within the limit of these lines forming the outer walls of the columns one should sprinkle pure rice produced from *sāṣṭika* grains of rice (a kind of rice of quick growth ripening in about sixty days) or grains of *yava* (barley-corn). 6

These grains should be made white by cleaning (or washing) and be mixed with grains of *Kulattha* (a kind of pulse, *Dolichos uniflorus*) *Godhūma* (wheat), *yava* (barley corn) shoots of *Dūrvā* (bend grass, *Panicum Dactylon*), *Tulasīdala* (foliages of *Tulasi* plant, holy basil), *Siddhārtha* (fig leaves), *Kuṣa* (the sacred grass, *Poa synosuroides*, commonly called *Darbhā*) and *Kāṣā* (a species of grass, *Saccharum spontaneum*). 7

Now one should sit facing towards east and wearing a ring of *Darbhā* grass (called *Pavitra*, a ring of *Kuṣa* grass worn on the fourth finger on certain religious occasions) for purification, sprinkle the grains thus mixed together on the columns except the two on each of the corners. 8

Darbhā grass should be spread on all the sides of the columns and these are called *Vithis* (lanes) while gods are to be properly invoked as occupying themselves (so as to protect the sixteen columns) 9

In these rows (around the diagram) the twelve *Ādityas* (Dhātā, Mitra, Aryaman, Rudra, Varuṇa, Sūrya, Bhaga, Vivasvat, Pūṣan, Savitā, Tvaṣṭā and Viṣṇu, (Urukrama) may be invoked in a *Pradakṣiṇa* (turning to the right side towards) order. Within the five columns inside (the diagram) *Prajāpati* (*Brahman*) should be worshipped. 10

In the Īśa (north-east) direction the deities of *dyāvā-prthivī* (sky and earth) and in the Āgneya (south-east) corner the deity of *Sandhyā* are to be invoked, *Yamadharma* is to occupy the *Rāksasakhanḍa* (*Nīrtikona*) south-west and *Māruta* (the god of wind) is to be worshipped in the *Mārutakona* (*Vāyukona* = north-west). 11

In the remaining four columns on the upper part of the diagram one should place mud balls made of clay collected from cattle-shed, sacrificial site, riverbed and temple compound. 12

In the four columns on the lower part of the diagram (which lay under the first four) mud balls made of sand collected from a junction where four roads join together, wet-land, ground trodden by a pig and a region abounding in pebbles. 13

Then chanting *mantras* like “*ṛtam*” and “*yat satyam*” the girl should be asked to pick one of the mud balls. 14

The maiden should pick up one of the balls as she likes after going around the diagram thrice in reverence. 15

Depending upon the mud ball picked up by the girl one should know the future benefit or otherwise. If she has picked up the ball made by the clay from the cattle field, 16

definitely she will be having quite a number of cattle in her house in future, an omen which one should take for granted. If she has taken the ball made from the mud collected from the sacrificial site she will be chaste and virtuous. 17

On her taking the mud ball prepared from the clay collected from the river bed one should know that she possesses mental qualities, while on the other hand if she picks up the one made by the clay of the temple campus, one should understand that she will have wealth and prosperity. 18

By picking up one among these she indicates that she is chaste and virtuous. The selection of the other four balls from the diagram is indicative of her character as ascetic, wanton, cruel and destroyer of husband and as such she is to be avoided. 19-20½

After putting the girl to test by asking her to pick the mud ball and ascertaining the respective omen, one should select a maiden and perform her marriage to a worth suitor. 21

[Thus the fourth quarter of the second chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śāṅkara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

Second chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER THREE

QUARTER-1

[The procedure for marriage]

The father who is desirous of giving his daughter away in marriage should select a worthy suitor belonging to a noble family by birth and qualities, on being approached (for the purpose). 1

An auspicious day is to be picked well in advance for the marriage ceremony and when the auspicious moment arrives the ‘*udvāhakautuka*’ may be performed. 2

In breaking stones, cutting a tree, building a house and digging the earth, one has to perform a ceremony which may be applied to marriage also. 3

In all these four activities the householder if he chooses the time at random, is enjoined to perform a *Pavamāneśi* – a sacrificial rite of kindling fire, lest he would be considered as a sinner. 4

For the specific purpose one should erect a temporary tent well-decorated to drive away bad luck (evil) and to bring prosperity. 5

Walls, pillars, doors and flights of steps should be marked with drawings using fragrant paste of rice flour as signs of decoration. 6

From the door-steps itself garlands should be hung and on the pillars of the gate plantain tree with unripe bananas should be fixed. 7

Further, the pillars of the door-steps should be decorated with bunches of Coconuts, Areca nuts and green foliages of attractive shapes. 8

For the purpose of decoration flowers of water lilies, blue lotuses, *kalhāras* (white esculent water lilies), lotuses, *campaka* flowers (*Michelia Campaka* bearing yellow fragrant flower), *mallikas* (jasmines) *kundas* (white jasmines), *mandāras* (the coral flowers), *ketakas* (*Pandanus odoratissimus*), *āśokas* (*Jonesia Aśoka* having red flowers) and *jātis* (nutmeg tree) should be used. 9

Similar other flowers should also be used to add to the beauty of the hall. To enhance the prosperity of the hall garlands should be hung after dipping them in water. 10

Arrangements should be made to receive the guests properly considering their nobility and the fact that they are invited for the marriage of the son. 11

And now one should get ready to receive the son-in-law who is to arrive soon and he should be accompanied by relatives who share his own feelings of involving inauspiciousness. 12

The suitor should partake in a meal before setting out to the house of the brother-in-law along with relatives. 13

Setting out to the accompaniment of *maṅgalyasūkta* (*svastisūkta* according to the *Baudhāyana* school) one should circumambulate the *vanaspatis* (large fruit-bearing trees). 14

And on his left, he should avoid *Cātaka* (a bird, *Cuculus melanoleucus*), cats, dogs, asses, jackals, vultures and *ichneumon* since their sight is a bad omen. 15

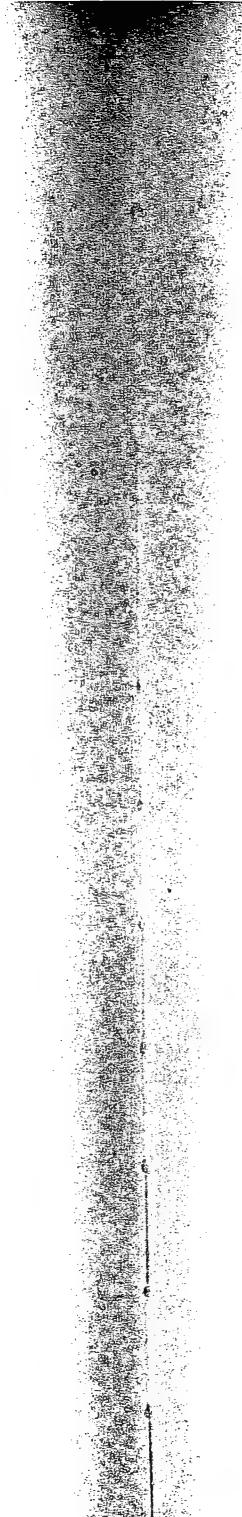
(On seeing such animals) he should give away gifts and chant *svastyayana* and *mantrapāṭha* and being received properly should proceed further. 16

He should enter the compound of the father-in-law setting his left foot first and then enter the inner quadrangle putting him right foot first and again enter the veranda (or terrace in front) by putting the left foot first. 17

While entering the house-proper one should always put his right foot first; for this is said to be the proper way of entrance for one desirous of prosperity. 18

Then the father should give away a properly dressed and decorated girl to the suitor. The girl should take a bath, decorate herself with ornaments and put on a veil of cloth to cover the head. 19

At the appointed time the girl should be given away (to the suitor) by pouring sanctified water into the palms and the suitor should receive her according to the rules prescribed by his own school of *grhyasūtras* (domestic rituals). 20



If the suitor (the *Brāhmaṇa* boy) holds the hand of the girl in the marriage ceremony using only four fingers except the thumb, he shall beget male offspring. 21

He who desires both girls and boys as children should use all his fingers in taking hold of the bride's hand. For the journey after the marriage one may use a palanquin or a boat (as is needed). 22

The sacred fire which witnessed their marriage should be taken along in a pot on the way to the bridegroom's house in the same conveyance. On reaching auspicious spots or junctions on the way one should. 23

Chant *mantras* (hymns) and acknowledge the greetings of those who come to meet him on the way expecting his arrival. Both the bride and the bridegroom should be accompanied on the way by friends and relatives. 24

At the head of the procession there should be soldiers holding swords, maids and others and the couple should be carried in a palanquin by the bearer who should keep a distance from the maid servants to avoid pollution (caused by proximity). 25

The *Śūdras* and others bearing the palanquin should move about in such a way to avoid the sacred fire being polluted by their proximity as also the newly wedded couple. 26

The atmosphere should be reverberated with the sound of various musical instruments. The bride may be led to the home (of the bridegroom) to be received to the accompaniment of a rite in which shoots of *Dūrvā* grass and curd are used. 27

The bride should be led into the interior of the house by the bridegroom along with close friends during night selecting an auspicious time chanting *Mantras*. 28

Once she is led into the house, the husband should perform a sacrificial rite kindling the sacred fire along with her. Thereafter both of them should eat avoiding acidic substances including salt. 29

For the first three nights the couple should observe a vow and should sleep only on a bare ground (without touching each other). They should supply gifts of unguents, garlands, food and cloth to the *Brāhmaṇins* invited for the occasion of the solemn entrance into the house. 30

If wealthy he should please others, especially those from among the caste of *Brāhmaṇas*, like old people having children and ladies whose husbands are alive, by giving gifts. 31

Whatever is said by the elder people without any bias may be listened to and followed: after spending three nights like that the couple should take their bath on the fourth morning. 32

On the night of the fourth day they should copulate (for the first time) according to ritualistic prescription, and before that the husband should not be asked to do anything else (like participating in a ritual etc). 33

Remaining free from other's rituals, one should perform his own domestic rituals everyday without fail and then he should start the *Sthālipāka* (a domestic ritual ordained for a householder, in which cooked rice and milk is poured into sacrificial fire as oblations) ritual. 34

Till the end of this domestic ritual lasting for a month, he should remain in the company of the bride and only after its culmination he shall go out of the region along with her. 35

At the end of each fortnight the *Sthālipāka* should be performed twice in a month. These are called by sages by the names *Darśa* and *Paurṇamāsa*. 36

A householder should bestow utmost care that these rituals are performed at the proper time. He should always make sure that the sacred fire is kept burning during all these days and oblations of grains are offered in it. 37

The fire remaining dormant may be kindled during the twelve days of the vow and at the end of the twelfth day the fire may be extinguished chanting hymns. 38

Sprinkling water over the ashes one may conceive that the demons are destroyed. Once again blowing away the ashes one should try to kindle the almost extinguished fire from among the ashes. 39

Taking that fire with a piece of sacrificial wood, one should remove the ashes sticking on to the ember and place in a ball of dried cow-dung. 40

The fire may be kept in the same sacrificial pit keeping it inside the dried-cowdung and one should perform further rites by kindling the fire using *samidh* (sacrificial stick) chanting hymns. 41

For that there are specific *Mantras* like "Ājuhvāna" etc., and also other hymns like 'udbudhyasvādī' after which the pit may be sprinkled with drops of water. 42

By washing the periphery of the pit with the drenched palm *Pūrnāhutis* (a complete oblation made with a full ladle) may be made with an *Ājya* (melted butter) already prepared or one may offer twenty *Sruvāhutis*, offering made in a *sruva* (small wooden ladle for pouring ghee). 43

For this the *Mantra* prescribed is the one beginning with 'tvayāścāgner' which is already mentioned (on a similar occasion). The second in that series of *mantras* is 'Agnihutā' etc., and there is a given order for this. 44

The ten objects to be invoked or worshipped are Brāhmaṇa, Agni, Prthivī, Antarkṣa, Vāyu, Candramas (moon), Annam (food), Dyauḥ (sky), Aditya (sun) and Prajāpati (the creator) and in that order. 45

Till all the ten objects are finished one should invoke them in their numerical order that the first one (Brāhmaṇa), second one (Agni) etc., as the performers of the ritual. From the third *mantra* onwards one should invoke for prosperity. 46

Different kinds of prosperities totalling twelve in number are to be invoked. After that the *mantra* beginning with 'manoyotir jusatām' is to be chanted (as the thirteenth hymn for invocation). 47

The fourteenth invocation is to the accompaniment of the *mantra* beginning with 'yanma ātmāna'. After that Agni and Praṇava are to be invoked properly. 48

There should be three *Vyāhṛtis* (utterances of mystical words using Praṇava) and then four without that. In all there are twenty-two *mantras* which are to be chanted prefixed with Praṇava. 49

Of the twenty-two *mantras* mentioned (above) three should be chanted before the fire kindled on the occasion of the rituals performed during fortnight (*Darśa* and *Paurṇamāsa*). (The rest of them) the nineteen *Mantras* are to be chanted on a different occasion when the fire is kindled. 50

The sacrificial pit should be cleansed with cow-dung and fire is to be kindled again using ghee, in the following manner. 51

Now one should perform expiatory rites with oblation pured into it with ladles. Thus when the sacred fire relating to marriage is extinguished, one should rekindle it. When such rekindling is not made after the twelfth day the fire is likely to be extinguished. 52

Thus the first quarter of the third chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Proper rekindling of fire]

When the sacred fire is extinguished inadvertently it should be properly rekindled by the householder. The procedure for the same is being explained here. 1

Firstly one should worship *Vighneśa* (the lord of obstacle) and then expiatory rite is to be performed to rekindle the fire with the help of an officiating priest called *Brahman* occupying a seat of grass. 2

Taking his hand into his own the householder should wash it and rub it before handing over to him a *Pavitra* (a ring made of *kuśa* grass). 3

The householder should draw three lines on the plain ground with the *kuśa* grass and should draw on the middle, right and left of the ground with the grass three times. 4

After sprinkling the ground with water he should collect sand and other things in a vessel and with his right hand mix them one after another in a proper manner. 5

Sands collected from a barren spot and saline in nature, pits of rat, ant-hill, obtained from riverbed, and clay trodden by pigs which come to a total of five, petals of lotus. 6

Also *sandhānyāśilā* (what is called *Kolippal* in Malayalam: a kind of stone used to polish iron), the five *Aśvatthas* (belonging to the class of *Aśvattha* tree, *Pāñcavaṭa*: the five fig tress applied to *Aśvattha*, *Bilva*, *Vata*, *Dhārī* and *Aśoka*), *Palāśa* sticks and stick of *Vaikāṃkata* (a thorny tree, *Flacourtie Sapida* from which sacrificial vessels are made; also called *Sida Cordifolia* and *Rhanbifolia*) all of which together make fourteen items (which are referred to as *sambhāra*, requisites, in *grhya* manuals). 7

To the above mentioned items, portion of timber from a tree struck by lightning may be added. All these (fifteen items) should be handed over to the priest (for rekindling the fire inadvertently got extinguished in the residence of a householder). 8

After handling over the items of timber to the priest, the four sides of the sacrificial pit should be sprinkled with a little water and sands may be spread over the place. The *gāyatrī* mantra (*Bhūr bhuvasvah*) should be chanted while doing this. 9

Using the timber (of the tree struck by lightning) three lines each may be drawn as the ground – in the middle, in the right and in the left of the sacrificial pit in addition to the middle the upper and lower parts of it horizontally – thus a total of six lines should be drawn. 10

According to the sequence of the lines drawn the sand thus marked should be sprinkled with water and then the stick (used for drawing) should be thrown away. Then on the corner belonging to *Nirṛti* (south-west) some water should be sprinkled (before addressing the priest). 11

Now the priest should be addressed as follows: "Oh priest I shall kindle the fire" in answer to his command that "you kindle the sacrificial fire" and then the householder shall take hold of the item of timber etc.; brought together for the purpose. 12

After speaking thus the householder should place fire in the pit and kindle it by pouring ghee etc.; in the following manner. 13

The householder should purify objects like ghee, ladle etc.; and then sprinkle water on all (the four) sides of the pit chanting *mantras* and stand up. 14

Then he should fill the sacrificial pit with timber etc., after purifying it by rubbing with water and then using the ladle he should pour oblations into the fire to the accompaniment of the chanting of *Mantras*. 15

The learned ones prescribe the following *mantra* for this purpose: "sapta te agne" etc. After completing the *Pūrṇāhuti*, the full complement of oblation, the householder should present the priest with a gift of cow. 16

Then occupying the seat again (the householder) shall pour oblation into the fire with the remaining ghee, three times, four times, twice and again four times (using a ladle for the purpose). 17

In this series of pouring oblation, for the first offering the *mantras* (1) "Tantum tanvan" etc., (2) "Udbudhyasvāgne" - etc. and (3) *Trayastrīṁśat tantavo* etc., should be made use of. For the second pouring of oblation, the *mantras* (1) *Agnebhyāvartin* - etc. should be chanted. 18

The other *mantras* for the second oblation are: (2) 'Agne'nigraśśatam' etc., (3) *Punar ūrjāni vartava* etc; and (4) *saharayyeti* etc. The *mantra* for the third offering is 'yanma ātmano' etc. 19

The *mantra* for the fourth in the series of offering oblation is "Punaragnir" - etc. This offering shall be made four times to be concluded with pouring of ghee. 20

After chanting *mantras* and giving a gift of cow to the priest (called *Brahman* in a sacrifice) the householder should lend him a hand to get up from the seat. Then after worshipping the sacred fire, *Gaṇeśa* invoked already is to be allowed to go (or sent out). 21

Thus Bhārgava has ordained the rekindling of the fire inadvertently extinguished and I have summarised the proceedings for the benefit of the householder. 22

Thus the second quarter of the third chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[Expiatory rites for the loss of fire]

Later I will be dealing with the damages caused to the fire and the expiatory rites to be performed on that account consequent on the seriousness of the issue, succinctly or otherwise. 1

In all such instances Bhārgava has taken a general view and has prescribed the *Sthālpāka* called *Pavamāna* as a sufficient expiatory rite. 2

Fire may be placed on the sacrificial tinder even if they are not placed in a pit, in the north side of the room and ashes may be blown away to help the kindling of fire. 3

Then the sacrificial pit may be got ready by cleaning it all around using cow-dung and in it the fire may be put along with the tinder to generate blazing fire. 4

The fire may be put into the pit to the accompaniment of *Mantras* and the daily routines of adding fuel may be performed duly. 5

The fire kindled is variously called *Pavamāna* and *Pāvaka* and the one for purification is termed as *Suci* and the gods of fire may be invoked using these different terms in offering libation. 6

The words 'Agnaye Pavamānāya' - to the fire called *Pavamāna* is to be spoken while giving oblation. The offering should be divided into two parts and given from the right side onwards (where the fire called *Dakṣīna* is placed). 7

The various names should be pronounced with the dative suffix (*Pavamānāya*, *Agnaye* etc.) and along with them the term of offering - viz. 'svāhā' should be used while pouring the oblations into the fire. 8

Once the oblations are placed into the sacrificial pit four ladleful of ghee may be purified by sprinkling and poured into the fire chanting the *mantra* ('*manasvati*') etc. 9

Thereafter the householder should resume his seat and pour the remaining oblations into the fire to conclude this *Sthālpāka* rite called *Pavamāna*. 10

Bhārgava has ordained that in these instances *Pūrṇāhuti* - an offering made with a full ladle can also be considered as expiation for guilt or omission (caused by the loss of fire). There is a specific order for the rite beginning with a sweeping together of the surroundings of the sacrificial pit in an act of purification. 11

The articles for the oblation should be purified by sprinkling with water once and then spread out and placed to the northern side of the sacrificial pit in a particular order. 12

The vessel of holding purified water, the vessel to carry the ghee, small and big ladles, the *darbha* grass to be spread around and the four bundles of sacrificial sticks are to be thus arranged. 13

The bundle of sacrificial sticks may be purified by holding it above the blazing fire for a short while to be followed by the purification of the *Pavitra* (the ring of *darbha* grass). These are to be put in a vessel holding purifying water with their tip placed upwards. 14

Then the articles including *Pavitra* may be plunged into holy water by filling up the vessel with water. Thrice the holy water may be sprinkled on the vessel carrying ghee. 15

Ghee may be poured on the sticks before placing it in the pit of fire and the bundle of *kuśa* may be shown above the blazing fire in an act of purification and taken back. 16

After kindling the fire with the sacrificial stick holy water may be sprinkled by using the *Pavitra* and then the wicks of fire may be emblazened by fanning the ember. 17

By fanning to and fro towards east and west of the pit the fire may be blazened forth and then the *Pavitra* may also be placed there. 18

The ladle may be heated by holding it above the fire sprinkling it with holy water. Then with the chanting of *mantra* the fire may be kindled properly. 19

Now the bigger ladle may be filled up with the ghee pouring four times with the little ladle and after purifying it with sprinkling the ghee may be poured over the sacrificial sticks already placed inside the pit. 20

This may be repeated again with the chant of 'Manasvati' hymn, but the householder need not get up as on the previous occasion. Using two passages each of the hymn the act may be completed. 21

The *mantras* to be used in this connection are (1) *Agna āyūmṣi* etc., (2) *Agne pavasva* etc., (3) *Agne pāvaka* etc; and (4) *Sa nah pāvaka* etc.; and (4) *Agnih suci* etc.; (the ones prescribed in the manuals on household sacrifices practised in the region of Kerala). 22

Other hymns are (1) *Śubhagne*, (2) *Śubhayah*, and (3) *Manojyoti* etc. Before extinguishing the sacrificial fire one should sprinkle all around the pit with holy water. 23

This rite is called *Pāvamāni* - the purifying one and it is termed as a *Pūrnāhuti* (a complete sacrifice on the fire). This practice can be followed in other places also (outside Kerala). 24

Thus the third quarter of the third chapter comes to an end

QUARTER-4

[The merits of preserving the fire]

Darśa and *Paurṇamāsa* rites are the two wings of the householder who wishes to ascend the heaven and hence they should not be broken on any account. 1

In case some lapse occurs in this, some expiation should be performed. If the loss is related to the *Darśa* sacrifice the expiation enjoined is called *Agni-pathikṛt* (pathfinder). 2

If the loss is in connection with *Paurṇamāsa* then the expiatory rite prescribed is called *Vaiśvānara* (in which hymn like 'Agne vaiśvānarāya' etc.; may be used). On the other hand if the loss of fire is due to some other connection due rites may be resorted to in rekindling the fire. 3

In the case of the loss of fire for three days one should perform the rite called *Anvārambhanī* - (= an initiatory ceremony in connection with the rekindling of fire), and if the loss of fire is for twelve consecutive days, the five sacrifices beginning with *Pavamāna* etc., should be performed as expiation. 4

If due to certain circumstances one could not perform the householder's ritual for a year, one must perform the seven rituals beginning with *Pavamāna* and in such cases one should always carry out the *Pūrnāhuti* type of sacrificial offering. 5

According to some in the case of *Pūrnāhuti* the performance of *Sruvāhuti*, using the little ladle is enough (and not the one with *juhu*, the bigger ladle). Hence in most cases this pattern is applied as sufficient expiations. 6

Indeed the householder is enjoined to perform a series of rituals which are of a serious nature. These are rigorous in their nature and to be performed with great responsibility. 7

But the householder is not at all worried since one who performs these rituals punctually with care reaps much more happiness than the resultant worry due to non-performance. 8

After death the householder is entitled to different worlds, but to those who break their duties by not performing sacrifices in fire, the world hereafter will be engulfed in darkness. 9

Hence one should perform other duties after carrying out his routine sacrifices in fire. Once the fire is kept properly everything becomes protected according to Bhārgava. 10

In whose house the domestic sacrificial fire is kept burning constantly that householder reaps all the benefits in this world and after his death he enjoys the pleasures of the heavenly world. 11

Where the domestic fire is carefully preserved by the householder even in times of danger, that house is really a holy spot and on the other hand such a house where it is not protected may be termed as a pool resorted to by crows. 12

The house in which the domestic fire is kept burnt by performing sacrifices, there is no chance for the occupation of demons, evil spirits and untimely and unnatural death. 13

The oblations offered to gods and manes except in a sacrificial fire, and gifts given to a householder will not be of any use. 14

It is said that what is given by a householder who does not keep the domestic fire burning in the time of evening worship, the demons will snatch it away by force. 15

Hence a householder should keep the domestic fire burning at any cost, lest he would be treated as a Śūdra despite the fact that he was born as a twice-born entitled to Vedas. 16

Such a householder should bestow particular care in such matters as daily bath at the proper time etc. By performing these duties of the caste he is assured of the heavenly abode. 17

[Thus the fourth quarter of the third chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śāṅkara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

Third chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER FOUR

QUARTER-1

[Rules for daily bath]

One should get up in the *Brāhma muhūrta* (last *yāma*, the second of the three *yāmas* = early dawn) before sunrise and perform urination and evacuation of the bowels. For this purpose, during the night one should sit facing south and during daytime and evening facing the north. 1

The twice-borns should tuck the sacred thread to the right earlobe, during the junctures of the day, till it is all over and remain silent though the children may do as they like. 2

One should not answer the call of nature on ploughed fields, uncovered places, wastelands, grassy regions, shadows of trees, regions inhabited by animals and pits. 3

One should not do this on ant-hills, public roads, gardens, proximity of ponds, on ashes, charcoals, in water or cow-dung. 4

Again one should avoid husk, cattle-shed, temple, facing wind or sun or fire, as well as ladies, preceptors and relatives (while answering the call of nature). 5

After cleaning the anus by rubbing, one should hold and lift up the penis by the hand and take the water from the pond for washing (private parts). 6

The rubbing and washing of (the private parts) should be done till the odour and sticky substances are gone. This is applicable to all castes in general (though for *Brahmin* something more is to be done). 7

For the *Brahmins* dwelling in the land of Bhārgava (Kerala) the cleaning of the anus should be done using mud for twelve consecutive times and it should be repeated twelve times. 8

In the cleaning of the penis (after urination) rubbing with mud is only for seven consecutive times for *Brahmins*, and for *Kṣatriyas* and *Vaiśyas* the number is reduced by one-fourth (meaning nine times). 9

For *Kṣatriyas* and *Vaiśyas* purification (using mud) should be five times consecutively and this is to be repeated five times. For those other than *Brāhmaṇas* who wear the sacred thread purification could be five times repeated on just five times (without repetition). 10

For those other than *Brāhmaṇin* seven times repeated or just seven times purification with water mixed in mud in the case of evacuation of the bowel and thrice repeated or just three times in the case of urination, is prescribed. 11

In the land of Rāma (= Kerala), a man devoid of disease need not follow the procedure of cleaning as described above. He may use both hands one by one for this purpose. 12

Healthy persons should not clean their private parts with water collected in a pan or sitting immersed in water. These are the rules applicable to householders and *Brahmacārins*. 13

For *Vānaprasthas* (forest-dwellers) and *Bhikṣus* (the ascetics) the purification process should be twice that is fixed for the householder. After urinating one should wash the mouth with seven mouthfuls of water. 14

Brahmacārin should wear the *kaupīna* (strip of loin-cloth covering privities) and rinse the mouth ten times on the occasion of daily bath even though he has not urinated. 15

Purification and rinsing of the mouth with water should be done by the *Brahmacārins* whenever they take a bath irrespective of their status as *Naiṣṭhika* (a perpetual religious student), *Dikṣita* (initiated for a ceremony) or *Agnihotri* (performing fire sacrifice). 16

These people shall rinse the mouth even without wearing the *kaupīna* (the loin-cloth). But they should wash and clean their feet thrice using mud after wearing the *kaupīna*. 17

Brāhmaṇin shall purify the foot with water mixed with mud, or with pure water once, and then again he shall sip the water free of foam twice and it should be repeated for ten times. 18

Cleaning the mouth by sipping holy water just enough to plunge a bean held in the hollow of the palm may be resorted to by all those wearing sacred thread when occasion demands. 19

While sipping the holy water its quantity should be sufficient to reach the chest of the *Brāhmaṇin*, throat of the *Kṣatriyas* and palate of the *Vaiśyas*. The hollowed palm should be able to carry this much water. 20

All of them should sit on their knees but not in water, getting up early in the morning and keeping silence should brush the teeth. 21

In taking bath one should dip in water facing the south. All should clean the teeth by brushing them with the leaves of the mango tree. 22

The non-householders and *Dikṣitas* should brush the teeth with mango leaves only, though for the householders burnt husk could be used. 23

A householder should not brush the teeth on *Ekādaśi* (the eleventh day after the full-moon), on *Darśa* (dark-moon) on *Saṅkrānti* (the day in which the sun moves from one Zodiaca sign to another), on Sundays and Tuesdays. Others are prohibited from brushing the teeth on the three days of transition of the sun. 24

After brushing the teeth a *Brāhmaṇin* should rinse the mouth using mouthful of water for sixteen times. A *Brāhmaṇin* should never avoid brushing the teeth on days which are not prohibited to do so. 25

On other days (which are prohibited) one should rinse the mouth with mouthful of water for twelve times for purification. Thereafter one should take away the loin-cloth and dip it in water and wash it. 26

One should wash the *kaṭīṣūtra* (loin thread forming the girdle) and *kaupīna* (= the strip of cloth covering the privities) and wear them. Thereafter one should sip holy water twice. 27

Before sipping the water one should twice wash the feet rubbing with sand and once without sand thus making it three times. After that one should dip into the water thrice and getting up should purify oneself. 28

At the time of dipping one should untie the tuft on his head and wash it before tying again. After dipping in water once more one should perform the act of the holy sipping of water. 29

After purifying the cloth already washed in water one should wring it thrice (to drain the water) and place it in one's forearm. 30

Placing the cloth thus and placing the palm of the left hand on the chest once, one should dip again in water and getting up one should reach the bank having only a little water (just enough to plunge one's palm). 31

Now one should dry up one's body taking the cloth from one's forearm (where it was placed earlier) and the drying up should start from one's head itself. 32

A householder should start the drying up of the body from the back though for a *Brahmacārin* there is absolute freedom in this connection. A *Snātaka* (= the initiated householder) should dry his ear first and the *Samnyāsin* the eyes. 33

The *Agnihotri* (should begin to dry up his body) from the heart and *Dīksita* from the pit in front of the neck. These are the rules prescribed for *Snātaka* and others in the matter of drying up the body after bath. 34

All other modes of drying up the body is resorted to by some at will. After drying the limbs of the body the person concerned should dip it in the water and wring it to remove the dripping of water. 35

In other regions people in general do as they like in the matter of rubbing the body with wet clothes. 36

After washing and tying the cord forming the girdle, the strip of loin-cloth covering the privities may be changed before or after tying up the tuft of hair on the head. 37

According to some after the tying of the tuft the feet should be washed and sipping of water may be resorted to as usual. 38

After wringing the strip of cloth dry, the cloth to cover the body may be taken up and put around with its tip towards the east. 39

After carefully washing the feet properly once again the sipping of water may be resorted to, which according to some should be along with the chant of *Mantras* though others do it in silence. 40

[The ceremonial bath is of four kinds] The *Brāhma* type is that in which the water is just sprinkled on the body with the chant of *mantras*. In the type called *Vāyavya* the dust raised by the hoof of the cow is smeared. In the *Āgneya* the sacred ash is smeared on the different limbs and in the *Vāruna* the actual immersing of the body in water takes place. 41

Thus the bath is of four kinds, though in Kerala the *Brāhmins* should first perform the *Brāhma* to be followed by *Vāruna* (in which dipping is resorted to). 42

Thus the first quarter of the fourth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Rules for morning and evening prayers]

A *Brāhmin* should offer worship in all the three junctures of the day (morning, noon and evening) in accordance with his own *sūtra* (prescribed rules of the sect to which he belongs as ordained in the *grhya-sūtras*, the rules of domestic rituals). 1

This worship at the beginning, middle part and the end of the day is ordained by sages at three junctures of the day and the twice-born people are expected to worship the same. 2

Among the things which are to be worshipped by *Brāhmin*, the three *Sandhyas* (junctures of the day) come foremost and he who does not care for this will be treated as an outcaste (and expelled from the caste). 3

Hence all belonging to the class of the twice-borns should worship the three junctures of the day with utmost care. 4

By doing this they go to *Brahmaloka* (literally the world of *Brahman*) hereafter having shed all their sins. That is why it is said that all *Brāhmins* should worship the three junctures of the day. 5

Those *Brāhmins* who perform worship at the three junctures of the day will be released from the sins caused by telling lie or doing copulation during the day time. 6

All classes of twice-born should perform the worship of junctures according to their own domestic and ritualistic rules lest they would lose their position in the caste. 7

Here I shall prescribe the common rules succinctly, but special rules may be understood from traditional observances. 8

The first juncture of the day is spoken of as that time at the fag end of the night when the stars appear as dwindling almost seen and unseen. 9

Realizing this first flush of dawn properly *Brāhmaṇin* should face eastward and offer handfuls of water (to the rising sun). 10

Standing in the water and chanting the *Gāyatrīmantra* once or more times according to the rules of his sect he should sprinkle the water backwards but not in banks. 11

After sprinkling the water thrice according to rules one should sit down and offer libations of holy water to gods, sages and manes. 12

While offering libations to the gods one should wear the sacred thread as it is, though for offering to manes one should wear touching the right shoulder and in the case of the offer to sages it should be hung down the neck (as in the case of a necklace). 13

These are in short the general proceedings of acts during the three junctures of the day. After the offering of the libation of water one should move about six feet on the banks. 14

Remaining there one should chant till sunrise the *Gāyatrīmantra* according to prescriptions for thousand times and then conclude the same. 15

Even half of it, or one hundred and eight times could be the limit of the chant. The four items *Pranava* (= the chant of 'om'), *Gāyatrī* (= the *Gāyatrīmantra*), *Asṭārṇa* (= *Asṭākṣaramantra* related to *Viṣṇu*: *Om namo vāsudevāya*) and; 16

the *Śaivapāñcāksara* (= *Om namah śivāya*) which together are called *Catuḥsāntika* (= the four observances calculated to remove calamities) may be chanted daily by *Brahmacārins* and *Gṛhaṇtas* (householders). 17

The holy sage Bhārgava has termed these as a *catuska* (a collection of four) since offer of libation and chanting of *Gāyatrī mantra* are a must since without it no *Brāhmaṇin* smears ashes on his body. 18

[Rules for smearing ashes]

Everyday the *Brāhmaṇin* is required to smear ashes on his body (after due completion of the chanting of *mantras*). 19

Ordinances of Bhārgava stipulate that in South Kerala (32 villages forming the South) the *Brāhmaṇin* must smear ashes on their body. It can be a single stroke upwards on the centre of the forehead or in three horizontal lines close together. 20

According to the family there is option in these two modes of wearing ashes. While doing this everyday one should offer libation. 21

Bhārgava has ordained that one could do this or avoid this as one likes, but one should never draw a perpendicular line alone in this region. 22

The perpendicular mark on the forehead is made using *Gopikāmr̄d* (= *Gopīcandana* = a species of white clay). The materials used for making these marks are *bhūti*, *bhasita*, *bhasma*. 23

kṣāra, *rakṣā* which added together form five articles as detailed below. *bhūti* is the ash prepared from the cow-dung of *Kapilā*, red coloured cow. 24

The ash made from the cowdung of a black coloured cow is called *bhasita*; that which is prepared from the cowdung of the red coloured cow is called *bhasma*, while that of the white coloured cow is named *kṣāra*. 25

The ash prepared from the cow-dung of a cow of variegated colour is called *rakṣā*. Of these (five varieties) the one called *bhūti* is sufficient to cause prosperity while the one with the name of *bhasita* will cause splendour. 26

The ash called *bhasma* will eat away all the sins (and hence it is called so), where as *kṣāra* is so named since it protects one from dangers. 27

It also saves one from the trouble caused by demons, goblins and evil plants. In the world the word *bhasma* is generally used in the sense of burnt objects and as such it is famous. 28

One should draw the mark of *Tripundra* (the three horizontal lines) using ashes. *Brāhmaṇins* should not smear ashes which are not properly prepared. 29

A householder should prepare ashes and smear it everyday after performing his daily routines like *svādhyāya* (study of the Vedas) so that he is saved from sin. 30

This also applies to the case of *Brahmacārin* as well as *Vanastha* without doubt. It is the duty of the householder to prepare the ashes according to prescribed procedure. 31

After preparing the ashes he should supply them to those undergoing penance whether they ask for it or not. *Bhasma* truly consists of *Agniṣoma* (Agni the god of fire and Soma the moon) and so also the universe. 32

Hence who could determine the merit accrued by giving away holy ashes to *Bhiksus* (ascetics), *Vanasthas* (forest-dwellers) and *Brahmacārins*. 33

To these three, the householder shall give away and this custom is eternal. Ashes should not be put in the hands nor should be taken by the hand. 34

One should give it in a vessel and one should take hold of it similarly (using a vessel). He who gives ashes by hand and he who receives it by bare hand; 35

are likely to loose their merit accrued by penance since Agni and Soma are there to take it away. Hence it is to be put in a plantain leaf by the side of a *kundika* (vessel carrying water). 36

A householder shall place them (ashes as well as a potful of water) before a *Brāhmaṇin* who returns after taking his bath. This is an effortless, meritorious and inexpensive way to reap great merit. By doing this one not only acquires great fame but also escapes from the household sins. 37-38

Thus the second quarter of the fourth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[The rules for making sacred ashes]

Now I shall succinctly narrate the rules for making sacred ashes, since ashes prepared according to rules will bring prosperity to the *Brāhmaṇins*. 1

(In collecting the cowdung to make ashes) one should avoid a cow with inauspicious looks, bad behaviour, capricious (by nature) lean and appearing ugly. 2

(One should avoid) a cow whose calf is dead, with inauspicious limbs afflicted by disease, depraved of senses, refusing to milk, recently delivered and eating waste. 3

(One should avoid) a cow with body burnt by fire, barren and eating hair, soiled clothes and bones. Thus one should carefully select a *Kapilā* (= red coloured cow) in order to collect cowdung. 4

Or one may select a white cow if one fails to get the earlier mentioned variety and after procuring such a cow one should take it to his own residence. 5

After keeping it in the cattleshed one should maintain it properly by giving tasty grass and fodder. Now one should prepare oneself on the early morning of the fourteenth *tithi* by taking bath and remaining calm and quiet. 6

Wearing a clean white cloth one should collect green *dūrvā* grass appearing like emerald untrodden and untouched by animals to feed the cow. 7

While collecting the green grass one should chant *Mantras* like *sahasra-parama* - and then take it near the cow and then chant further *Mantras* before feeding it. 8

While feeding the cow with *Dūrvā* grass, *Mantras* as *Āgāva*, may be chanted and then it may be provided with drinking water to the chant of the *Mantras*: *Tuṣṇīm gāvo bhago gā na* etc. 9

Fasting oneself for a day and after taking bath the next day one should wear white clothes and take hold of proper vessels with utmost attention. 10

Without hurting the cow one should cause to stand on its legs and collect its urine in a vessel of gold, silver or copper chanting the *Gāyatrī mantra*. 11

One may even use an earthen vessel or a lotus leaf before it (the urine) falls on the earth considering it as a source of smell. 12

The householder should collect the cowdung before that falls or after falling on a clean spot and then examine it carefully chanting the words *trir me bhajatu* (let it reach me thrice). 13

Using a *mantra* beginning with the words *atyakṣmir* the cowdung may be sifted to free it from grains and other wastes. For this the urine may be sprinkled on the cowdung repeating the words *san tvā siñcāmi* (I shall sprinkle on you). 14

Mixing with urine the cowdung should be made into fourteen balls chanting a *mantra* beginning with *pañcānām* etc., and they may be placed in a spot for drying it up making it sure that no dog would trample on it. 15

After placing the balls of cowdung for drying in the sunlight and concluding the daily rituals, one should partake in his meals for the day. Then the balls may be collected and kept in a vessel prepared for the purpose. 16

The dried balls (of cowdung) may be kept in a clean place till it is properly dried up. Then after the lapse of a night the next day one should get up early morning. 17

After performing the bath and other daily routines according to the rules of one's own domestic rituals, one should kindle sacred fire and place the balls on it one by one. 18

The first ball should be placed on fire with the chant of *Pranava* (the *omkāra*) and likewise the rest may be placed using the *śadakṣara* *mantra* (the six-syllabled *mantra*, viz. *Om namaḥ śivāya*). 19

While placing the ball (of cowdung) on the fire one should suffix the *mantra* with the words *svāhā* on each occasion. The *āhuti* (the offering) is to gods *Sāvarṇa* (son of sun) the oblation thus given being capable of removing sin. 20

Thereafter one should offer twenty-three oblations to *Nidhānapati* (Kubera, the lord of riches) and five each to *Brahman* (the creator). 21

Using *mantras* like *Namo hiranya* etc., oblation may be offered to the fire. Another *mantra* is like *artasatya* and yet another is like *kadrudā* etc.; (for this purpose). 22

A third *mantra* is like *yasya vaikākati* and all these three are to be used in offerings; one to be made using *mantras* like *anājñātatraya* etc. 23

Thus offering oblations one should perform the *sviṣṭakṛt* (offering a right sacrifice to fire). After removing the balance of oblations one should take a vesselful of water (for offering). 24

The vessel may be filled up to the brim using other sanctified waters to the chant of *mantra* and then it may be sprinkled on the head chanting *mantra* like *Bṛāhmanesvamṛtam*. 25

The holy water should be sprinkled in various regions and the *Brahman* (the priest) is to be satiated with appropriate gifts and presentations and then one should address being desirous of taking out the ball of cowdung from fire. 26

"I shall take these for the proper performance of worship of all the gods, and I shall extinguish this fire with balls of dried cowdung." 27

Thereafter the balls of cowdung may be covered with fire. Now the chief priest (called *Brahman*) may be relieved of his duties and the householder shall partake in his meals remaining silent all through the meals. 28

Thus the third quarter of the fourth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[Rules for collecting ashes]

On the third or fourth day after taking the morning bath and wearing white clothes the householder shall apply three lines on his forehead with ashes. 1

Then after sitting near the pit of fire in which the dried cowdung balls are to be put one should chant the *mantra* "Om tad *Brahma*" and then put the balls of ashes made from cowdung. 2

Then one should worship the sacred fire using all the sixteen *Upacāras* like *Āvāhana* (invoking fire etc.) and extinguish it at the conclusion of rituals. 3

Chanting the *mantra* 'Agner bhasma' etc., one should collect the balls from the pit and wash it using the urine of the cow which is called *kapila* (the red one) or with fragrant water. 4

While sifting the ashes in such water one should chant the *mantra* 'Agnir' etc. After oozing the water it should be mixed with sandal, *usīra* (Andropogon Muricatus) and *kumkuma* (saffron) powder. 5

Also one should use the powder of the three varieties of *Agaru* (Agallochum) for mixing up with the ashes along with the powder of *ghanasāra* (= camphor) so as to make it into *Vāṭakas* (= globules or pills). 6

After such mixing one should make globules of round shape and while mixing the powders and ashes one should chant the *mantra* and *Pranava*. 7

The *mantra* is the one beginning with "anorāṇiyān" (= smaller than the atom in size) for making ashes into globules and drying them in the sun they should be kept in a proper vessel. 8

After making the ashes in this way one should draw three lines with it on the forehead. It is the custom of the householder that after the morning bath he should smear the ashes. Others also should do likewise. 9

These are the duties of *Brāhmaṇas*, *Kṣatriyas* and *Vaiśyas* which undoubtedly will be effortless while being fruitful to the utmost in doing away with the cycle of birth and death. 10

In the absence of properly prepared ashes one should make use of burnt cowdung. Anyhow the *Brāhmaṇa* should make use of purified ashes for marking *Tripuṇḍra* (= the three lines on the forehead). 11

Again in the absence of such ashes of burnt cowdung *Brāhmaṇa* shall make use of the ashes from the kitchen of Śiva temple. 12

As far as Śūdras are concerned they may use the ashes from the kitchen of *Brāhmaṇas* for smearing the body, all other varieties of ashes being rejected for use. 13

For all castes the smearing of *Tripuṇḍra* destroys sins and they escape from the cycle of birth and death. 14

Meditation without smearing *Tripuṇḍra*, chanting of hymn without smearing *Tripuṇḍra*, performance of sacrifice without smearing *Tripuṇḍra* and offering of oblation to manes without smearing *Tripuṇḍra*; 15

And giving away of gifts without smearing *Tripuṇḍra* are the five things to be avoided in South Kerala according to Bhārgava (Paraśurāma). 16

One should wear Śikhā (tuft of hair), follow *dāya* (the order of inheritance), adhere to *ācāra* (conventions), observe *Sūtra* (laws of *Baudhāyana* etc.) and smear *Tripuṇḍra*. All these five scrupulously followed by the predecessors should be adhered to lest one would fall from the social position. 17

[Daily routines]

One should perform his daily routines of studies having taken his bath early and the holy sipping of water. Before the start of the studies he should chant 'Sāvitrī' (*Gāyatri*) properly. 18

The householder may expect a guest after the routine performance of the sacrificial ritual called *Vaiśvadeva* (= offering to the *Viśvedevas*). 19

If the guest is somebody who has never come on earlier occasion he should be accorded proper reception. After the performance of the midday ablutions the guest shall be fed. 20

After the completion of the rites the householder shall maintain himself with the food which is left over after the sacrificial ritual. A *Brāhmaṇa* shall eat only during the daytime and once in night. 21

In between one should not eat anything. But during the fortnights one should abstain from taking food at night. There is no restriction that a householder should remain silent during meals. 22

This applies to the *snātakas* as well, according to the laws of Bhārgava. During days of pollution one should avoid taking salt, especially for those who are to offer rice-balls to the departed manes. 23

Brāhmaṇa and householder who are performing a vow lasting for a considerable time should refrain from eating salt directly. Salt put on a leaf before one begins to eat should be thrown away along with the leaf. 24

Those engaged in a long vow should reject that leaf in which salt is supplied as such. An ascetic shall eat eight mouthfuls of food while a *Vānaprastha* (the forest-dweller) shall eat sixteen mouthfuls. 25

A householder shall eat thirty-two mouthfuls while a *Brahmacārin* shall eat as much as he likes. Until the last sip of water the leaves in which food is supplied should not touch together. 26

In such an event one should take a dip (in river) wearing the same garment and this is applied to *Brāhmaṇas* who preserve the three sacrificial fires in the house. Now I shall narrate things to be avoided scrupulously in partaking of meals. 27

In case some object which is prohibited happens to get mixed up with food one should perform expiations. One should chant the thousand names of Viṣṇu on every such occasion. 28

Or one may (as an act of expiation) listen to the recitation of *Purāṇas* belonging to the Śaiva or Vaiṣṇava sects, or one may make elders and preceptors to listen to them as far as one could manage. 29

One may narrate such texts to guests, friends and those who are desirous of knowing. One should teach Vedas at the proper time to the proper persons. 30

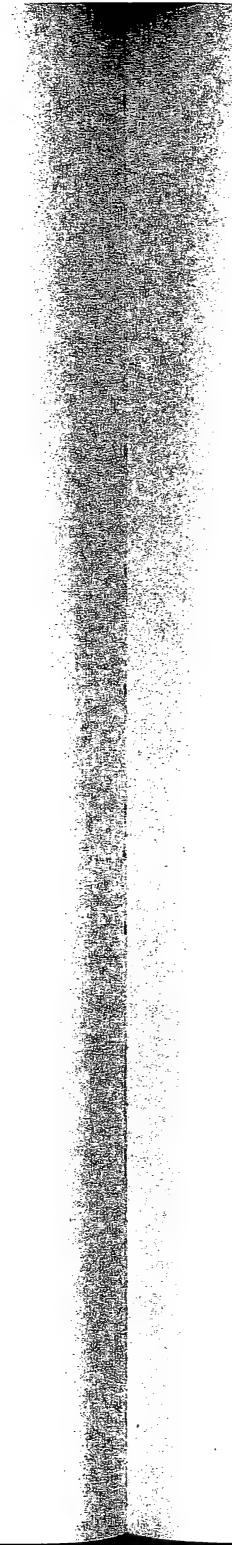
One should not recite Vedas on the days of *anādhyaṇa* (= holidays in which studies are prohibited) and on the occasion when Śūdras are hearing. All such narration should be completed before the evening properly. 31

The evening worship is to be made while the sun has not completely disappeared (= while the sun is still blazing). Sitting down properly the *Brāhmaṇin* should chant the *Gāyatrīmantra* with rapt attention. 32

After performing other routine duties and taking meals one shall retire for sleep. These are succinctly the routine duties of a householder and one who strictly adheres to these will not falter in his ways. 33

[Thus the fourth quarter of the fourth chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śaikara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

Fourth chapter is concluded.



CHAPTER FIVE

QUARTER-1

[The duties of the husband and wife]

To free oneself of the obligation to the manes (by begetting a son) one should remember the vow (of marriage) undertaken making the sacred fire as witness and approach the wife with this intention. 1

Without being covetous one should copulate with one's wife, except on one's birthday, on the *Ekādaśi* (the eleventh day of the fortnight), on the days of black-moon and full-moon, the sixth day of the fortnight, the day of the passage of the sun from one zodiacal sign to another (*Saṅkrānti*) on Sunday and during day time. 2

One should not copulate the day before performing, 'śrāddha' (offering to the manes) and on the day of the *śrāddha*. One who is in a vow should not copulate even if one is desirous of a son. 3

One should not copulate with a woman who has no love and desire, one who is unhealthy, one performing a vow not to speak to a woman who is the wife of another man. 4

If one's wife shows inclination for sex one should copulate with her according to rules remembering the boon given to them by Indra (the lord of gods). 5

One should follow her desire in the matter of embracing, kissing, oral sex and inverted coitus without any inhibition. 6

One should follow the traditional modes of sexual union for the pleasure of one's wife, but one should not initiate oneself into new varieties of sexual act. 7

Ladies are ordained as chaste owing to the boon given by the God of fire and hence the householder having sexual union with such a wife will not be at fault. 8

Sexual union with unchaste women, conversation with them, emulation of the coitus of animals and such other amorous sports should be avoided by both husband and wife. 9

A woman getting up from the bed after a sexual union is deemed to be pure, and the man should purify himself by taking a bath before he is to share the bed during the same night. 10

It is not proper to have sex more than once in the same night being covetous; such an act will drain one's virility and is considered inauspicious. 11

The one who does not perform coitus with one's wife between the menstrual cycles and the one who does it outside the period invite sin and go to the hell destined for those who kill an unborn child. 12

From the menstruation onwards the sixteen days are the suitable period (favourable for conception) and among them the first three days are to be avoided. 13

According to some, coition is to be performed in each of the menstrual cycle with the chant of *mantras*; but in Kerala the first coition alone requires the accompaniment of *mantras*. 14

Simanta - the ceremonial parting of the hair of the wife is performed only on the occasion of the first pregnancy, in the region of Kerala and in the case of *Niṣeka* - coition also the same rule applies (= chanting of *mantras*). 15

[The sixteen purificatory rites]

This act of *Niṣeka* (= the rite of impregnation) is termed as the first of the purificatory rites by the learned. 16

The second rite is called *Pūmsavana* (= the rite for causing the birth of a male child). The third is the *Simanta* (= parting of hair), while the fourth is called *Jātakarma* (= a birth ceremony). 17

The fifth rite is *Nāmakarana* (= the ceremony of naming a child) and the sixth is called *Niṣkrāmanā* (= taking a child for the first time out of the house to see the sun). *Prāṣana* (= the first feeding of a child) is the seventh rite while the eighth is called *Cūḍākarma* (the ceremony of tonsure). 18

Karṇavedha (= piercing the ear) is the ninth rite to be followed by the tenth called *Upanayana* (= the initiation with the investiture of the sacred thread) and the eleventh is the *Vedārambha* (= the study of the Vedas). 19

Keśānta (= or *Godāna* the gift of cutting the hair as a religious ceremony) is the twelfth rite and the thirteenth rite is called *Snāna* (= also called

Samāvarttana = (returning from the home of a preceptor after studies). *Vivāha* (= the marriage ceremony) is the fourteenth rite. 20

The fifteenth rite is called *Aupāsanāgnisvīkāra* (= taking the fire for domestic worship by the householder to be kept burning during his life time, since this fire has witnessed his marriage). The sixteenth rite is *Tretāgnisāṅgraha* (also called *ādhāna* = kindling of the three sacred fires and offering to them) and all these should be accompanied by *mantras*. 21

The rites along with *mantras* are prescribed for the three castes of *Brāhmaṇas*, *Kṣatriyas* and *Vaiśyas*. For *Śūdras* it is not a must. The rites up to *Karṇavedha* with exception to marriage are not prescribed for the *Śūdras*. 22

All these rites are performed fully only in the case of *Brāhmaṇin* of higher status who are entitled to conduct *Agni* sacrifice, since for others some of these are optional and not a must. 23

Rites like *Jātakarma* up to *Karṇavedha* may be conducted for ladies without the use of *mantras*, though for the marriage ceremony *mantras* should be adopted. 24

Marriage is the only rite for ladies which requires *mantra*. These rites are to be conducted at an auspicious time in the proper order. 25

These rights performed properly at the appropriate time will bring prosperity and those who perform them will move on the right path without fear. 26

In Kerala the performance of these rites with or without the use of *mantras* are a must and the non-performance of these enjoined to each family will invite great sin. 27

Thus the first quarter of the fifth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[The proper time for the sixteen customary rites]

Once it is ascertained that the wife is pregnant the *Pūmsavana* ceremony should be performed in the third month after the conception but not in the two months that follow (= the fourth or fifth months). 1

If the date of conception is not definitely known the month should be cal-

culated from the fifth day of the last menses. In the case of the first pregnancy the rite could be performed even in the fourth month. 2

After the *Pumsavana*, the ceremony of *Simanta* should be performed preferably in the fourth month, though some hold that it could be done from the seventh month onwards, but never the fifth. 3

Simanta should be performed only in the case of the first pregnancy, but failure to do so invite the performance for every subsequent pregnancies also. If the child of the first pregnancy is still-born (or death of the child in delivery) the rite should be performed in subsequent pregnancies. 4

According to some (belonging to the *Baudhāyana* school) a rite called *Viṣṇubali* (an offering to Visnu for protection of pregnancy) may be performed in the eighth month. Once the child is born, *Jātakarma* should be performed before the severance of the umbilical cord. 5

The maximum time is up to the feeding of breast-milk and if it is not done then it should be postponed till the period of pollution is over. 6

It could be performed on the eleventh day or twelfth day (after the purification) though it could also be done on the later part of the night of the tenth day. 7

But this stipulation is not applicable to Kerala since only after the pollution is over it could be performed. 8

Before the naming ceremony of just after it (the child) should be fed with *Vacā* (a kind of aromatic root) and collyrium should be applied to the eyes on an auspicious day. 9

Niṣkrāmaṇa (taking out of the house) of the child for the first time should be in the fourth month or later along with the first feeding which is to be performed in the sixth month in the *Sāvana* (a month of thirty solar days). 10

It could be according to the *Saura* (solar) calendar though it is *Madhyama* (the middling) or even by *Cāndra* (lunar) calendar in emergency which is lowest in preference. The ceremony of tonsure could be in the third or fifth year for the *Brāhmaṇins*. 11

The initiation to the alphabets may also be made during this period which is auspicious. In the case of *Brāhmaṇin*, after the tonsure ceremony the earlobes can be pierced. 12

These are to be performed in odd years in Kerala according to Bhārgava and this should be well before the investiture of the sacred thread. 13

If the *Kaṛṇavedha* is not performed before the *Upanayana*, then it could be done after three days of the culmination of *upākarma* (= a ceremony before the commencement of the study of Veda) at an auspicious time according to astrological calculation. 14

At the appropriate time one should perform religious observances, *Śukriya vrata* (= an observance lasting for four days which are suitable for the study of the Vedas) on the occasion of *Parva* (= the period of change of moon) and *Āṣṭamī*, the eighth day of fortnight. 15

After performing the *Baudhāyaniya-snāna* (= the religious bath according to the *Baudhāyana* school) one should fast for a day. The time for *Keśānta* (cutting of hair) and *Snāna* (bath) is according to the custom of the particular *grhya* school. 16

These two (*Keśānta* and *Snāna*) are optional since it entails religious bath. For women the rite in the place of investiture ceremony is marriage itself, for which the chant of *mantras* is essential. 17

The right time for the marriage of a girl is the twelfth year, even though this limit is not arbitrary since girls of higher age can also be married away. Śruti and Smṛti stipulate the marriage of a girl before she attains puberty. 18

Hence marriage before puberty is permitted by all authorities. But Bhārgava is not strict (since in Kerala) such women are in large numbers. 19

But then he permits this as a measure of contingency and not ideal. Householder in case he is poor may even resort to begging without any qualms. 20

Further in such cases one could even marry a second or third time in exchange (of his daughter for the wife). Even by resorting to other methods like selling one's house, one should perform the marriage of a daughter. 21

A wise father should unite his daughter with a suitable husband of good family and noble qualities at the proper time by some means. 22

In the matter of preserving, the *tretāgni* (the three sacred fires) suitable time may be ascertained by following Vedic prescription. This means the purificatory rites are shown here with the proper time of performance. 23

The prohibited ones and the ones which are enjoined should be understood by consulting astrologers. 24

Thus the second quarter of the fifth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[The duties of *snātakas*]

Thus in the proper time prescribed the rites like *Pumsavana* etc.; may be performed. Duties of the son who does not wish to have his *samāvartana* - (the ceremonial bath after the studies) are enumerated here for information. 1

The ceremonial bath is enjoined only to those who opt for it and there is no compulsion. If one wants to remain a celibate throughout one's life, one may be permitted to do so. 2

Thus one may be permitted to remain a *Brahmacāri* throughout; but if one wants to marry and beget children that also is permitted. 3

Bhārgava permits the marriage of all suitable persons in a family and there is no compulsion in this matter either way. 4

Other authorities state that only the senior boy of the family should marry and the children born to him are considered as the progenies of others also. This helps the family to retain the wealth without having to share among the members (in the Kerala context). 5

If there is fraternity among the brothers or if they want to get married due to feeling of love and to further the prospects of having more children in the family, marriage is permitted for all. 6

Without getting married at the proper time there is the possibility of a celibate later becoming lustful and leading a life of a scoundrel visiting brothels and behaving improperly like a man who has lost his senses. 7

Such a person would refuse to perform the rites enjoined for a householder and would be despised by all good people. He would lose both the worlds (the present world and the one hereafter) and would waste his birth bringing bad name to his own family. 8

Such a person will throw his manes into worst type of hells without any

doubt and hence the view that all should be permitted to marry appears proper and better. 9

[Duties of householders]

A householder should perform *Agnihotra* after the marriage by kindling the sacred fire in his home perpetually. It is his duty to preserve the fire in the home. 10

Such a person should perform the *Agnihotra* sacrifice throughout his life. In the sacrifice the *Brāhmaṇi* may offer a goat to the fire as oblation if he could do it. 11

Bhārgava has prohibited (in Kerala) the first type of rituals which are: (1) *Sautrāmaṇi* - a sacrifice in honour of Indra; (2) *Narabali* - the killing of human beings in a sacrifice; (3) *Paśumedha* - the killing of a cow; (4) *Aśvamedha* - the killing of a horse and (5) *Naiṣṭhika-brahmacarya* - the absolute celibacy. 12

The householder should attempt to perform *Iṣṭāpūrta* (performing of sacrifices and digging wells and doing other acts of charity). By *Iṣṭa* (sacrifices like *Vaiśvadeva*) one shall attain the heaven while by *Pūrta* one shall attain liberation. 13

By *Iṣṭa* is meant *Agnihotra* sacrifice, performance of penance, adherence to truth, protection of Vedas waiting upon guests and *Vaiśvadeva* sacrifice (to please the *Viśvedevas*). 14

Pūrta means the digging of ponds, lakes and other watersheds for the benefit of cows, travellers and building of temples. 15

If a cow drinks the water from one's trough even for a day to quench its thirst, the merit thus accrued would liberate one from the hell of seven generations. 16

Further such a person shall attain the worlds that are achieved by the giving away of cows as gifts. 17

A householder should plant trees having profuse branches on the roadside at a distance of a *krośa* (a measure of distance of 1000 *daṇḍas* or 4000 *hastas* = 1/4 of *yojanā*) for the benefit of wayfarers to take rest. 18

He who renovates ponds, wells and lakes as well as dilapidated shrines would reach ultimate place of bliss after his worldly life has come to an end. 19

Such a person would reach that position from which there is no chance of rebirth in this world without doubt. So also is the case of the one who quenches the hunger and thirst of wayfarers day by day. 20

Hunger and thirst is similar and unbearable to one and all from *Brāhmaṇas* up to the people of low caste and there is no distinction. 21

Hence a householder should give food to the hungry according to his resources and give drink to the thirsty ones. 22

Even a *Śūdra* performing such acts defined as *Pūrta* becomes eligible for Vedic studies. One should please others by bestowing gifts since it is spoken of as ideal for men. 23

One who has got a thousand coins should give away a hundred, one having a hundred should part with ten and one possessing ten should donate one and all of these deserve the same merit (by giving ten per cent of their wealth). 24

A *Brāhmaṇa* possessed of wealth should give away different kinds of gifts and by not doing so loses his position as *Śaṅkarmin* (a *Brāhmaṇa* enjoined with six duties) and becomes a *Kṣatriya* by all means. 25

Even a *Vaiśya* attains good results by performing suitable acts and all should strive for liberation by doing such acts of benevolence. 26

The sage (Bhārgava) is not against the *Brāhmaṇa* doing acts with a view to attaining favourable results, but the result alone should not be the sole purpose of such acts. 27

Thus the third quarter of the fifth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[Expiation for receiving gifts]

Brāhmaṇas are ordained by the creator to receive the gifts of all kinds and none else has got this right. 1

According to some learned scholars the receiving of gifts is not at all prohibited since if it is a total prohibition the very concept of giving gifts will come to an end. 2

There should not be an end to the institution of giving gifts and an opportunity to the transfer of money from the wealthy to the poor in a virtuous manner. Further there are prescriptions for giving gift as acts of expiation according to the sage. 3

Taking into consideration the acceptance of unholy and tainted gifts, sage Bhārgava has ordained a series of gifts which calls for expiation in a proper order which shall be narrated here. 4

A householder who scrupulously performs his duties becomes eligible to receive the gifts and none else; such a gift is termed *Aghamarṣana* (= destroying sins, literally 'sin-effacing'). 5

In the month of *Caitra* (lunar month in which the full-moon stands in the constellation *Citrā*, corresponding to March-April) on the first of the white half (of the fortnight) one should give away umbrellas to *Brāhmaṇin* householders as an expiation of receiving tainted gifts. 6

In the month of *Vaiśākha* (the second lunar month corresponding to April-May) one should gift away chappals and silken garments; and in the month of *Śukra* (*Jyeṣṭha*, lunar month in which the full-moon stands in the constellation corresponding to May-June) mats of grass and fans (made of palmyra leaves etc.) should be given as gifts. 7

In the month of *Śuci* (*Āṣāḍha*, corresponding to June and July), the things to be given away as gifts are water-pot, curd, milk, ghee, green peas, wheat and grains. 8

In the month of *Śrāvāṇa* (the lunar month corresponding to July-August) gifts to be given are a pair of fresh garments, sesamum and ghee and food to *Brahmacārin* prepared in milk to his liking. 9

In the month of *Proṣṭhapada* (*Bhādrapada*, lunar month corresponding to August-September) the gift to be presented are two silver replicas of fish while in the month of *Āśvina* (the lunar month corresponding to September-October, when the moon is near the constellation *Aśvini*) one should give away replicas of horse made of gold or silver. 10

In the month of *Kārtika* (the month in which the full-moon is near the *Kṛittikā* or pleiades, corresponding to October-November), the gifts to be given are red cow, and white goat. The cow should be along with a calf while the goat should be of a high variety. 11

In the month of *Mārgasīrṣa* (corresponding to November-December) in which the full-moon is in the constellation of *Mṛgaśiras*, the gifts to be given away are skin of spotted antelope to five *Brahmacārins* or three ascetics. 12

In the month of *Pausa* (lunar month in which moon is in the *Puṣya* asterism, corresponding to December-January) the gifts to be presented are sesamum and lotus flowers, while in the month of *Māgha* (corresponding to January-February) the gifts are girdle of silver and a staff made of silver to a *Brahmacārin* or one made from the branch of the *Palāśa* tree. 13

In the month of *Phālguna* (corresponding to February-March) one should give away as gift a cow with two faces and six feet in the absence of which such a cow made of gold or silver. 14

Thus Bhārgava has ordained that the householder should give twelve kinds of gift on the first day of each month (as expiations). 15

A householder who gives away these gifts will be relieved off the sin caused by the acceptance of improper gifts. Each of such gifts would be able to destroy the sin one by one or in toto. 16

These are capable of destroying the sin of receiving improper gifts. Other acts of expiation are *Prāṇāyāma* or the chanting of *Gāyatrī* mantras a thousand times. 17

The chant of *Śrīrudra* for three days would purify *Śūdra* householder who accepts an improper gift. He should fast on the day of receiving the gift. 18

These are prescribed for *Snātakas* (celibates) by sages like Bhrgu, Kaśyapa and Kāśyapa, but the first authority holds that these are equally applicable to all householders. 19

Bhārgava holds that there could be exceptions at times. Following these rules the householder belonging to the *Brāhmaṇa* caste sheds away the sins accrued by the acceptance of improper gifts and shines forth like blazing fire. 20

Thus the fourth quarter of the fifth chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śāṅkara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.

Fifth chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER SIX

QUARTER-1

[Five accidental killings and five expiatory oblations]

A householder has to be aware of the *Pañcasūnā* - the five things in a house by which animal life may be accidentally destroyed - which are the fire place, slab for grinding condiments, broom, pestle and mortar and water-pot. To ward off the sin caused by these one should perform every day the five sacrifices. 1

Devayajña, *Bhūtayajña* and *Pitṛyajña* the three to which *Brahmayajña* and *Nṛyajña* are added to make it five altogether. 2

Here the *Devayajña* (= sacrifices to god) means offerings in the sacred fire; *Bhūtayajña* (= sacrifices to all created beings) is giving of oblation, *Pitṛyajña* (= sacrifices to manes) is offering of oblation to manes and *Brahmayajña* stands for teaching and reciting of Vedas. 3

Nṛyajña (= the acclaim of people) consists of pleasing the guests, with these five-fold expiations the householder should destroy the sins every day accrued by the accidental killings of beings. 4

[Giving and receiving of gifts by the householders]

The *Brahmacārin*, the *Vanastha* (= the forester) and *Yati* (= sannyāsin) - the three category of people depend on the householder for their smooth livelihood and profession (like the performance of vows). 5

What is given by the householder to the *Brahmacārin* with devotion is repaid thousand times after the expiry of one's worldly life. 6

He who gives sixteen mouthfuls of food prepared by *Nivāra* (wild rice) and mixed with ghee to a forest-dweller would transform into the digits of the moon after his death (or will be able to drink nectar after his death). 7

Who could measure the merit accrued by giving water or flower offered to an ascetic by a householder. 8

A householder performs sacrificial rites everyday and thus he is engaged in a penance. As such he is the creator of all and hence a householder is to be praised. 9

As the husband is the lord of the wife and as *Brāhmaṇins* are the preceptors of the people in general, the guests are the masters of the householders. 10

A chaste lady would not attain heaven by different kinds of vows, fasts and such other deeds, but only by serving her husband well. 11

A *Brahmacārin* would not ascend the heaven by religious baths, sacrifices in fire and learning of Vedas, but only by serving on his preceptor. 12

A *Vanastha* (= dweller in a forest) would not ascend heaven by various religious baths and sacrifices on fire, but only by abstaining from taking food. 13

A *Sannyāsin* would not attain his goal by simply living on alms, taking to the vow of silence or living in a secluded place, but only by abstaining from sexual union. 14

A householder does not attain heaven not by performing sacrifices, not by preserving sacrificial fire, but only by serving on the guests. 15

Hence a man should always be alert on serving the guests so that the world would not despise him and he would not have to proceed to the hell. 16

By pleasing a guest with food and shelter for sleep one would save oneself from the hell of complete darkness and as such one would prove to be a saviour. 17

A householder should offer the sacrifice called *Agnihotra* during morning and evening with diligence according to prescription and performing the sacrifices on the days of lunar conjunctions. 18

A householder may perform the sacrifice called *Paśubandha* (= an animal sacrifice) or take recourse to *Cāturmāṣya* (= a vow lasting for four months). One should eat the meals prepared using the rice which is three years old and drink the *Soma* juice (prepared from the *Soma* plant) according to rules. 19

A householder should not desire for anything from a *Śūdra*, though he may give to the former his requirements. He should perform the *Vaiśvānara* sacrifice if he has got the means for it and in case he is unable to do so, he may use others. 20

By helping members of his own caste, he may accept remuneration from them. In Kerala, *Kṣatriyas* and *Vaiśyas* are not enjoined to perform such sacrifices. 21

A householder should not serve on a low-caste person even in contingency since it is despicable. With exception to this one may follow some other profession and make money. 22

The wealth comes and goes like a stream and it is not stationary anywhere; sometimes by fault it decreases and some times it increases. 23

The wise one should not give away his profession for the sake of wealth, for one may procure wealth after sometime, but not the job already lost. 24

Mother and father who are old in age, chaste wife and the son in his childhood need protection and for their sake one may have to make adjustment with his profession. 25

A householder has to look after the welfare of elders like mother, father, chaste wife, son in his childhood, preceptor and a *Brāhmaṇin* who has approached him for help. This is the view of Bhārgava. 26

Even if one is poor, one should not be miserly in one's action in the case of a preceptor. So also in the case of *Brāhmaṇin*, though in the case of others one may impose restriction. 27

If there is anything left in one's house for one's own maintenance one should please the preceptor and a *Brāhmaṇin* by spending a part of that wealth. 28

To give away a maiden, one should collect enough wealth from any source that one comes across; but one should not collect more than what is needed. 29

A maiden should be given away in marriage before she attains puberty at any cost; otherwise a householder is deemed to have destroyed the child in the womb inviting calumny. 30

One should give dowry with pleasure as is demanded, or one may give according to one's resources if one could not meet what is demanded. 31

After protecting the maiden well, one should marry her away giving dowry. If one could manage, the maiden should not be permitted to remain in the house after attaining puberty. 32

In matters such as the marriage of a maiden, giving of food and imparting knowledge there is no direct or indirect instruction of ordinance. 33

Hence the father should strive for the early marriage of the daughter without having to put up with difficulties. 34

People of low character should be treated well, otherwise they would not mind you and give respect to you. A wise one should manage to keep them at a distance after having secured their confidence. 35

People of the middle type may be kept by one's side even at the first sight. Otherwise they are apt to incur displeasure. They would be happy to be in one's confidence. 36

One should bestow confidence in good people sharing with them one's thoughts. They are likely to give even their life for the sake of friendship because of their mild nature. 37

Thus low, middle and good people may be taken into confidence by employing suitable means befitting their comparative nature like low, middle and noble. 38

These are the means to be employed by weak people and these could accomplish everything. Thus one should accomplish one's desires at the proper time by the proper means. 39

Thus the first quarter of the sixth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Virtues of having a son]

Having increased his wealth by proper means, a householder should not omit his duties which are enjoined to him expressly or by implication. 1

He should perform according to rules the rites prescribed by Śruti and Smṛti, by which he would be enjoying the benefit in this world and would reach heaven after his death. 2

The couple should enjoy this *Trivarga* (*Dharma*, *Artha* and *Kāmā*) without any difference of opinion almost every day and night. 3

There is no separate means for the ladies to attain the *Trivargas* other than those prescribed for the husband expressly or by implication. 4

A housewife should always be obedient and subservient to the husband and it is said in books of virtues that a husband is like a god to a chaste woman. 5

Even if there is a slight misunderstanding she should avoid it with effort and along with her husband should desire for a son of noble qualities. 6

For a couple without a son there is no world without blemish, since such a couple would be looked down upon by the departed manes as they have failed to provide a heir to supply *Pinda* (= oblation of rice) and *udaka* (= water given along with the rice balls to the manes). 7

Even five or ten men could not satiate the carnal desires of a woman, hence to have two or more wives at the same time would attract sin. 8

There is no harm in a householder marrying a second time if his first wife fails to produce a child - a fact which needs to be accepted. 9

When she too (the second one) fails to deliver a child, one could contract a third marriage but while these three are alive no further marriage is permitted. 10

When the birth of a child is almost ascertained as impossible in these three wives, one should realise that one's own youth is over. 11

In that situation a householder should cause his younger brother to contract a marriage. When all these means prove fruitless he may adopt a son. 12

Tradition ordains that one should die only after seeing the face of a progeny who is to offer oblations, and as far as Brāhmaṇins are concerned the son is the foremost authority to offer oblation (to the departed). 13

A householder, especially belonging to the caste of Brāhmaṇin should part with his life-breath after looking at the face of his son with the hope of getting oblations after death. 14

A Brāhmaṇin who leaves his body at the time of his death after a worldly life enjoying the company his son, family etc., is to reach the hell called Raurava which is terrible in nature, and at that time who else is there to give him succour other than his own son? 15

By the offering of carefully consecrated obsequial oblation, and offering to the manes as well as domestic rituals to the departed ones like the *Aṣṭākāśrāddha* (= oblation given to the manes in the eighth day after the full-moon); 16

And *Pinda* (= rice ball in a funeral ceremony) given in the holy temples (famous for such ceremonies), pilgrimage to holy spots undertaken by the progenies in addition to gifts and oblations, help the departed one to leave his position as a mane and to reach the ultimate stage (= a soul that has reached deliverance). 17

Hence a son is to be caressed both in this world and hereafter and naturally at the time of death one should bless the son calling him aside with remarks such as "oh child may you live long, have a long life" etc. 18

Thus privately or openly compassionate and coaxing words should be pronounced at the time of death, hearing which like drinking nectar the manes feel satiated. 19

He also departs from the world seeing the (face of) supplier of the libation of water, feels gratified and hence a son is of great value. 20

Hence one without an issue of his own should adopt a son properly without wasting any further time, for the lifespan is uncertain. 21

The word 'putra' is etymologically derived as the one who saves from the hell called "pum" (= preserving from the hell called 'put') and this applies to a natural son (*Aurasā* = produced from the breast, born of oneself, legitimate) while the adopted one becomes a son due to the merit of the *Mantra*. 22

[Adoption in the matrilineal system]

For those to whom the nephews are enjoined to perform the funeral rites (the offer of libation and rice ball) they themselves should be aware of the situation and act properly to adopt an heir at the proper time. 23

They should adopt a nephew as in the case of the adoption of a son by others; for even though it will not help to continue the line, it will ensure the offer of libations after one's death. 24

For women marriage is the only ceremony using *Mantras*, though some use *Mantras* in the case of adoption also. 25

In case a lady is adopted for perpetuating the lineage, her brother also should be adopted along with her, ordains Bhārgava. 26

But when a nephew is already available the adoption of a lady to keep the lineage is permitted. 27

Both of them the nephew and the adopted girl would be considered as brother and sister by law (even though they do not have this relationship by birth). In such cases the rule called '*Niṣāda-sthāpati*' (the chief of *Niṣāda*) a *Niṣāda* by birth could very well become a *Sthāpati* (sculptor by profession or expertise) could not be accepted since it is against *Smṛti*-tradition. 28

There is no brotherhood really though by action they are deemed to be so (brother and sister). Hence it is better to adopt a boy with his own sister (born of the same parents) and not another girl. 29

A brother with his older sister is the best pair to be adopted since the importance is attached to the mother (in the matrilineal system) of the two. 30

According some other view since the adoption of a son is important there is no harm in adopting a girl born to a different parent, if so desired. 31

But this is certainly an inferior adoption than the one mentioned earlier (= adoption of a brother and sister of the same parents). Adoption of a married but not yet delivered girl is of an inferior class. 32

This is of a lower priority, but the adoption of a girl already delivered is considered as the lowest kind for all. 33

In all cases of adoption mentioned here the use of *mantras* is needed only in the case of a boy and there is no need for separate use of *mantras* for ladies (since it goes without saying). 34

A lamp placed on a street haunted by thieves and threatened by rain and wind is of no use in spite of its providing some light. 35

On the other hand a lamp placed atop a mansion on the roadside is useful to shed light on the road (without the fear of being extinguished) providing an extra benefit. 36

Similar is the benefit of adopting a nephew and one's heir-apparent. Adoption with the use of *mantra* performed on a nephew is equally beneficial to the adopted girl also. For women the use of *mantras* is only for a marriage ceremony. 37

What is prescribed for the male may very well apply to females also and hence a male should be adopted primarily and a female to ensure the lineage. 38

According to Bhārgava these rules may be applied as and when they are feasible. When there is one's own nephew he may alone be taken for adoption. 39

In case a female is not adopted, the nephew without a sister of his own could not ensure the progression of family. When a female who has already delivered is considered for adoption, her previous children too may be adopted. 40

If there is no male child for such a woman, another male should be considered for adoption along with her. 41

(Among matrilineal inheritors) those having sacred thread the brother alone is enjoined to perform rites for marriage ceremonies and not the older like father etc. 42

In marriage ceremony they have to pronounce suitable *mantras* for *Pani-grahāṇa* (holding the hand in marriage) sacred rites like going around the fire, *Lājahoma* (offering of fried rice into the kindled fire) and *Aśmādhī-ropāṇa* (putting the foot of the bride on a stone by the groom as a part of the marriage ceremony). 43

(*Mantra* is used) also for *Saptapadī* (the seven steps of a marriage - the bride and bridegroom walk together seven steps after which the marriage becomes irrevocable); *Śīrsasamyoga* (touching together of the heads of the bride and bridegroom); *Mukhadarśana* (mutual looking at the face by the couple); *Dhruvarksadarśana* (looking at the star *Dhruva*, the polar star) and *Vāgvisarga* (statement that the girl is accepted by the family). 44

These rites mentioned above require the use of *mantra* and the rest is to be performed without the use of *mantras*. The girl is to be given in adoption along with her brother as far as the *Sūtrins* (those possessing the sacred thread) of the matrilineal system are concerned. 45

Unless the brother also is adopted along with the lady the very purpose of the adoption is defeated. And in such cases expiations (as prescribed), are to be ascertained from the authorities. 46

According to Bhārgava, the girl belongs to the same family where she is born and in whose marriage the *Lājahoma* (offering of fried rice in fire) should be along with *mantras*. 47

In giving away such a girl or receiving a girl in marriage the requirement of the brother is a must, lest the whole ceremony is to be performed again since the earlier one is nullified. 48

A girl not given away or received in marriage without proper authority has no relation with the householder (in the matrilineal system) since it is deemed to be without sanction of custom. 49

A child born thus as a result of improper marriage would not be considered as a nephew and he has no right to offer oblation to the manes. Hence the presence of a brother for the woman at the time of marriage is essential. 50

This presence of the man (brother) is based on the use of *Mantras*. Hence at the time of making an adoption the condition of taking a male also should be insisted. 51

A boy taken for adoption would not be the cause of ensuring the lineage since if there is a girl in the family her own progeny is considered as the scion of the family. 52

Since such a boy (born of a girl in the family) has the right to offer oblation to manes, the male adopted has no such right. Further such a person is taken for adoption without the use of *mantras*, but only to the accompaniment of certain rites. 53

The adoption of the male along with the girl is without the use of *mantras* according to the wise. Here again the adoption and reception of the girl alone are the best options. 54

The adoption of a married girl is only of secondary importance while the one with children is of least preference. But there are separate rules for adopting a girl who has already got children of her own. 55

In this process involving the use of *mantras* the reason for the same is not enunciated. There is none to break the relation for the adopted son, the householder who adopts and both. 56

A mother who is given away in adoption acquires a new relationship with the one who adopts. She becomes eligible for adoption only because of the particular ceremony for adoption. 57

Such a girl is given away in adoption by her elder brother, mother or uncle and their relation could not be terminated nor would it be possible to terminate the relation of her own sons with her. 58

As in the case of one in one's own house the sons of the woman given in adoption acquire prominence since they are taken in adoption along with the mother. 59

As they were before the adoption they continue to be so even after the adoption of their mother. The process of adoption that caused in later would not stand in the way of their real relation (with mother). 60

By virtue of the woman being given in adoption with children, the relationship as mother and son would remain as such and there is no doubt about it. 61

If the relationship between the mother and son is not strong as before she alone is responsible for that, for she may feel that she is no more a mother in its fullest sense. 62

Only after establishing what needs to be established, one could consider the relative position of motherhood before the adoption and after the adoption. Hence she is to consider the legality of her adoption and nothing else. 63

What consideration she would receive from her own family which gave her in adoption, that includes the consideration for the son also since he too is given along with her. 64

Hence there is no reason to assign the position of adoption for the relationship that is existing. Issues of a girl naturally follow their mother by virtue of custom and tradition. 65

The reason behind this position is the act of adoption that is contemplated. Hence when a lady who has already children before the adoption is to be given away along with her children. 66

For those people who have no procedure involving *mantras* there is no hard and fast rule regarding the adoption of a male. But for those having proceedings with *mantras* what is said above in detail naturally follow. 67

Thus the second quarter of the sixth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[Adoption in the patrilineal system]

A Brāhmaṇa should not give away in adoption his eldest son to another and

if at all one is prepared to do so due to avarice he should not be accepted. 1

When such a son is born his family and departed manes feel happy that someone is there to offer libation of water and to continue the lineage. 2

They (the manes) further cherish the hope that we shall feel satiated by his son and grandson and receive the *abhyudaya-śrāddha* (libation of water and rice balls offered to manes), and hence could not be given away. 3

This being the case how could one give in adoption one's eldest son to invite curse from the manes and how could the recipient accept him. For those who do not have to offer libations to manes and expect their benevolence (there would not be any peace of mind). 4

The prosperity in this world as well as in the other could not be attained without a son and hence one who has got only one son could not give away him in adoption to another. 5

Even if such a son is presented for adoption a wise one should reject the offer with self-restraint; for how could one take the flesh from the heart of another to nourish one's own body. 6

A Brāhmaṇa householder should take in adoption only a boy with the relationship presented earlier on the occasion of the discussion on the suitability for marriage. 7

This is the proper perspective and all others could be resorted to only in contingency. A daughter's son and a nephew could not perform duties of a proper son. 8

Even in utmost contingency a nephew should not be treated as a son. These are the general rules as regards Brāhmaṇins in such matters. 9

The rules and regulations to receive a grandson by one's own daughter in adoption would be explained later. Sons are of three types: *kṣetraja* (the offspring of a wife by a kinsman duly appointed to raise up issue to the husband); *kṛtrīma* (an artificial or adopted son) and *svayamdatta* (a grown up son adopted without the consent of his natural parents). 10

These three types of sons are prohibited by sage from performing the duties of a son as regards the Brāhmaṇa. *Sahoḍha* (son of a woman pregnant at the time of marriage ceremony) is treated as one's own son. 11

He is just like a son born to a woman after entering into marital relations with her. While *Aurasa* (one's own legitimate son and *Sahodha*, born to the pregnant lady adopted) are alive none else could be adopted without rites. 12

Even if so received in adoption, he could not be treated as a son having been adopted without sanction. In this there are three parties; viz. the one who receives the boy in adoption, one who gives away the boy for adoption and the boy himself. 13

According to *Smṛti* rules these three persons could not take part in any function or sit together in a row without an act of expiation. When it is ascertained that a son is not likely to be born in one's wives (one prepares for an adoption). 14

If a legitimate son is born after taking another boy by adoption the first one even if he is older by age should be considered theoretically as younger in the case of *Brāhmaṇas*. 15

The legitimate son born later is deemed to be the eldest (though born after the adoption) and this is what the customs prescribe. If the children of the first wife are dead a second marriage may be contracted though the first wife is alive. 16

And if no child is born even in the second wife one shall marry a third time to beget issues. One should carefully avoid the causes that lead to the destruction of the issues. 17

One should understand or realise the various deeds prescribed by tradition and perform them without any violation of rules. Expiations are to be done for the slightest omission. 18

Eviction of a family from the land already given to them as gift, disregarding their protest in the form of wailing is one of the causes for the loss of issues in a household. 19

A *Brāhmaṇa* husband who knows that his wife is pregnant should not perform bathing at sea, shaving off the head and funeral rites like carrying the corpse (to the burial ground). 20

Knowing about the pregnancy of wife, one should not take an oil bath, and especially such a person should not even touch the vessel containing oil on Thursdays. 21

Such a person should not eat food given as oblation to manes by someone else even though he is invited properly, and should not sleep covering the body with a pair of fresh clothes. 22

One should not copulate with a pregnant woman and extinguish a burning lamp. Further one should not wear *Pavitra* (ring of *Kuśa*), *Upavīta* (the sacred thread) and *Mekhalā* (a girdle of *darbha* grass). 23

The lady in the household during her pregnancy should not perform such deeds. She should not melt butter and cut *Kuśmāṇḍa* (a pumpkin gourd) into two. 24

She should not peep into a well (to see water) and sleep in the evening. Further such a woman should not untie the braided hair and lie down on her back. 25

After the meals she should not look at the sun before washing her hands and without the company of her husband should not look at the moon, *Vasiṣṭha* and *Arundhatī* (conceived as his consort). 26

Those householders who thus behave properly according to customs towards their wife with utmost care would face no difficulties in life. 27

Here I have enumerated their duties in a succinct manner, and for details one would have to refer to the law books of *Bhārgava*. 28

The couple who live according to these customs till delivery following carefully the entire duties enjoined to them would not be at fault. 29

Those who do not care for these or those who break them wilfully may not sometime meet with calamities, but surely they would have to perform expiation in the world hereafter. 30

Thus the third quarter of the sixth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[Bringing up the child]

The child should always be protected from evil spirit by using the services of sorcerers from time to time who could destroy the trouble even from the source. 1

A round golden ring, a *Rudrākṣa* berry and another ring using the nail of a leopard should be put on his neck (to protect from evils) using a thread (*Rudrākṣa* = *Elaeocarpus Ganitrus* or its berry). 2

The privities of the child should be covered using banana leaves and similar other things since before the initiation of sacred thread it is improper to wear a *kaupīna* made of cloth. 3

Every month on the star of his birth lord *Śiva* may be propitiated with *Rudrābhiseka*, *Bilva* (= *Aegle Marmelos*) garlands and *Durvāhavana* (= offering of panic grass in fire as oblation). 4

Ādityasevā (= worship of the sun by prostration) and other auspicious things ensuring long life should be performed and he should be protected from incidental danger like falling down etc., since he could not protect himself (at this tender age). 5

He should not be made to sleep in thick darkness or in a secluded place on no account and should be fed with limited quantity of sweet, agreeable, pure and fresh items of food. 6

At the time of his feeding no hungry person should be permitted to watch his food. He should be nurtured by giving him pleasing toys to provide distraction to his mind. 7

Fairy tales of horror and having evil spirits as characters should not be narrated to him since they may frighten him. On the other hand he should be told pleasing anecdotes every day. 8

By his pleasing incoherent sweet sounds, and limbs smeared with dust and gentle smiles having occupied the lap he generates pleasure. 9

Thus the day of the householder would pass like the days of festivals. It is said that the child should be treated like a king upto his fifth year and up to his tenth year he should be attended to like a servant (obeying the master). 10

Once the boy attains the age of sixteen he should be treated as friend. Just as the wise one conducts himself avoiding improper deeds, the boy should be protected. 11

One should protect his son without showing much effort for a wild fire engulfs the shoots of bamboo (in a trice). 12

Similarly an evil son fallen into bad ways is apt to destroy the entire family even though he is born in a good family. 13

Nobody could straighten up such a boy as one could not straighten the crooked poles of a palanquin. Hence one should not neglect the child once it is noted that his inclination is to fall into bad ways. 14

Everything that has gained strength is difficult to be destroyed or repaired. The river of inclination flows through good and bad ways alike. 15

Knowing this well, one should direct him through righteous path so as to ensure purity to both the lineages (of father and mother). 16

Similarly by a bad son ill-repute would surely result without any doubt. The boy undoubtedly becomes a *dvija* (= twice-born by purificatory rites). 17

By these purificatory rites the fault due to the seed (or semen) as well as *garbha* (= pregnancy) stands terminated. A mirror is purified by rubbing away the dust, oil and other impurities. 18

Further the touch of flames would make it (the mirror) useless having lost its very shape. Hence sons should be protected from all bad influences. 19

A householder as well as his wife should be vigilant and should watch the behaviour of the son up to his eighth year as to what he is doing. 20

The parents reap the consequences of all such activities of the boy since it is they who put him on the righteous path. 21

As in the case of the son, the daughter also should be nurtured with strenuous efforts. One should always bestow care upon the house, sacrificial fire, wealth, housewife, sons and daughters. 22

He alone is an ideal householder who protects these in addition to himself leading a virtuous life, and none else. 23

[Thus the fourth quarter of the sixth chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śāṅkara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

Sixth chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER SEVEN

QUARTER-1

[Protection of the household property]

A *Brāhmin* should never give land or allow people of the lower caste to build a hut for residential purposes within his compound. 1

A householder should not permit one who kills a cow, killer of a *Brāhmin*, sinner, tribals, excommunicated *Brāhmin* ladies etc., to enter his premises. 2

One should not engage a killer of cows to protect one's plot and unless in an exigency a low caste man should not be engaged for fencing the compound wall. 3

The seed of a wild palm tree should not be sown near the house and those that accidentally grow may be cut, but not be permitted to flourish. 4

Permission should not be given by the householder for tapping liquor from them and in case it is done expiatory rites are necessitated. 5

One should plant and nourish creepers and those which are needed for sacrificial purposes and wells and ponds which are in dilapidated condition should be dried up. 6

Water untouched and not drained for three days should not remain in one's compound, for the gods refuse to accept the offering given from such a locality (*Vaṣaṭ* = an exclamation used on making an oblation to a deity; e.g. *Indrāya vaṣaṭ* here dative case is needed). 7

When a pond becomes dirty and beyond use in due course one should cover it with some articles like mat till it is drained out at the earliest opportunity. 8

One should not permit a *Sūdra* to build his house near one's tank and if there is already a house, permission should not be given to put up a ghat directly from such a house enabling him to draw water freely. 9

If such a ghat is permitted to be put up by a Śūdra into the tank located in the house plot of a Brāhmaṇa, it becomes polluted. 10

A householder should not permit a Śūdra lady in her periods to enter the quadrangle of the house and a Śūdra male who has just attended a funeral rite. 11

This applies to other Saundikas (those who prepare liquor) as well; but in the case of a washerman, if the quadrangle is a large one, permission is implied to enable them to place the laundered clothes. 12

On other occasions even the launderer should remain at a distance and only in the company of a Śūdra he could touch the Brāhmaṇin's house. 13

Lower caste people should not be permitted to enter the (Agnyagāra, place for keeping the sacred fire) with exception to a Śūdra who is to help the Brāhmaṇins in his rituals. But a carpenter with his tools shall enter the house as occasion demands. 14

Also a metal worker and his assistant carrying tools may enter the house in addition to a mason with his chipping tools and measuring cords. 15

Generally no member of the lower caste should be permitted to enter the house (of Brāhmaṇin), except those who come along with a carpenter. 16

People of other caste as well as Śūdras may be admitted into the house if there is any specific purpose, but they should not touch the bedsheets and other articles. 17

The householder should lead such people everywhere and see that they go out in time. If somebody other than a relative takes part in a meal they should be made to wash the plates. 18

If they happen to leave particles of food inside the Catussālā (a structure with halls on four sides around a central courtyard) they should be made to clean it and smear the spot with diluted cow-dung. 19

The maid servants of the house may also be employed for cleaning up by taking away the vessels, or one with a clean hand may also be engaged for this purpose. 20

Before the householder finally gets up, his own servants may take the vessels for the purpose of cleaning. Except for a Brāhmaṇin nobody should

wash the hands and gargle the mouth with water and drench the inner courtyard with that water. 21

In addition to this the water used for washing the feet also should not be splashed inside the courtyard. Except in the case of a Brāhmaṇin the courtyard should not be drenched with these three items of water (used for washing the hands, gargling the mouth and cleaning the feet). 22

Another three items like urine, excrement and spit of one and all should not be discharged into the inner courtyard. The vessel in which food items are served should be properly cleaned up before storing them inside the house. 23

In both the junctures of the day (i.e. morning and evening) and after the night meal (supper) as well as at day-break and nightfall the room needs to be cleaned and purified by sprinkling water diluted with cowdung. Not only the inside of the house, but also the forecourt need to be dusted using broom and sprinkled with water mixed with cowdung. 24

While the house itself is to be dusted twice a day, the forecourt needs to be swept in the morning only. Wicks of lamp made of spinning three threads together should be lit up and placed at the four quarters and their intermediate spots of the inner courtyard towards the evening. 25

These wicks should be drenched with ghee before lighting them and placed at these spots by the housewife after cleaning herself by the proper means. 26

This is to please the deities which provide issues to the family without breaking the lineage. The housewife should control her speech and remain calm and collected. Water, fire, grains and white rice (should not be exhausted during night). 27

Along with curd these five together should not be permitted to be exhausted at night (so that there won't be any need to borrow them during night-time) on the day of birth, and on the days of Bhauma (Tuesday) a householder should not change the place of his sleep. 28

On these days it is not proper to change the place of sleep and move to another spot for sleeping purpose. (Inside a Brāhmaṇin's house) no member of the Kṣatriya caste should be permitted to discharge his semen (in copulation with women). 29

A Śūdra lady may be permitted to live in an outhouse of the compound if her services are needed by the householder. I shall later deal with the expiation needed if a burglar happens to enter the house. That should be done according to customs and hence it is only hinted at. 30

Thus the first quarter of the seventh chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Protection of the domestic fire]

Protection of the *Vaitānikāgni* (= the three sacred fires) should be ascertained from Vedic injunctions. Here I shall deal with the protection of the *Gṛhyāgni* (= the domestic fire which a householder should keep throughout his life burning). 1

The fire kindled at the time of marriage is to be kept without getting extinguished and it should not get mixed up with other fires and as such involves great effort. 2

The wise one should always protect the fire from extinction caused by the impediments which are very meagre, normal and serious as well as very serious in terms of comparison. 3

Agnirakṣā (the protection of the sacred fire) involves its preservation from the contacts of various animals such as:- quadrupeds except goat and horse, and smelt by *ākhubhoji* (rat-eater, cat) left-overs of peacocks and other birds. 4

Oblation offered for other manes or deities; or food containing *sigru* (*Moringa Pterygosperma*); *grījana* (a kind of onion or garlic); touched by *Nakuli* (a female ichneumon); fallen on the earth; or having got contact with bruise; 5

made contact with the drop from the wound, or trodden purposefully, touched by crooked nails and left-over in a dirty place. 6

Oblation prepared on the previous day and gobbled by animals (which are not quadrupeds) contaminated by *likṣā* (louse), *makṣikā* (fly) and *maśaka* (mosquito). 7

Oblation prepared from ant-infected rice, and milk obtained from *Uṣṭrikā* (a female camel), *badavā* (a female horse), *arvāṇi* (a bawd), and *meṣa* (a sheep). 8

Milk procured from a woman and a cow who have lost the offspring; remains of milk sucked by another issue and the milk of a cow in pollution. 9

Ghee or curd not baked in fire or things thrown by a crow, *silindhra* (mushroom), *hingu* (*Asa Foetida*) and *nirmālyā* (offerings to the deities made on the previous day). These are the causes of pollution for the fire. 10

A householder should save the domestic fire from these lesser types of things which pollute a fire and if by some reason such pollution occurs he should resort to expiatory rites. 11

Other things which cause pollution to the domestic fire include, *ghṛtācikā* (the sacrificial ladle with which the ghee is taken up, poured out), *Vamrī* (little ant), *makṣikā* (a fly, bee), *nilamakṣikā* (a kind of blue fly or bee), *yūkā* (louse) swarming in bedsheets and hair and *ghuṇā* (a particular worm). 12

Also similar insects and flies that try swarm the rice ball, firebrand, tiny thorns, *Vātūla* (gale) and *makkuna* (*makvaṇa*, a bug). 13

Sweat oozing from a cloth that is worn, saliva, argument made out of context of learning, and crossing over by foot (are also pollutants of sacred fire). 14

Also the excrements of rats, contact with mouse etc., cause pollution and the sacred fire should be protected from these and any lapse will invite expiatory rites. 15

But tears, discharges from ears, nose, eyes, nails contact with the excrements of cats and dead insects do not cause pollution (to fire). 16

Similar is the case with the left-overs of *Brāhmaṇas* coming into contact with the sacrificial pit since they do not cause pollution as far as a householder is concerned. 17

If by any chance there occurs any pollution accidentally or by omission expiation as described in the section dealing with it should be carried out. 18

(Fire is to be protected from) a Śūdra who cooks dry or fresh fruit mixed with water along with oil and the left-overs there in. 19

Food cooked in water which is not sour, and that which has been prepared overnight should not be permitted to be put into the sacrificial pit to pollute the fire. 20

There again an omission in this necessitates expiation. Further the contact with jackals, frogs, hogs and cocks causes pollution. 21

In case a monkey happens to touch the fire it causes damage to the house, proper expiatory rites are needed. 22

So also the touch of a dead Śūdra and the contact with the house of a *Candāla* or one who is of a lower caste due to some reason, expiation is needed. 23

Other pollutants include *sūtikā* (woman recent fly delivered), *dāhaka* (the torcher of a cremation ground), *udakī* (one who is in her periods), *khara* (an ass), blood, flesh, bone, excrements, urine, semen and marrow of bone. 24

Fire is to be protected also from the touch of foul smelling water so that it is not extinguished and in case of loss *Shālpāka* may be performed as expiation. 25

The rite called *Pavamānesti* has to be performed in case of pollution caused by the touch of corpse, or pollution due to delivery. Further a householder should protect the domestic fire from strangers. 26

Thus the second quarter of the seventh chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[Pollution of fire]

A Śūdra, a low caste man and a washerman should remain six feet away from the sacred fire so as not to pollute it. But if the Śūdra is a household servant assisting the master, he may remain at a distance of three feet. 1

A woman in her periods should remain twelve feet away, a newly delivered lady at a distance of eighteen feet. 2

One who has burnt a corpse should keep a distance of twenty four feet. A carpenter, a metal worker, a goldsmith and a worker on bell-metal should remain double the distance mentioned earlier (= 48 feet). 3

A stone worker and trader of liquor should keep the same distance as above (= 48 feet). An outcaste, a low caste and a hunter should stand at a distance of thirty six feet away (from the fire). (*Śvapaca* = one who cooks dogs; a man of outcaste tribe; *Pulkasa* = of a despised mixed tribe; *Vyādha* = one who pierces or wounds, a hunter). 4

Others of low caste not mentioned here should keep away sixty four feet, according to some authorities and they maintain that the outcastes in general should follow this rule. 5

The rules regarding the distance is applicable to these castes with regard to the proximity of *Brāhmaṇin* and not specifically to the domestic fire alone. 6

Those who do not follow the rules regarding pollution should not touch the domestic fire and in such a situation should perform expiation. 7

By contact with a polluted *Brāhmaṇin* who has to bathe himself for purification, the fire gets polluted and should always be kept with scrupulous care. 8

The contact of a Śūdra, though he is not polluted by any action, itself necessitates the purification of the domestic fire and in the event, it needs expiatory rites. 9

Even though a *Brāhmaṇin* by birth, those who have the right to study the Vedas, should not be allowed to have contact with the sacred fire, since it requires expiations. 10

A *Brāhmaṇin* before his investiture with the sacred thread should not touch the fire since it will cause pollution. Those who take the fire in some vessel for transportation also cause pollution. 11

In transporting the fire by a country boat the fire should be put in a vessel which itself should be kept inside two other larger vessels so that a Śūdra can steer the canoe without causing pollution. 12

Sacred fire will cease to be so in case it is touched by one who is in a period of pollution (caused by the death of relative etc.), in case that person is not separated from the family taking his share. But in the case of the one belonging to the second category, the fire can be restored by expiatory rites. 13

Later the expiation for the touch of a newly delivered woman will be explained. One who has excreted should not touch the fire before he purifies himself by washing his private parts. 14

Hence fire should be saved from such people as also from children for which there are rites of expiation. A three-year-old boy gets polluted by the touch of a woman in her periods. 15

In case such a boy touches the fire as also one who is five-year-old comes into contact with sacred fire, the purity is lost. 16

The contact of the sacred fire with a Śūdra lady also destroys purity. In case the touch is of a child, expiation is enough to restore the purity. 17

Since a maiden is eligible for meditation and offering oblation, her touch with the fire is not prohibited. Here I have given only a brief account of the causes of pollution to sacred fire. 18

In the section for expiatory rites these will be discussed with their relative merits. Some of these pollutions could be removed by the offering of samit in the fire; and some others by pouring ladleful of ghee. 19

According another view both these may not be enough, but only a *Pūrṇāhuti* - a complete ritual of offering of oblation in fire, is needed in this connection. Yet others hold the view that the pollution could be removed only by performing *Pavamāna* sacrifice and *Sthālipāka* rites. 20

Some are of the view that the above mentioned two rites (*Pavamāna* and *Sthālipāka*) alone are capable of purifying the fire polluted by different causes. The comparative merit of the blemishes could be known only by the statements of *Dharmaśāstras* - texts on customs. 21

In performing expiations the practice prevalent in the locality may also be taken into account. But it is preferable to take care not to get polluted and then to have remedial measures. 22

This care is of the first priority especially since such blemishes are likely to hamper the prosperity and hence protection of the domestic fire is of utmost importance. 23

Thus the means of protection of the domestic fire of the householder are narrated, but to give details on them is not simply possible. 24

Still most of them are being narrated in later parts so that even weak minded people could have a general idea. 25

Thus the third quarter of the seventh chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[Looking after the wife]

The householder should narrate stories from *Purāṇas* to his wife every now and then to prevent her mind from wandering into mischievous thoughts. 1

A wife should go out only in the company of maidservants and that too carrying an umbrella as a screen to conceal her. If she is to go a long distance then male servants who are reliable and senior in age should accompany her. 2

She should not wear any clothes other than the white ones which are procured from afar, and should wear on her hands bangles made of bell-metal producing good sounds. 3

Or she may even wear bangles made of silver but not golden ones. Wearing studs on the nose and braiding the hair are prohibited in addition to putting forehead marks. 4

A noble lady should not wear a belt over her loin-clothes (as girdle) though a ring-size ornament of gold is permitted on her ear-lobes. 5

One may permit one's wife to wear a thread of cotton on which a golden ring-like ornament is hung as pendant. A householder should not permit his wife to witness a battle, festival procession and enactment of dramas. 6

Moving about in a garden, engaging in singing, playing with balls, sporting in water, entering a bazaar and getting inside a royal gate (are to be prohibited). 7

Knowing the inclination of the wife, one should not permit her to move along the path frequented by *Mlechhas* (= foreigners, barbarians). 8

Wearing the rings on the toes of the feet, ankles, and crest-jewel are prohibited, as also the ornament of the forehead at the parting of hair. 9

Similar other ornaments should not be put on and when she is to attend an auspicious domestic rite she should braid the hair inwards into a plait. 10

There are the customs enjoined to the *Brāhmaṇin* ladies which are equally applicable to ladies of the subordinate castes also. 11

The householder should maintain his wife being not too cruel or too mild giving her no opportunity to deviate from the righteous path. 12

One should satisfy her desires according to one's ability without any grudge in matters like the collection of grain, oil, ghee, milk etc. 13

In matters like providing maid servants, food, drinks, dress and washing clothes she should be treated sumptuously both openly and by implication. 14

Opportunity should be provided for her to perform vows according to custom. A householder who maintains his wife on these lines would find happiness in domestic life. 15

A noble lady should not be permitted to lead a life of wanton woman since it will not lead to heaven and will lead to disgrace. It will end up in the destruction of the family and one should not give opportunity for that. 16

One should foresee one's wife getting opportunity to speak or converse with other men; further when her partner is interested in other girls it is natural for her to seek other companies. 17

Even a chaste wife will be having very strong carnal desires. Hence one should bestow one's attention solely on one's wife with proper care. 18

By fulfilling the desires of a wife one will not become the target of censure. The country in which *Brāhmaṇin* ladies are not chaste will go to dogs. 19

A king who rules such a country will be a poor protector and will lead his people into blinding darkness. The world is strongly established in the chastity of women. 20

Those without a sharp intellect fail to see this noble truth which is eternal, especially in the land of Rāma (= Paraśurāma = Kerala) where the maintenance of chastity is of utmost importance. 21

The son of Bhṛgu (= Paraśurāma) has ordained many a different traditions. One and all should adhere to these customs without being negligent. 22

[Thus the fourth quarter of the seventh chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śaṅkara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

Seventh chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER EIGHT

QUARTER-1

[*Smārtavicāra, Trial by a Smārta Brāhmaṇin*]

When a doubt arises regarding the chastity of his wife, the householder shall meet his relatives in the company of the preceptor. 1

He should inform them of his doubt and bring to his house five or six persons of integrity, capability and ability to search for truth along with the preceptor. 2

Taking aside the truthful maidservants to a secluded spot they should be questioned by three of them to elicit further information regarding the doubt. 3

Once the doubt is ascertained by their words the wife in question should be kept in a fifth apartment [which is an additional room attached to a *Brāhmaṇin*'s house which mostly consists of four rooms]. 4

Then along with the relatives the householder should approach the king in his royal chamber and convey to him the doubt that has arisen. 5

The king should be requested to do the needful so as to remove the doubt in this regard and to protect the virtue of the land by appropriate means. 6

The king should send messengers to bring four learned *Mimāṃsakas* (= well-versed scholars in *Dharmaśāstras*) and a *Smārta* (= *Brāhmaṇin* lawyer) and send them to the house of the *Brāhmaṇin*. 7

He should also send a *Brāhmaṇin* as his representative presenting him with a shawl to serve as veil. Of them the *Mimāṃsakas* should frame questions according to their wisdom. 8

They should inform the *Brāhmaṇin* who is the royal representative and *Smārta* taking them aside. This should be outside the house where the woman in question is lodged in separation. 9

These witnesses to the revelation of the truth may also be located in a temple campus, praying to the sun, moon etc.; and meditating with penance. 10

Keeping the questions to be asked in mind the *Smārtā* and the representative of the king should enter the house in question along with the householder. 11

The *Smārtā* should remain in a spot screened by a wall and the girl is made to occupy a spot near the door step without seeing each other. Now he should ask her the questions which he had already made. 12

The *Brāhmaṇin* representative should keep silence and sit there listening to the proceedings with rapt attention with the shawl covering his head. 13

At times when the questions are improper the wise one should put down the shawl on the ground to indicate his disapproval. 14

Seeing this the question of the *Mimāṃsakas* should be reconstituted by the *Smārtā* to please the representative. 15

Now the representative should again take hold of the shawl and put it back on his head. The answer given by the woman in trial may be assessed by both (the *Smārtā* and the royal representative). 16

Once he is convinced the *Smārtā* should convey to the *Mimāṃsakas* and the representative of the king should act as previously. 17

This trial carried out with proper care should continue till the allegation or confession that are elicited to put an end to the alleged doubtful behaviour which is cleared either way. 18

In case she admits her fault in answer to the proper and just question then she may be asked face to face regarding the first person who violated her chastity. 19

Once his name is pronounced, then she be asked about the other persons involved till all those violators of modesty are implicated by her. 20

The time and place of the incident may be ascertained from her carefully and keeping these details in mind the fact may be reported. 21

The *Mimāṃsaka* should state to the representative of the king sitting nearby about the persons involved saying that so and so is the first, so and so is the second etc., as admitted by her. 22

All the participants who have listened to her admission of guilt should proceed to the proximity of the king and report the entire proceedings. 23

Regarding the veracity of this reporting the representative of the king has nothing to state since his presence at this time is not required and only the *Mimāṃsakas* are responsible. 24

Hence the royal representative shall remain there with his head covered by the shawl listening to the report of the *Smārtā* with attention. 25

If the report of the *Smārtā* is improper, the *Mimāṃsakas* should remind him or they themselves may state the correct position. 26

Once the reporting to the king is over the royal representative should go out of the hall. Now the girl should be branded as an offender by establishing her guilt. 27

She should be excommunicated from her caste and may be settled in some part of the country to enable her to repent her guilt providing her with just enough means to subsist. 28

Even though she is excommunicated the king should not deny her means of existence, while the men named by her as violators of her modesty should be banished from the country. 29

The people referred to as *kālajās* (= born after the alleged loss of chastity) should be treated as belonging to a lower caste than the *Brāhmaṇin* according to customs. The paramours of the girl whether her guilt is established or not, doubted or ascertained, may be treated as of lower caste. 30

When the woman is found to be guilty all those born of her paramour should also be excommunicated and thus these are uprooted from their family as they have brought scandal to the race. 31

The king should establish the virtues ordained by *varṇāśramadharma* - rules of castes and stages of life - by removing the tainted people from other families. But sometimes the examination of the maidservants may establish the baselessness of the allegation (against a woman). 32

In such cases the husband who raised baseless allegation against his wife should be made to perform expiations. In case the allegation is found true, then they should be banished from the house and caste by *udakaviccheda* (= dismissal preceded by pouring out of water). 33

Once the guilty ones are excommunicated and banished by the king, the householder should take part in a meal together with his relatives at a fixed time. 34

Thus the guilty people are banished by their relatives and the sins caused by their association are to be removed by expiatory rites. 35

It is after these rites that they share a common meal along with their relations and people of equal status and dignity. The expiations are for the blemishes of daily rituals and occasional rituals caused by the association of the guilty ones. For these, expiations are ordained by authorities. 36

Thus the first quarter of the eighth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Pollution to children]

It is the duty of the householder to see that the child is properly nurtured from the time of conception performing the necessary rites like *Pumsavana* (the rite causing the birth of a male child) from time to time, since there is the possibility of harm to *garbha* (conception) and *bija* (the semen). 1

If one fails to perform such rites at the proper time the rites enunciated hereafter should be initiated. For the twice-born such rites are capable of bringing glory and merit. 2

A child at the time of birth is verily a *Śūdra* and his *dvijatva* (the state of being a twice-born) is based on domestic rites. This is true to the son of a king who is in the stage of feeding on breast-milk. 3

A maid-servant of the *Śūdra* caste should not be engaged to nurture the child with breast-milk since it will not be meritorious. Similarly a *Brāhmaṇī* lady polluted by the touch of a *Śūdra* woman should not feed the child with breast-milk. 4

If she gives it before purifying herself with a bath the boy would loose his holy eminence. But a *Śūdra* woman who attends on a *Brāhmaṇī* lady in the labour room is pure and her touch would not cause pollution. 5

Cloth brought by a washerwoman is pure and would not cause pollution by touch. A non - *Śūdra* woman should not give breast-milk to the child when she is in a polluted stage. 6

When the mother has breast-milk it is not proper to engage others for feeding the child. When one is polluted by the touch of a low caste feeding the child before taking a bath is not auspicious and as such should be prevented. 7

Up to the twelfth month a child could be purified by sprinkling water on his body for such a boy the touch of a *Śūdra* would not cause impurity. 8

There is no harm in a *Śūdrā* lady touching the thread of girdle, and cord with gold pendant worn on the neck and the sandal paste applied on the fore-head of a child in the state of sucking breast-milk. 9

A woman who feeds a child with breast milk is considered pure as also an woman in her periods who feeds the child. Their touch would not cause impurity to a boy before he attains the age of four. 10

A householder should not feed the child with food which is left-over, balance of oblation to manes, balance left by a lady, prepared on the previous day and containing *Asa Foetida*. 11

After the child's first shaving of the head he should be made to bathe if touched by a *Śūdra* lady and on no account he should be given food by a *Śūdrā*. 12

One should initiate the boy to letters at the proper time, so that he would be polite and well behaved and this needs proper attention. 13

This rule is generally applicable to daughters also and for details one has to peruse the detailed text on custom by Bhārgava. 14

One may be dispensed with for the sake of the family; for the benefit of many two may be discarded; for the sake of the house everything should be sacrificed and for self-protection even the house may be abandoned. 15

One should disown a teacher who refuses to impart proper knowledge, a disciple who is indifferent to studies, a cow which ceases to give milk and a king who does not afford protection. 16

A learned householder who wants self-protection should not tolerate servants who try to impose upon and a wife who speaks against his wishes. 17

One who is bent on performing the domestic ritual enjoined to be initiated day by day should desist from optional rites. 18

Performance of rites prescribed for a fortnight, month, year etc., is a must and one should adhere to these at any cost. 19

One should carefully and willfully desist from doing what is prohibited, one should derive satisfaction from rites which one has already initiated, and one should desire for anything that is ordinary. 20

These are enjoined for the self-protection of a *Brāhmaṇa* householder and thus adhering to these he should find pleasure. 21

What exactly is the final goal in this world or in the other, that alone should be sought for. But one should not have attachment in this respect. 22

Thus the second quarter of the eighth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[General duties of a householder]

At the beginning of every rite *Ganādhipa*, the lord of obstacles, should be propitiated by the householder along with divine mothers. 1

The divine mothers who preside over the world are - *Gaurī*, *Padmā*, *Śacī*, *Medhā*, *Sāvitri*, *Vijayā*, *Jayā*, *Devasenā*, *Svadhā* and *Svāhā*. 2

The worship of *Sāligrāma* stone, the recitation of *Gītā* and chanting of *Viṣṇusahasranāma* must be performed every day. 3

On the eleventh day of the fortnight (*Ekādaśi*) the householder should observe a fast and in this regard the day is to be calculated from the sunrise. 4

Some calculate the day from *Arunodaya* (= break of the day, dawn), but without the contact of the *daśamī* (= tenth of the fortnight). Similarly in the month of *Siṃha* (= August-September) the *aṣṭamī* (the eighth of the fortnight) of the dark half may be observed by remaining on fast. 5

Caturdaśī (The fourteenth of the dark half) of the month of *Māgha* (= January-February) and similar other days, in addition to the above mentioned three days may be spent on fast. 6

These fasts are to be undertaken without any desire for favourable results and hence they are compulsory. In the day of the *śrāddha* (= giving oblations to manes) the observance of fast could not be done since the observer has to partake in the meals. 7

The invitee for the *Śrāddha* also has to forgo the fast especially on the *Vaiṣṇavī* and *Śaivī* days, otherwise they need not observe the fast. 8

Those who are not enjoined to partake in the meals on the *Śrāddha* day could undergo the fast since it is compulsory. 9

For those who have no religious prohibition in partaking the meals in a *Śrāddha*, there is no objection in eating the food of a limited quantity as required and no more throughout the day. 10

Thereafter they may fast for the remaining part of the day so that there would not be any harm. But those who are invited may eat as they like. 11

These people should not eat any more during the day and next morning should take a bath and perform expiations for the infringement of the vow. 12

Those who eat on *Śrāddha* day and after the bath in the next morning should bestow proper care in matters of religious custom. On the *Ekādaśi* day rice should not be offered as oblation in fire. 13

But in Kerala it is not so. God of fire, gods, manes, and invitees to *Śrāddhas* are not bound by the fast on that day. 14

Thus the third quarter of the eighth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[Optional rites]

One should avoid optional rites which ensure special benefits with care, or one may perform these just as in the case of daily rituals following the customary rites. 1

Whatever vow is desired to be performed by the wife, the householder should assist her as partner on all such occasions. 2

If a woman performs certain fasts while her husband is alive she would reduce the longevity of the husband and at last would herself reach terrible hell. 3

Hence a chaste lady should not perform a vow without the co-operation of the husband and the one who eats the left-over of the husband does not break the vow. 4

A woman should not persuade her husband to perform any rite to ensure favourable benefits. If at all a husband is thus prompted he should see that he does not care for the result. 5

Having led life on these lines and realising that old age has set in one should go to the forest after having produced sons by her. 6

Putting the wife under the care of his son, or adopted son or even entrusting her to the disciple one should proceed to the forest with a sense of complacency. 7

In the age of Kali it is not advisable to move to the forest along with the wife, especially in Kerala as is ordained by sage Bhārgava. 8

A celibate should retire to the forest once his youth is gone, but a householder need not do so unless he is in trouble, and this is the practice in Kerala. 9

A householder should continue to live in the house performing daily and optional rites or by performing special rites so that his sin is lost and his mind attains peace. 10

Once he is detached from worldly desires, and is anxious to be liberated he should move out from the household. Or he may even continue to live there spending the rest of his life without being despised. 11

If he is attached he may remain there himself performing rites which bring benefits. He could very well do the rites which are enforced for one who lives in the forest. 12

Thus the duties of the householder have been enunciated succinctly and the action to be performed in the three stages of life have also been noted. 13

Hereafter the duties of a *Vanastha* (= one who lives in the forest) and those of the mendicants will be enunciated briefly, but not in details. 14

[Thus the fourth quarter of the eighth chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śaṅkara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

Eighth chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER NINE

QUARTER-1

[Rules regarding *Vānaprastha*, the anchorite]

Those who live in the forest should take a dip in the water three times a day. He should not cut his nails or hair and eat only grains produced in the forest. 1

He should use the same materials for sacrificial oblation, oblation to manes and for serving the guests. Vegetables, roots and fruits are thus used by him. 2

One's own food should be served in all these respects and among the wild food items grains of *Nīvāra* (= rice produced without cultivation; wild rice) may be used. 3

A *Brāhmaṇī* taking to life in forest should reduce his meals from once in four days, once in eight days and once in fifteen days and so on. 4

And when he is in a vow the meals would be once in a fortnight or once in a month. In summer he should be exposed to the sun and in rainy season he should remain out of his dwelling. 5

In winter he should remain immersed in water up to his neck and spend the day. If one is unable to do this due to old age other means are to be adopted. 6

In such cases death is preferred by jumping down the hill-top, by entering fire, by plunging into the depth of a river or lake. When he has acquired yogic power he may leave his body resorting to that power. 7

Or he may proceed to some other place, or burn himself in yogic fire or may even go to the northern quarters after renouncing all actions. 8

Remaining there with purified mind he should attain the end by yogic practices. He should gain control over the ancillaries of the Yoga (like *yama*, *niyama* etc.) and remain calm. 9

A *Vanastha* (= living in forest) who is engaged in learning all the while

finds happiness in the next world. There is no better path than Yoga for one who is desirous of the other world after death. 10

As a well lit fire engulfs both dry and drenched wood, there is no better means to destroy the sin. 11

Yoga well practised breaks the ropes of attachments. It is like a clod of mud dissolving in the great depth of river. 12

As noted above the clod of mud which is a bundle of attachment is dissolved in the water of Yoga. This is what is called *Parameśhitva* (= the state of being the foremost) which is found in *Parameśthin* (= Brahman). 13

This itself is *Viṣṇutva* (= preservation of the world) in *Viṣṇu* and *Rudratva* (= destruction) in *Rudra*. All this is due to Yoga, and there is nothing that is not possible to attain by it. 14

What is gained by Yoga could not be procured by anything else. One should practice Yoga by learning and by Yoga one should get proficiency in learning (both being mutually dependant). 15

Thus an ascetic should spend his days by learning and by practising Yoga. It has been proclaimed by me that Yoga is just the control of the sense organs. And in terms like *Yogaśikhā* the word Yoga is used in this sense. 16

Thus the first quarter of the ninth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Rules for the yogic practice]

Yama, Niyama, Āsana, Prāṇāyāma, Pratyāhāra, Dhāraṇā and *Dhyāna* are the ancillaries of Yoga. 1

With the addition of *Samādhi*, these form the eight constituent parts of Yoga. According to another view there are only six beginning with *Āsana* in the above mentioned list. 2

Yama and *Niyama* are found enumerated in other contexts also. *Yama* is self-restraint, non-violence etc., while *Niyama* is the practice of vows like visiting holy ghats etc. 3

Āsana sitting in a peculiar posture for long and it is of several modes like *siddhāsana* etc. which are referred to by several synonyms. 4

Āsana is the posture which enables one to hold the body straight for meditation and without movement. 5

This has gained much popularity and nothing else. *Prāṇasamāyama* is the control of vital airs. 6

Pratyāhāra is the withdrawal of the senses from the external objects. *Samādhi* is intense contemplation of any particular object so as to identify the contemplator with the object meditated upon. 7

If an ascetic practices *Yama* and *Niyama* constantly he could think of moving ahead through the Yogic way without hindrance. 8

One should sit with his body straight without moving the limbs like body, head, neck etc., for half a *muhūrta* (24 minutes) or one *muhūrta* (48 minutes) or more than that. 9

This period can be extended by practice for half a *yāma* (one and a half hour) or a full *yāma* (period of three hours) gradually increasing the period of time. 10

One could remain in the same pose for a *yāma* without movement then one could ascertain that one is proficient in that pose. 11

Thus having secured practice of the posture one should try to control the vital airs otherwise the air would flow away slowly even though it is restrained. 12

Without the control of vital airs one could not hold the mind and the distraction of mind would cause impediment to Yoga. Hence one who is desirous of practising Yoga should be interested in the control of the mind. 13

Other impediments include effort to acquire magic powers, bad companies of rogues, zest for wealth and women. 14

Once the state of *kumbhaka* (stopping the breath by shutting the mouth and closing the nostrils with the fingers of the right hand) is attained there is nothing that is impossible in the earth, heaven or in any other world. 15

Hence an ascetic should try utmost to practise *kumbhaka*. One should remain for long holding the vital airs by *kumbhaka*. 16

Now one's body would perspire and it requires massaging. When the control of air is for a longer time the body would tremble. 17

Through sitting in a particular pose one's body would tremble causing no pain and further control of vital air would cause one to leap ahead like a frog. 18

Again practising the control of vital airs for a longer period the ascetic would remain in the air without changing the posture. 19

Then he would acquire superhuman powers (like remaining in the air) but he should not exhibit these even though he is repeatedly requested. 20

His urination, excrement and sleep would be considerably reduced and he could control vital airs to a great extent. 21

By this control of air he would acquire a power called *Parvatasiddhi* which gives him extraordinary prowess and strength. 22

By this power he could destroy by a single blow an elephant, a *gavaya* (= a species of ox), a tiger or a lion. 23

His appearances would be captivating to the three worlds and celestials like *Urvaśi* and others would desire for his union. 24

If he indulges in sex he would lose his prowess and virility. Hence he should necessarily avoid union with women for his own sake. 25

In case there is any lapse in the control of airs, he should chant *pranava* (the *omkāra*) with prolonged timing. 26

This much alone is prescribed for the removal of sin on the part of the yogin and the authorities consider this as sufficient. 27

Brahman, the highest truth is this *pranava* syllable which is imperishable and once it is known one would get whatever is desired for. 28

This abode is great and ultimate and once it is realised one would reach the *Brahmaloka* (the world of *Brahman*). 29

Hence the learned one who chants *pranava* with utmost attention would attain merit properly losing his accumulated sin. 30

Thus the second quarter of the ninth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[Attainment of Yoga]

By the chanting of *Pranava* an ascetic would ward off impediments and reach the *Ghaṭāvasthā* - the state of suspending the breath as a religious austerity. 1

The *Ghaṭāvasthā* is that in which *Prāṇa*, *Apāṇa*, mind, intellect, individual soul and Supreme soul are identified as one and the same. 2

One should withdraw the sense organs from their objects into the self and should be engaged only when it is necessary to comprehend an object. 3

Whatever is seen by the eyes, heard by the ears and smelt by the nose 4

and tasted by the tongue and touched by the body should be conceived as *Brahman*. This should be the conception day by day and for a period of the *yāma* (= three hours). 5

A Yогin should spend some time practising *kumbhaka* and thus he will attain the power of mind. 6

One who is thus proficient in hearing from a distance would traverse that distance, see even far off objects and assume forms to his will and pleasure. 7

He could remain invisible to others and thus move about freely and by the smearing of his urine and excrement even iron will be transformed into gold. 8

Due to constant training one could become bird-like being capable of traversing the sky. Now the wise one should try to attain Yoga. 9

Such superhuman powers are often hindrances to the attainment of Yoga and hence one should not aim to attain such capabilities which are insignificant compared to Yoga. 10

Such attainments keep the Yoga far away and beyond reach and hence one should not aspire for them. Day and night one should remain vigilant without showing off his powers. 11

Day by day one should perform his duties occupying a secluded place. To the onlookers such a person will appear as naive and foolish. 12

Or one may appear as dumb, while his own disciples would always be pleading and pestering him for their self-aggrandisement. 13

The disciples would be pampering him with hospitality and one should see through their aim to attain their wishes by such entreaties to generate compassion and affection. 14

If one is to succumb to their entreaties one would be forgetting one's own aim. Hence remembering the advice of the preceptor one should constantly practice Yoga. 15

Due to the constant practice one would reach the state called *Ghaṭāvasthā* which enables the ascetic to obtain superhuman powers. This would not be possible without constant practice and not attainable by simple efforts. 16

Hence one who wants to attain Yoga should constantly practice the methods and one who is at it earnestly is to get favourable results. 17

Such a man who seriously engages himself in this would reach the state called *Paricayāvasthā* - a state beyond the reach of an ordinary anchorite. In this the control of vital airs becomes easy. 18

Herein the vital air and internal fire enter *susumṇā* and mind respectively. (*Susumṇā* = the artery or vein of the body lying between those called *Idā* and *Pingalā* and supposed to be one of the passages for the breath or spirit). 19

At this stage one should practice *dhāraṇāpāñcaka* (= subsisting only by the five elements) since the mind is in his control. The part of the body from foot to knee is conceived as the location of the earth. 20

The form of earth which is *caturaśra* (square) and is of yellow colour is represented by the mythical letter "la". The vital airs should be conceived as occupying the place of earth. 21

The wise one should then meditate upon a god of god with four faces and four hands and remain meditating on that form for five hours. 22

Such a person would win over the earth and escape death. From the knee up to the anus is the place for the element 'water'. 23

The form of water is like a crescent and having the mystical letter 'pa' as *bija* (= mystical letter forming the essential part of the *mantra* of a deity). Its colour is white and the vital air is to be conceived there along with the *bija*. 24

There the lord *Nārāyaṇa* with four hands a brilliant crown, pure dress and whiteness of the moon and of the conch-shell, is to be conceived. 25

Placing the mind in that form one should remain for five hours by which one would be freed of his sins and victory over water. 26

Thereafter one would not die due to drowning in water. From the anus to the heart, in the place for 'fire'. 27

Its shape is triangular and the *bijāksara* is "ram". The ascetic should place the vital air in this part along with the mystical *bijāksara*. 28

Then he should diligently meditate upon *Rudra* having three eyes, body smeared with ashes and appearing like the rising sun with a pleasing look. 29

Placing the mind thereupon he should spend five hours and then he would win over the element of fire and thereby ensure that he would not die due to fire. 30

Even if he falls into a pit of fire, he would not burn to death. The wise say that the place of 'air' is between the heart and the upper part of the nose. 31

The shape of the 'air' is supposed to be of six-angles (hexagonal), colour is black and the *bijāksara*, is 'yam'. The ascetic should lead fire to the place of air. 32

There he should conceive the god as omniscient, and *Viśvatomukha* (facing all sides: one whose face is turned everywhere) and meditate upon him for five hours. 33

This will ensure victory over air and one would not die due to causes based on air. The place for *ākāśa* (ether) is between the centre of the eyebrows and the top of the forehead. 34

The shape is round with smoky colour and the *bijāksara* is conceived as "ham". One should lead fire to the place of ether with the *bijāksara* of the same element. 35

There the ascetic meditates upon the god *Sadāśiva* (the prosperous one) in the shape of *bindu* (the mystical dot called *anuśvāra* put over a letter) conceived as the ultimate *Brahman* blazing forth as crystal clear effulgence. 36

The god to be worshipped is gentle, possessed of five faces, having a -

brilliant crescent on the forehead, decked with many shining ornaments, having ten hands and three eyes. 37

Further he possesses many weapons, bent on giving boon, root-cause of all and himself has no origin, shares the body with *Umā* (= *Pārvatī* in the *Ardhanārīśvara* form) and in this form of god one should fix the mind. 38

Then one should spend five hours so that he would win over ether and thereafter he would have no fear of death from ether. 39

Further he would possess the power to traverse the sky. Thus an ascetic who practises such *Pañcadhāraṇā* (subsisting by the five elements, viz. earth, air, fire, water and *ākāśa*, ether) could court death at his own will (and not by the changes or effects of the five natural elements). 40

He the great one would not perish even at the time of the *Pralaya* (dissolution) of *Paramesṭhin* (*Brahman*, called *Brahmapralaya* - which occurs at the end every 100 years of *Brahman* and in which even *Brahman* himself is swallowed up). This is the *siddhāvasthā* (the state of attainment) of one who takes to forest to lead the life of a *Vānaprastha* (forester). 41

Having obtained this state sages dwell in holy forest region. Hence a *Brāhmaṇī* living in a forest should rise to obtain this stage. For this he should find out a region in the slopes of some holy mountain and locate a cave which is naturally formed. 42

Thus the third quarter of the ninth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[The other benefits of Yoga]

The ascetic who has controlled the vital air, up to the place of ether should practice meditation upon the god dear to him. 1

This is called the meditation with attribute which results in the benefit of (eight kinds of) properties like *Āṇīmā* (power to become as small as an atom). By meditating upon God without attributes one acquires profound contemplation. 2

By contemplation the ascetic realises the equality of individual soul and Supreme Soul and as such he could traverse anywhere according to his will. 3

Or he could very well leave back his body and merge into the Supreme Being or he could reach the heavenly world and enjoy happiness keeping his own body. 4

Whatever an ascetic desires for, he could achieve it by practising Yoga and for the one living in a forest this is the principal way of attainment. 5

If he could not achieve it, he may subsist on fruits and roots and he could not do even this much, the only way out for him is to court death according to sage Bhṛgu. 6

Even the one who is capable of controlling the vital air could turn to ascetic order for attaining liberation. With sharp intelligence he could gain control over the sense organ like ear. 7

A *Brāhmaṇī* should attain liberation by realising the Supreme *Brahman*. The order of asceticism - (*Samnyāsa*) is prescribed only for *Brāhmaṇī* and not for kings (*Kṣatriyas*) and *Vaiśyas*. 8

That too is prohibited in the land of Bhārgava (Kerala) in the age of Kali. Non-*Brāhmaṇīs* should please the *Brāhmaṇī* ascetic by worshipping him. 9

They should help the *Brāhmaṇī* in the performance of vows like *cāturmāṣya* (a sacrifice performed every four months; i.e. at the beginning of *Kārtika*, *Phālguna* and *Āṣāḍha*) according to their ability or resources. Further they may engage in chanting the names of the god, attending on *Brāhmaṇī* and visiting holy ghats. 10

The wise one should spend his life by worshipping the god in *Mahāksetras* (= major temples of Kerala). This human body is transient and not easily attainable. 11

To be born in the country of *Rāma* (i.e. Kerala) is indeed a rare privilege and this land is characterised as the place where the noble customs and practices are of a high order. 12

No wise man would waste such a rare life having been born in Kerala, by running after sensual inclinations forgetting his own merit. 13

None would plunge the souls by receiving gifts from others and being influenced by prostitutes forgetting the daily rituals in the morning and evening. 14

This would pull him down from the path leading to liberation. Hence utmost care should be taken in these matters. 15

[Thus the fourth quarter of the ninth chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śāṅkara named *Lagudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

Ninth chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER TEN

QUARTER-1

[Rules of the ascetic order]

If a *Brāhmaṇi* wishes to attain liberation after expiating the sins by pacification, self-restraint and detachment he should embrace the order of an anchorite. 1

Before performing the sacrificial rituals in this connection he should obtain the permission from his kinsmen like mother, father, wife, sons and other close relatives. 2

He should perform a sacrifice called *Vaiśvānareṣṭi* in which he should give away his wealth as gift and light the *Āhavaniya* fire and control the five vital airs (like *Prāṇa*, *Apāṇa*, *Samāṇa*, *Vyāṇa* and *Udāṇa*). 3

Then he should cut off the tuft and shave the head, break the sacred thread and look at the face of the son, chanting that 'you are Brahman' and 'you are the sacrificial ritual'. 4

Again realising oneself on these and contemplating on these lines he should set out towards east or west without looking at anybody's face. 5

Holding palm as a vessel to collect alms he should seek enough food to maintain himself as though it were medicine to sustain oneself, from all castes. 6

He should get alms as and when it should not be enough to increase his body (fat). During the course of his move he may live for a day in a village and up to five days in a city. 7

Or he may spend four months either in a village or township (as becomes necessary in performing the *cāturmāṣya*). He may live in a maiden's apartment or under the shade of a tree. 8

Or he may live on the banks of a river and hold a staff having a curved joint. He should wear only a saffron coloured loin cloth and a *Kaṭisūtra* (waistband) and nothing else unless in an exigency. 9

He should tread carefully after looking at the ground and drink only purified water using cloth as a sieve. He should speak only the truth and eat only food collected as alms. 10

He should move about holding the staff, take bath in the early morning and act only after deliberation. He should not desire for death or long for existence. 11

He should be free from ego, should not belittle others and avoid excessive conversation. Further he should avoid permanent residence at a spot. 12

He should always have control over speech and speak only in exigencies. He should maintain equal feeling towards one who cuts his arms with a sword or applies sandal pastes over them. 13

In both cases he should not hold enmity to the former or affection to the latter. He should always maintain control over the vital airs practising restraint and meditation. 14

He should realise that everything from a worm to the *Brahman* himself are perishable and that his body is impure in its nature and that it would be ugly once old age has set in. 15

One should foresee the troubles caused by physical, mental and accidental causes and realise that a being has to endure the states of being in the darkness, in the womb of the mother and in between urine and excrements. 16

One has to put up with life in those circumstances braving cold and heat as well as different kinds of pleasure and pain at the time of coming out of the womb of the mother. 17

For all beings that are born there is delusion in the childhood, dependence and wantonness in youth. 18

Due to the attachment of evil thoughts and sensual objects one would be condemned to the hell, where after enduring many punishments one gets birth among the animals. 19

One would consider all these and similar ones and there is no hope for better in all the three worlds. 20

Hence a mendicant should see things in the proper light and then he would realise that happiness is just a relative feeling. 21

Realising the transitoriness of worldly object one should not even look at a piece of crystal, since one would feel happiness or sorrow if one fails to obtain it. 22

Knowing this fact one should realise that detachment is real happiness. Women persist due to their wanton nature and a *Brāhmaṇī* by joining the services of a king. 23

It is said that kings perish due to *Brahmadanda* (= by the curse of *Brāhmaṇins*) and ascetics due to lust. Hence rejecting the reality of truth one should distinguish between right and wrong. 24

Realising that 'I am the Supreme Being' an ascetic should attain his liberation. These in short are the duties of the mendicant. 25

In the land of Rāma (= Kerala) there are certain peculiar features in this regard. One should not beg alms from all and sundry. If one is invited by *Brāhmaṇins* of higher echelon one should accept the offer. 26

In the house of such people a mendicant should partake in meals, but he should take bath on touching a low caste person or when an outcaste approaches him beyond a particular distance. 27

After vomiting, sleeping during day-time and ejaculation of semen one should take bath. According to one's health bathing in morning, noon and evening is ordained. 28

A mendicant should move about along with an attendant sounding the conch and heralding his travel. He should always move on foot wherever he goes and that is the practice in Kerala according to Bhārgava. 29

He should have performed all domestic rites in his life, should be detached from all objects, and free from emotions like desire, envy and other means of existence. 30

A *Brāhmaṇī* who is thus qualified alone should embrace the asceticism and not a *Brāhmaṇī* of low status, or *Kṣatriya* or *Vaiśya*. 31

A mendicant could partake in the meals prepared by a *Brāhmaṇī* of another group who sports a different type of tuft of hair, but not by others. He could eat the meals in such a household. 32

In all other respects the rules for asceticism are common and these are succinctly stated here. Whatever is meritorious in this regard will be dealt with hereafter. 33

Thus the first quarter of the tenth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Royal duties]

Now the royal duties are to be enunciated with more details than earlier. A king anointed on the throne should look after the subjects as his own sons. 1

He should prescribe proper rules for them and see that they follow the same since he is the protector of virtue. The king should live in a fertile locality full of vegetation and fit for grazing the cows. 2

The people of the locality should consist of three-fourth *Brāhmaṇas* and one-fourth having *Vaiśyas* and *Śūdras* put together. The weather should be even-not too cold or not too hot. Fortification by wealth, or man-made fort or by natural mounts should be made. 3

Fortification by way of forest, wild trees and mountains should be there. The king should engage *Grāmādhyakṣas* (chief of villages) and some *Daśādhyakṣas* (= chief of a unit of ten officers, for the sake of administration). 4

For the proper protection of virtues *Śatādhyakṣas* (chief of a hundred officers) and *Deśādhyakṣas* (officers of a region or district) who are virtuous should be engaged. By the activities of the *Grāmādhyakṣas* (village officers) the king should remove the troubles of the village. 5

If the village officers could not find solution to the problems, they should report the matter to *Daśādhyakṣa* (= chief of ten) and in case they too are unable to solve the issues then they are to be taken before the *Śatādhyakṣa* (chief of hundred). 6

When they too could not tackle the issue then *Deśādhyakṣas* (regional officers) are to look after them. With great effort the regional officers should find a solution to the troubles. 7

The king who desires to attain liberation should engage such dutiful offi-

cers especially in secret matters the confidants are to be enjoined while in matters of general virtue noble ones are to be put in charge. 8

In financial matters the officers should be shrewd and in military affairs they should be bold and brave. In tough situations mighty ones are needed while in dealing with dishonest people men of crooked intelligence should be engaged. 9

Eunuchs are to be put in charge of women and low class people have to tackle with base matters. In matters of giving gifts only those who are generous should be authorised and not the miserly ones. 10

A wise king should engage a scholar to look after the educational portfolio. Every year he shall collect one sixth of the produce from the people as tax. 11

In the case of ghee and honey the share of the king shall be one-fifth and in regard to unguents and incenses his share shall be one-fourth. As regards the products procured from mines one-third could be appropriated by the ruler. 12

In the case of liquor and flesh the royal share shall be half while in the case of treasure unearthed the king shall receive three-fourth of it. The right horn (tusk) of a dead elephant and nails and hide of a tiger are royal dues. 13

In the case of a *Camari* (= Yak) the tail, and of *Kṛṣṇasāra* (the spotted deer) the two horns and hide are due to the king (when they die). He should appropriate the testicles of the musk-deer once they are dead. 14

Produces from creepers like pepper, the berries of the *Rudrākṣa* (*Elaeocarpus Ganitrus*, its berry), *sāka* (potherb) and *Sitiśāka* (a kind of potherb, *Marsilia Dentata*) when they are dried could be claimed by the king. 15

One-sixteenth of timber from trees of strength (like Teak) is due to the king as his share, but he shall never appropriate even a part of the salt (produced by a labourer). 16

Among the things obtained from the sea the conch-shell with screw turned rightwards is due to the royalty. It is said that exemption of tax for *Brāhmaṇa* is an auspicious thing. 17

A king who protects people without collecting tax from *Brāhmaṇa*'s would reach *Brāhmaṇaloka* after death. Even in an emergency a king should not collect tax from them. 18

From the forest-living ascetics the king should receive one-sixth of the merit accrued which is imperishable. Similarly from the people who follow virtuous ways of life one-sixth of their merit may also be received. 19

Similarly if the people are sinners the king would also have to share their sins. If the king is of noble qualities the people will also be noble and if the king is prone to bad deeds the people would emulate them. 20

People emulate their rulers in their habits and behaviour. The king deserves one-tenth of the merchandise sold in his region. 21

The king shall collect half or one-fourth of the cost of things that are imported from outside as tax. This is called *śulka* (toll, customs duty). 22

If anyone passes the *Śulkasthāna* (place to collect tax) without paying the tax due to fraud or trickery his goods are liable to confiscation in its entirety. A king should always avoid efforts which are not approved by his people. 23

A king should annihilate those who cause regular trouble for people after much deliberation. Employing spies he should watch the happenings in his own country as well as in the neighbouring ones. 24

It is well said that kings watch people through the eyes that are spies. *Brāhmaṇin* looks at things through the eyes which are the Vedas and cows recognise things through the smell. 25

Kings look at things through the eyes of their spies and not by their naked eyes. They should encourage good people and inflict punishment on the wicked. 26

Means like pacification etc., should be employed according to the situation and nature of the people. Similarly agreement etc., should be executed only in proper cases, one's own duty should not be neglected. 27

It is the duty of the king to look after the welfare of his subjects living abroad. He should protect all those who seek his help, especially cattle, *Brāhmaṇins* etc. 28

In this he should try utmost and this itself is a great sacrificial ritual. 28½

Thus the second quarter of the tenth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[Royal administration of justice]

The king should not be addicted to hunt but at the same time should not totally avoid it. For the protection of *Brāhmaṇins* and forest dwelling people he has to do hunting. 1

Since the animals cause trouble to the above-mentioned people the king is enjoined with this duty though he should not kill a wild elephant but he should drive it away to some other region in the forest. 2

When he gets tired due to the hunt feeling hunger and thirst he need not take a bath before eating, but should purify himself by sprinkling water over his body. 3

The touch of a dog, proximity of an outcaste and uprooting of arrows struck by the enemy from the body do not cause much pollution (to the king). 4

The king does not get polluted by hunt according to the rules of Bhārgava and hence he may purify himself by the sprinkling of water when he is tired. 5

He should not be addicted to dice play nor should he be attached too much to women. Liquors should be avoided at all cost. Further he should avoid abusive language and cruel punishment. 6

He should not confiscate the wealth of his subjects. These seven items beginning with hunt (*mrgayā*) are termed as the seven *Vyāsanas* (addictions of a king). 7

The king who reverts from the seven addictions with care reaps much fame and even after death he will have reason to be happy. 8

In showing munificence the king should act as a rain cloud preserving water and raining only at the proper time and not otherwise. 9

On obtaining treasure from the earth, half of it may be given away to *Brāhmaṇin* as gift, keeping the other half in the royal treasury. 10

If some one conceals the discovery of a treasure and fails to report the matter to the king and found out subsequently the whole of it should be confiscated. He should act as the protector of the wealth of children as well as destitute women with care. 11

If one is unable to protect his wealth the king should act as the protector

on request. If there is no owner for wealth and if it is of a non-Brāhmaṇī the king should appropriate it as his own. 12

If the unclaimed wealth is of a Brāhmaṇī it is called *Brahmasva*. The king should take it away, but hand it over to someone in the family. 13

When the wealth is obtained from a thief in the course of an investigation, half of it should be given to the owner after ascertaining his identity and the other half may be added to the state. 14

On the other hand if the theft is already reported and the thief is caught with the wealth intact the whole of it should be returned to the owner especially when the owner happens to be Brāhmaṇī. 15

In case the ownership could not be ascertained for the wealth obtained from a thief the king is free to distribute it among the poor or to dump it into the deep sea. 16

Natural calamities should be prevented by performing rites like Śānti (= a rite to subdue it) and *Svastiyāna* (= well-being). The troubles caused by the enemies should be warded off with the employment of political means. 17

The king should appoint a preceptor who is proficient in Vedas, *Smṛtis* and *Itihāsas* and belonging to a noble family. He should possess the qualities of asceticism and mental quietness. 18

He should choose men of quality, high birth, education, character etc., as his councillors and he should be obedient to their suggestion in all matters. 19

The king should personally look after the administration with the help of a learned Brāhmaṇī or he may entrust such duties with a Brāhmaṇī. 20

The royal councillors should be pure by birth and action. The king should behave equally with enemy and friend; should not be influenced by either and should avoid anger. 21

In all matters the king should be amenable to the advice of the councillors. He should worship gods, Brāhmaṇī and noble men. 22

The king should respect elders, should not kill Brāhmaṇī or others doing noble deeds, and he may bestow land on Brāhmaṇīs. 23

Prajāpati the creator has set apart a share to the Brāhmaṇīs in all matters and hence one should consider them as foremost in everything without fail. 24

The king should not take away from them any wealth that he himself has given, given to them by others, accrued to them by fate, obtained by them by natural means or inherited by them from family. 25

When the chief of the family is no more the wealth should be given to another member of the family and in case there is no relative left to inherit it then only the king is entitled to confiscate it to the state. 26

The inheritors of the family wealth are sons and others up to the servants of the house. In case none is there belonging to this category as inheritors the king shall be a receiver. 27

The wealth for which no heir is found immediately, should be kept apart for a period of three years with the hope of getting an heir and if nobody comes forward to claim it then it should be dumped into the seaport. 28

The king who administers the country protecting the rights of the Brāhmaṇīs is truly called a *Prajāpati* - the creator himself. 29

Thus the third quarter of the tenth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[Self-protection of the king]

The king should take extreme care in self-protection since he is likely to have many enemies within and outside the country. 1

Only dependable people should be employed as cooks for preparing food and drinks and even though they are dependable one should consider them as enemies for obvious reasons. 2

Thus an enemy may become a friend and a friend may prove to be an enemy when it matters. This division into friend and enemy could not be distinguished even by gods. 3

Hence a wife may poison a husband and the son may harm his father. People are always intent on stealing the wealth of others. 4

If he cares for his own life then he should not trust anyone. Generally the king should live in a secluded and impenetrable strong house. 5

He should give audience to people if only it is absolutely necessary and

should have in his custody hymns, charms and jewels that could be used as antidote to poison. 6

He should have a pleasing disposition and should comfort the people with charming words and smiling face. He should not show an angry face even to a person condemned with capital punishment. 7

In dispensing justice the punishment should be according to the gravity of the offence. A second offence should not be condoned. Even a first crime which is serious warrants punishment. 8

A king should take action against those who fail to perform their duties. In his own country the punishment should be commensurate with the crime, but against an enemy the punishment should be tough. 9

A friend should not be deceived, and should be compassionate to *Brāhmaṇins* showing patience, a king should inflict capital punishment upon serious and cruel culprits, though he may spare the life of a *Brāhmaṇin*. 10

A *Brāhmaṇin* who has committed a very serious crime should be banished from the country after branding him with marks of punishment. This is the punishment that should be meted out by the king. 11

If a *Brāhmaṇin* commits a murder, he may be branded by a hot image of iron without a head on his forehead before banishing him from the country of his birth. 12

The images for branding differ according to crimes, and in case a *Brāhmaṇin* drinks liquor the image is that of a pot, for committing theft it may be a dog's foot and for sexual relation with the wife of the elders it may be the image of an womb. 13

Whatever is going to be narrated later applies equally in connection with the expiations also. 14

These are in short the duties assigned to a king. By following them a king attains glory in the world and reaches heaven after death. 15

Thus the fourth quarter of the tenth chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śāṅkara named *Lagudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.

Tenth chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER ELEVEN

QUARTER-1

[The Duties of the *Vaiśyas*]

Royal duties have been narrated as above and now the duties of *Vaiśyas* are going to be narrated; which consist among others of commerce and rearing of cattles. 1

Also agriculture, education, giving of gifts and performance of sacrifices as has been mentioned earlier. A *Vaiśya* should always seek his livelihood by *satyānyāta* (= practice of truth and false, meaning commerce or trade). 2

He should avoid the sale of goods which are prohibited to be sold. Salt, leather, lac, sacred thread, and girdle (are prohibited). 3

As also *Sālagrāma* stone, flesh, honey, oil and red arsenic are the ten objects that should not be sold, according to the wise. 4

Others hold that there are five things that should not be sold, such as cattle, maiden, Vedas, cooked food and *Soma* juice. 5

In addition there are some more articles belonging to this group and Bhārgava has enumerated them to be one thousand and eight items. 6

Among these fifteen are important and they have been named in the previous lines. An annual profit of ten per cent is to be expected. 7

In a proper trade a ten per cent profit on the cost is allowed and this is called *Sāttvika*. In *Rājasa* the profit is one-fifth (twenty per cent) of the cost while anything more than that is classed under *Tāmasa*. 8

Among them one should avoid the *Tāmasa* type of profit and take recourse to the other two as is desired and if he is interested in only one category then he should accept *Sāttvika* as a principle. 9

One should not expect much profit from a *Brāhmaṇin* though he may expect it from the king and in this respect it could be the one classed under *Rājasi* or *Tāmasi* in that order. 10

A *Vaiśya* could take profit from his counterpart in business and in the case of *Śūdra* the profit may be as one desires. For servants after charging profit one may give some kind of gift. 11

After milking the cow in the morning he should let them off for grazing after the calf had consumed the milk. The pastures should be free from dangers and shaded by trees having profuse foliage. 12

The ground should be devoid of animals that prey upon and full of grass and water. Once the cattle had consumed enough they should be driven back in a gentle manner. 13

In driving them back one should not beat them up due to anger. It is not proper to drag a cow by encircling the rope on its horns and to make it carry a heavy load on its back. 14

During the noon time of the summer season cows should be given enough rest. In other seasons also they may be rested when they show the signs of fatigue. 15

He who desires to increase the wealth of his cattle as well as his merit, should avoid churning of curd on the day of the back-moon. 16

One should plough the field using the cattle up to the noon not causing fatigue to them. This is subject to the time and region and thus one would not be at fault. 17

Ploughing is prohibited on the day of black-moon, on the day in which the transition of planets occurs, during the evening, at nighttime, on the fourteenth day of the dark half, on the birthday of the owner and on the gravelly place. 18

Ploughing should not be done during the period of eclipse, on the day when a tremour or earthquake occurs and on days like *Rikta* (= fourth, ninth and fourteenth days of a human fortnight) as also on similar occasions on which the practice is in vogue. 19

The field should be scraped with a pick-axe to remove gravels and ploughed properly using the cattle. After the work is over the cattle should be washed with profuse water. 20

Once they are taken to the cattle-shed they should be supplied with grass and other cattle-feeds. Everyday the urine and cowdung should be removed from the cowshed. 21

One should pamper one's servants by giving them clothes and oil for bath and enquire after the welfare of their family almost everyday. 22

Whenever they are in trouble they should be given proper assistance so that they would be indebted to their master. 23

Food is of many qualities and it sustains all creatures. It is dependent on agriculture and hence efforts should be made to increase the agricultural productivity. 24

Without the consideration of caste or creed all should strive for agricultural progress; *Brāhmaṇas* could help by their penance; the king could assist by (protecting the vegetation) driving away wild animals. 25

A *Vaiśya* should strive on his own in this matter and *Śūdras* could render them proper assistance. Here the duty assigned to the *Vaiśya* caste is succinctly narrated with special reference. 26

Vaiśyas who maintain their duties like trade properly would get other profits also accrued from education and other activities. 27

Thus the first quarter of the eleventh chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Duties of *Śūdras*]

Now the duties of *Śūdras* are to be stated succinctly. A *Śūdra* should be conscious of his duties and possessing the qualities of quietness, self-restraint, absence of greed etc. 1

He should attend on *Brāhmaṇas* and earn his livelihood with what they provide in return. Thus he should maintain his own life, house, teacher and sons. 2

If that is not enough to maintain his family, he may engage himself in agricultural activities in the land of his *Brāhmaṇin* master after getting permission. Further whenever the master requires his presence he should be available without fail. 3

He should not postpone the duties assigned to him that this much for today and this much for tomorrow. When a *Brāhmaṇin* asks for his assistance he should leave back his own duties already begun. 4

But an action entrusted by the king should not be postponed for the sake of *Brāhmins*. But he may always postpone the work for a *Vaiśya* as though it were his own case. 5

He should always be obliged to the *Brāhmins* and as such please them by his action. A *Śūdra* should not use foul words to a *Brāhmin* even if he is insulted. 6

He should continue to tell them every now and then to excuse his faults. He is not expected to speak Sanskrit though he should be conversant with alphabets. 7

He should not learn Śāstras and should not listen to the Vedic words pronounced by others. He need not take his bath before sunrise, perform penance and chant *Mantras*. 8

He should perform *Pūrta* (acts of pious liberality like digging wells), give offerings to manes without the chanting of *Mantras* and remain not addicted to liquor or flesh. 9

He should not drink the milk of a red-cow, or *Pañcagavya* (the five products of cow put together: milk, curd, ghee, urine and cowdung). Over indulgence in sensual affairs is prohibited. 10

Whatever is prohibited by the *Brāhmin* every now and then should not be performed with utmost obedience. He should invariably revert himself without any argument. 11

But when he is prompted by *Brāhmin* to do something he should do it without questioning the necessity and with all attention. 12

The *Śūdras* and the *Brāhmins* who behave on these lines following their duties will acquire merit and reach ultimate status or position. 13

If a *Śūdra* finds it difficult to maintain his own duties, he may in contingency accept the profession of a carpenter and a weaver of mats. But he should not serve those who despise Vedas and behave badly. 14

If he is in dire straits to earn a living he may resort to the sale of salt and other articles and condiments except in dealing with flesh. 15

A *Śūdra* should not perform the vow of *Ganarātra* (taking a series of nights for the same), but instead he may give away gifts as expiations to avoid sins. 16

He should not wear a forehead-mark of the perpendicular type using the ashes prepared from the cowdung. Instead he may use the ashes procured from the kitchen of a *Brāhmin*'s house for purification. 17

He should not by himself read *Itihāsa* or *Purāṇa* and only listen to them recited by others. These are in general the rules laid down by the sages for them. 18

From the *Ṣadakṣaramantra* of Śiva (*Om namah śivāya*) he may omit the *Pranava* (= *Omkāra*) and chant the rest having five letters. A *Śūdra* is not at fault if he chants the same without other requirements like *Nyāsa*. 19

Whatever is prescribed for him as a member of the caste, he should perform all of them. But what is objected to by noble people, he will have to avoid it even though he has begun to chant. 20

A *Śūdra* never knows by himself what is *dharma* or *adharma*. For him *Brāhmin* alone in the authority in this respect to give him instruction. 21

Due to changes of time the authorities change. This is applicable in respect to various regions. Hence public consensus should be ascertained in such matters. 22

After considering time, place etc., one should reject what is alien or foreign. Thus looking after the instructions of *Brāhmin* at every step, a *Śūdra* shall continue his life. 23

By following this principle a *Śūdra* is not at fault in this world but wins heaven after death. 23½

Thus the second quarter of eleventh chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[Customary observances like *Ahimsā*]

Brāhmins should not eat the flesh of animals that are not killed without proper religious rites of purification. Purified flesh of animals may be eaten as part of the Vedic rites. 1

One who kills animals without such purposes would inherit sins equal in number to the hair on the limbs of the animal so killed. 2

Since god has created the animals to be offered in sacrifice it is not a sin to kill them for that purpose and such killing is not considered as mere slaughter. 3

Though the killing of animals for the sake of wealth involves only a lesser sin, the eating of the meat except in a sacrifice is sinful. 4

It is said that the three things such as medicinal herbs, animals and plants consumed by the sacrificial fire would come up again in heaven. 5

Animals should be killed only for the sake of sacrifices and for offering of oblation to the manes, gods or guests. 6

Those who know the real import of the Vedas kill the animals for sacrifices and by which act they lead their souls to heaven along with those of the animals. 7

A *Brāhmaṇin*, a king or a *Vaiśya* should not kill an animal in their houses or of preceptors or forest region, even in contingency without the proper ritualistic purposes. 8

A killing ordained by Vedas for the purpose of sacrifices is not considered as killing but an act necessitated by Vedas which make one to perform action for ritual. 9

He who kills animals which should not be slaughtered merely for the purpose of pleasure, is considered as a dead being even though technically he is a living being. This action will lead one from misery to further misery. 10

Capturing, killing and tormenting of animals are the three items that one should avoid completely and as a result he would find pleasure in this world as well as in the other after death. 11

He who keeps away from troubling others would attain what he attempts, desires or earns for. Everything accrues to him by abstaining from killing. 12

It is not possible to get flesh without killing an animal and the slaughter of animals deprives one of heaven. Hence one should avoid eating flesh. 13

Realising that flesh is procured by capturing and killing animals, one should be compassionate and revert from eating all kinds of flesh. 14

It is said that the slaughter of buffaloes evoke compassion and worry to gods and hence killing for sacrificial purposes also involves grief. 15

In case a *Brāhmaṇin* happens to eat flesh inadvertently he would have to expiate the sin and if he is in the habit of eating flesh regularly then he would have to be thrown out of his community. 16

He who does not eat flesh of animals without Vedic sanction unlike a demon who is free to devour flesh at will, would certainly be attractive to the world and be free from diseases. 17

One who ropes in an animal, pulls it by the rope, prompts it to move forward by pricking at the back, instructs to kill, permits the slaughter, kills it, buys it and sells it (does harm to the animal). 18

As also one who cooks it, serves it and eats it are the eleven categories of people all of whom are termed killers of animals. 19

According to Bhārgava there is no position which is more sinful than nourishing one's flesh by eating the flesh of other animals for no reason. 20

Hence people of the Kerala region should not eat flesh unless it is the left-over of an oblation offered to sacrificial fire by *Brāhmaṇin* in the Vedic ritual. 21

Unless there was the instruction of the Vedas regarding the sacrifice of animals the killing should have been avoided. Killing animals every year for sacrifices is done usually, But the merit accrued by such sacrifices involving slaughter of animals every year is equal to the merit of abstaining from eating flesh. 22

He who performs sacrifices annually and he who abstains from eating flesh reap the same quantity of merit. All should abstain from stealing wealth. Theft of gold causes degradation. 23

One should not cohabit with another's wife since it involves the sin of *Agamyāgamana* (= illicit intercourse with a woman) and is consequently degraded. Similarly one should not sexually exploit animals like cow (= intercourse with a cow) and sexual union with a prostitute also leads to degradation. 24

A *Brāhmaṇin*, or a king or a *Vaiśya* should not have intercourse with a *Śūdra* woman. Such a relation during a single night will take three years to expiate the sin. 25

One who commits such a sin has to live on alms, chant *mantras* of expiation everyday for three years. But in the situation prevalent in Kerala, relation of this kind is permitted. 26

Bhārgava has permitted the *Brāhmaṇin* who are celibates to maintain sexual relations with *Śūdra* women. But it is not seen elsewhere and it is not proper also in general. 27

Paraśurāma has prohibited *Snātakas* (celibates) from having sexual relation with women in general and especially with *Śūdra* women (as against such a misconception). 28

One should avoid sexual contact with women of higher and lower castes as well as women of the same *gotra* (= lineage) according the learned. 29

A *Brāhmaṇin* who drinks liquor consciously would fall from his caste and become degraded, but when he happens to drink liquor unwillingly he has to perform expiations detailed hereafter. 30

Comraderie with an evil-minded person for a year is enough to transform one to his bad ways and hence one should always avoid contact with such persons. 31

Thus the third quarter of the eleventh chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[Food habits]

A *brahmācārin* living in the house of a teacher is free to eat as he likes. The food obtained there is sacred and equal to ambrosia. 1

A householder should partake only in the left-over after feeding gods, manes, people, servants, and *grhadevatā* (= the goddess of a house: a class of household deities). 2

A *Vanastha* (= forester, forest dwelling ascetic) should eat only wild food (leaves, fruits and roots) which are not unhusked using *ulūkhala* (= pounded in a mortar). He should chew the item with his teeth only or he should remain as feeding only on air. 3

An ascetic should eat only food procured as alms along with water. That itself is sacred for him and leading to *Brahman* (the Supreme Being). 4

Whatever is called food should not be eaten if it is impure even slightly. He should not eat food two hours preceding the eclipse. 5

After the eclipse is over he should take bath and eat food. If he is ignorant of the fact of *gobrāhmanoparāga* (= danger befalling cattle and *Brāhmaṇin*) he may partake in food. 6

When the king or close relative is in danger one should not eat food; similarly eating is to be avoided during midnight, midnoon, when there is indigestion or in the junctures of the day. 7

One should not eat wearing wet clothes, remaining nude, standing near a window, in open places sitting upon the hams and sitting in a reclining position. 8

One should not eat remaining on the lap of another, nor lying down in a bed. It is improper to eat from a broken vessel. Eating the food holding it by the hand and putting it on the floor are to be avoided. Salt should not be served before one begins to eat food. 9

One should not eat while scolding children; should not eat alone, but not in the company of enemies. It is not proper to eat along with wife or sitting in a row if the members of the same are not noble. 10

Rice mixed with sesamum as well as curd should not be consumed at night and one should avoid drinking of milk at daytime. Further before offering oblations to manes one should not start on any action. 11

One should not eat the left-overs of others; ghee must be used for meals and food given by the wife with disregard should not be eaten. It is not proper to eat when many are watching, or outside the house. 12

One should not eat when there is a crowd around him and it is not proper to eat in a secluded and empty house. It is not proper to move about with heavy feet and to show too much of friendship with others. 13

Purity of custom and food is necessary for mental peace and only in such a mind the Supreme Being would appear. 14

Hence it is important that people should be careful in their customs and food habits; otherwise one will be moving from darkness to darkness and feel misery. 15

[Thus the fourth quarter of the eleventh chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śāṅkara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

Eleventh chapter is concluded.

CHAPTER TWELVE

QUARTER-1

[Proper Conduct]

He who has command over the words by the proper study of grammar and he who officiates over sacrificial rituals are said to be men of good conduct. They are called *Parktipāvanas* - doing honour to a social circle. 1

Such people should be given seat of honour at dinner parties since they purify by their presence the persons who sit along with them in the same row to dine. This is the code of conduct prescribed by Bhārgava for Keralites. 2

Hereafter I shall narrate succinctly the rules of proper conduct. One should not despise others if one desires for the well-being. 3

People such as one deficient in limbs (maimed), one who has more limbs than normal, ugly or deformed, low-born, dunce and those having diseases should not be derided. 4

One should not serve a low caste. A *Brāhmaṇa* should not neglect his Vedic studies which are befitting to his caste, stage of life, age and family. 5

One should wear proper dress befitting his education, wealth, region, time etc., not to become despised. 6

One should always think of learning and its import and should not wear tattered clothes such as dirty clothes having holes, provided one has sufficient means of livelihood. 7

One should never say 'no' to anybody seeking help and should not learn *mlecchabhāṣā* (= foreign languages). One should not look at the excrement or self-reflection on oil or water. 8

One should not behold the angry face of his preceptor and one's own wife while she is taking her food. It is improper to look at a woman who is nude, in her periods or with misplaced clothes. 9

One should not reveal the private parts to others or see that of another. It is improper to look at the womb of a maiden and to see animals in copulation. 10

It is improper to put impure things into the fire or to cross the same or to warm the feet. Rubbing the feet with *kuṣa* grass is also prohibited. 11

It is not proper to put one's foot on a bell-metal vessel and to touch one foot by the other. Breaking of mud balls is prohibited as also drawing on the earth. 12

Biting of nails and hairs and engaging in games like gambling should be avoided. Clothes or shoes used by others should not be worn. 13

The sacred-thread which is broken and made improperly should not be put on and giving remains of the sacrificial oblation to others is to be avoided. A *Śūdra* should not be given instruction. 14

One should not eat rice mixed with sesamum and it is improper to act as the religious preceptor of a *Śūdra*. Talking to women in their periods and waking of these who are asleep are prohibited entirely. 15

It is not proper to report a cow grazing in another's compound or to drive it away. A calf drinking milk from the udder of the cow should not be drawn away and one should not live in a country where a *Śūdra* reigns. 16

Nor is it proper to live in a locality where there are many wicked people, absence of a good physician and scarcity of water. Indulging in purposeless activities, using obscene language and resorting to falsehood are improper. 17

One should not insult oneself as also others by highlighting their weakness. Daily rituals should be performed scrupulously and one should not play with sharp weapons. 18

One should not needlessly touch one's sense organs (like eyes, nose, ear etc.) and the private parts of the body except for cleaning them. It is not advisable to do things even if otherwise sanctioned if the people of the locality object to them. 19

Performance of sacrifices and chanting of hymns are necessary to ward off evils on auspicious days like the day of the full-moon and on which planetary transition occurs. These are the rules of proper conduct stated in short avoiding details. 20

In the case of other matters the tradition set up by the noble may be followed as a guiding principle. 21

Thus the first quarter of the twelfth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-2

[Duties of women]

One who has control over the sense organs and desirous of virtue should follow scrupulously the customs ordained in the different scriptures and resorted to by noble people. 1

By following customs one gets longevity, desired ends, prosperity and gain which are permanent and overall victory over the period of Kali. 2

Even if one is devoid of good physical signs, by following the virtuous path with care and without envy one would certainly live for a hundred years. 3

Now we shall deal with certain duties of women separately. After getting up from the bed they wash themselves and wear fresh clothes. 4

Once again they should wash the five limbs (such as two hands, two legs and face) and engage themselves in the routines of the house such as dusting the house before sunrise using a broom. 5

The lady of the household should then churn the curd except on the days of black-moon, the day on which planetary transitions occur and the day prescribed for oblations to manes. 6

These three days should be avoided for the churning of curd. In case the churning takes place on the *Darśa* (= black-moon) day (it will harm the cattle). 7

Hearing the sound of churning the curd on the day of the transition of the planets the manes would curse the householder and his cattle which perish consequently. 8

If curd is churned when the oblations to manes are offered the manes would turn back with severe pain. 9

On that day *kavya* (= oblation to manes) should not be given and deities would not eat *havya* (= oblation to gods given in fire). Hence both these should be considered as equal and are to be avoided. 10

These two according Bhārgava apply only to the *Brāhmaṇ* of Kerala. The ladies should wash the vessels and milk the cows before letting them out for grazing. 11

Thereafter she may take her bath and other urgent errands like collecting sacrificial wood, holy flowers and *kuṣa* grass. 12

Clad in pure clothes she may prepare *havya* (= offering in fire); *kavya* (= oblations to manes) and *Anna* (food for households). This should not be done wearing wet clothes and dishevelled hair, but with an enlightened mind. 13

With restraint she should worship sacred fire as well as her husband and should not eat before her husband partakes in the meal. 14

If vessel is available she should use the same one as that of her husband for taking food. She should not remain even a moment without attending on her husband. 15

She should not speak anything against her husband and when the husband remains speechless she should not speak to him of her own. While he is angry she should put up a smiling face. 16

With conscious effort she should remain liberal without being envious and always treat co-wives as friends. 17

Everyday without fail she should serve the elders with all eagerness, while she should refrain from scolding the sons but nourishing them with agreeable food. 18

With a pleasant disposition she should feed the babies with breast-milk, youngsters should be fed with solid food never cursing them in anger. 19

She should wait upon crying children not neglecting them by doing other errands. Possessed of pious and noble habits she should worship deities considering the husband as one of them. 20

A chaste woman with a living husband should not go on a pilgrimage to holy ghats, for her the water washing the feet of the husband itself forms the holy water and none else. 21

Even a widow should not cross the limits of her country for this purpose. For those living in the South of Kerala the river *Kumbhavati* is the limit (for their travel). 22

Those in the North of Kerala should not cross over the river *Payasvini*, but for all the *Sahya* mountain (the Western Ghats) forms the limit which is the third line of control. 23

Except in Kerala there is no such rule regarding the limits. The *Brāhmaṇi* ladies should not offer oblation to manes on the banks of sacred rivers in the region. 24

In Kerala one may take the bath in the river *Nilā* which is considered as sacred as the river Ganges. For those who live on the banks of rivers they may take the holy dip in the respective rivers if they desire so. 25

A woman should not proceed to a distant river for the purpose and she should not listen to the Vedic chants. She should not learn much and should avoid song and dance. 26

She should not gaze at a person (other than her husband) and a chaste woman should move out only in the company of a maid servant partially covering her body with an umbrella (of palm leaves). 27

On no account she should go out in the night and it is improper to visit a temple during festivals. These are in short the duties of women in general. 28

Those who follow these rules of behaviour would gain ultimate merit and position. 29

Thus the second quarter of the twelfth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-3

[Duties of women in menstruation]

A lady in her periods should control her speech and should move about the inner apartments without touching any objects. 1

She should not touch any part of the house and move to the room specified for her accommodation during the time of menstruation. She should avoid brushing of the teeth, taking oil bath and applying collyrium to the eyes. 2

She should not touch anything other than what is needed for her routines, though she may touch her child since it requires her breast-milk. 3

A woman in her periods should not take a bath on the third day and in case she has to perform any daily rite falling on that day she may abstain from taking food after the bath. 4

She should not remain outside the house during the evening and should avoid moving out to distant places. It is not proper for her to wear fresh clothes and to decorate the hair with flower garlands. 5

She should not eat her food in a bell-metal plate, instead she may use plantain leaf and acting like a celibate she may lie down on the ground avoiding sleep during the day time. 6

If she happens to wear the garland, her future child would be bald-headed and if she is to apply the collyrium to the eyes it will result in her children being blind even at birth. 7

Further they would be afflicted with the disease of leprosy if she applies sandal to her limbs during the periods. In case she takes oil bath that will result in children with jaded limbs. 8

If she brushes her teeth before her purificatory bath (on the fourth day) she would beget children with irregular teeth and afflicted with dental diseases. 9

If she remains outside the house during evenings, her children would be born with disorderly teeth. By moving out to a distant place, she would beget children with epilepsy. 10

By wearing fresh clothes during the period she would beget children with leprosy and by eating in a bell-metal vessel would make her children beggars. 11

If the woman in menstruation eats food in leaves she would beget children with brilliance. But in this case she should avoid the leaves of *Palāśa* (Butea Frondosa). 12

Leaves of *Pippala* (*Ficus Religiosa* commonly called Pepul) and *Nyagrodha* (= the Banyan or Indian Fig tree, *Ficus Indica*, literally growing downwards) are to be avoided by her. On the fourth day she should take her bath after the sunrise. 13

While she is in her wet clothes she may accept the fresh clothes from the washerwoman. Then she should be bathed by the maid-servant attending on her after which she should take her final bath dipping into the water. This applies to a *Brāhmaṇī* lady. 14

By this process she is purified and becomes eligible for her daily routines

and rituals. In the case of a non-*Brāhmaṇī* lady a simple bath alone is needed for purification. 15

In the case of the women of lower type of *Brāhmaṇīs* (people of lower status among *Brāhmaṇīs*) the rules are the same as those of the *Brāhmaṇīs* as regards bath and purification. In this it is better to follow the regional tradition. 16

All these women after the purificatory bath on the fourth day could be touched by others. A household lady shall be eligible for entering the kitchen and cooking food after this bath. 17

A chaste lady coming from the bathroom after the menstruation is over should first see the face of the husband and she should not look at other's face even inadvertently. 18

These are rules prescribed for ladies in menstruation by Bhārgava. Here the important ones among them alone are mentioned for fear of prolixity. 19

Thus the third quarter of the twelfth chapter comes to an end.

QUARTER-4

[The sixty-four *Anācāras*]

Hereafter I shall succinctly narrate the customs of the people of Kerala dealt with by Bhārgava. 1

Since these were not practised in other regions the scion of Bhārgava narrated them numbering sixty-four in the following lines. 2

(1) One should not cleanse the teeth with sticks; (2) one should not take bath wearing the clothes; (3) one should not rub the body with a wet towel; (4) one should not bathe before sunrise; 3

(5) one should not cook the food before taking the bath; (6) one should not use the water kept aside during the night; (7) one should not bathe with a definite objective; (8) one should not use the water left-over from another ceremonial purpose; 4

(9) one should take bath in case one touches a *Śūdra* to purify himself; (10) one should take bath if one happens to go near a person of low caste; 5

(11) one should bathe after coming into contact with the water of the wells polluted by the touch of a low caste person. (12) One should bathe if one sets his foot on the ground cleansed by a broom and not purified by sprinkling water; 6

(13) one should smear holy ashes over one's forehead in three lines; (14) one who is a *Brāhmaṇī* should chant the prayers oneself in all ceremonial matters; 7

(15) one should not use the rice and condiments cooked on the previous day; (16) one should not eat the left-overs of meals of children; (17) one should not eat anything that has been offered to Śiva; 8

(18) one should not serve the food with bare hands without the use of a ladle, especially items like ghee and vegetables. (19) Items like the ghee and milk of buffaloes should not be used as offering to gods and manes; 9

(20) cooked rice should be made into balls for consumption without leaving anything on the plate; (21) betels should not be chewed while one is in a polluted state; 10

(22) one should observe the vows of celibacy; (23) one should give some presentation to the teacher as fees. (24) One should not recite the Vedas on the street; 11

(25) one should perform the sixteen domestic rituals at the proper time with proper rites. (26) One should not sell a maiden (= receive money for girls given in marriage). (27) One should never perform vows and rituals for the sake of benefits; 12

(28) ladies touching another in her menstrual period should bathe themselves for purification before taking meals. (29) *Brāhmaṇīs* should not spin cotton doing the act of a weaver; (30) also he should not wash clothes as in the case of a washerman; 13

(31) *kṣatriyas* and other castes should not perform worship Śiva on a *Rudrākṣa* berry. (32) A *Brāhmaṇī* should never accept the funeral gifts from *Śūdras* given at Śrāddha ceremonies; 14

(33) one should perform the Śrāddhas of father's father, mother's father and both grandmothers; (34) anniversary ceremonies should be performed on the day of the new moon; 15

(35) at the end of the first year of death the *sapindī* (a particular śrāddha, having the same *piṇḍa*) should be performed. (36) *dīkṣā* (particular vow) should be observed till the end of the year after the death; (37) śrāddhas should be performed with regard to the stars (asterism on which the parent died); 16

(38) one adopted by another as his son should perform the Śrāddha ceremony of one's own father; (39) one should be cremated in one's own compound and nowhere else; 17

(40) one who has become an ascetic should not look at the face of women; (41) when such a person who has embraced asceticism dies Śrāddha need not be performed for him; 18

(42) no one except the husband should see a *Brāhmaṇī* lady; (43) *Brāhmaṇī* women should not go out of the house; (44) in case they move out a maid-servant should accompany her; 19

(45) she should wear only pure white clothes; (46) piercing of the nose is prohibited for them; (47) a *Brāhmaṇī* would fall from his caste by drinking liquor; (48) by having sexual relation with other *Brāhmaṇī* ladies one loses the caste; 20

(49) the installation of the spirits of the departed in temples is prohibited; (50) *Śūdras* and others should not touch the idol installed in a temple; 21

(51) food offered to one god should not be offered again to another deity; (52) without offering oblation in fire ceremonies like marriage should not be conducted; 22

(53) *Brāhmaṇīs* should not bless each other; (54) they should not salute each other; (55) killing of animals in sacrifices every year should not be done by those who desire for salvation; 23

(56) one should not practice anything other than those prescribed by the Śaiva or Vaiṣṇava tantras; (57) only one sacred thread shall be worn; (58) only the eldest son should marry and lead a householder's life; 24

(59) *Kṣatriyas* and other castes should perform the śrāddha of the uncle; (60) for *Kṣatriyas* the right of inheritance goes to the nephews; (61) their sons have no right to inheritance; 25

(62) a non-*Brāhmaṇī* should not embrace asceticism; (63) a wife after the

death of her husband should lead the life of *Sannyāsin* (strictly practising celibacy); (64) she should not die along with her husband (as in *sati* entering the funeral pyre of the husband). 26

These are the *anācāras* narrated by Bhārgava considering their importance among the practices. There are some more which are of lesser importance. 27

Hundreds and thousands of minor customs are there which could not be narrated here. Ceremonies connected with funerals, pollutions at death and birth as well as miscellaneous matters shall be discussed by me in the latter part of the work. 28

[Thus the fourth quarter of the twelfth chapter of the *Dharmaśāstra* of Śāṅkara named *Laghudharmaprakāśikā* comes to an end.]

Twelfth chapter is concluded.

Here ends the first part of the Book.

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A

EXPLANATORY NOTES

CHAPTER ONE

I. 1.23. "bhāgineyā hi dāyināḥ"

In the land of Paraśurāma, meaning Kerala, the non-Brāhmins follow the matrilineal system of inheritance. Accordingly the nephews inherit the property but not the sons. From a very early period the kings of Kerala followed this system according to the *Mūśikavamśa* - a historical poem of Kerala wherein the change over from patrilineal to matrilineal mode of inheritance is described. This 12th century poem of a court poet called Atula describes the change over. King Pālaka succeeded to the throne by Validhara, the son of his sister. In the long history of the dynasty it is for the first time that a nephew succeeds his uncle to the throne. The poet states:

*Kṛtavati padamasmin rājñi mrtyoḥ kātākṣe
svasuratha pṛthukirtistasya rājñahstanūjah ।
abhavadabhavahāri pūritāśah prajānām
validhara iti tasyā vallabho rājalakṣmyāḥ ॥*

This king Validhara is mentioned in an inscription dated in the Kali year 4029 corresponding to 928-929 A.D.¹

I. 1.25 "Sarahasyam dhanurveda- grahaṇam viprabhūbhujoḥ"

Brāhmins and Kṣatriyas are enjoined to learn *Dhanurveda* - the science of archery. This feature is peculiar in Medieval Kerala. *Śukasandeśa* (13th century A.D.) has made a reference to this in the following lines (I.69):

*Śastre śāstrepī ca bhṛgūnibhair śāśvadudbhāsate yā
viprendraistair vipulamathavaryāvalīṣu sthalīṣu*

Brāhmins who inhabit the village are proficient not only in Śāstra - the

1. See Dr. N.P. Unni, *A History of Mūśikavamśa*, Kerala Historical Society, Trivandrum, 1980, pp. 110-112.

Vedic lore – but also in Śastra-martial arts. Paraśurāma the creator of Kerala is spoken of as a warrior-sage and hence it is quite natural that he ordained the Brāhmins to gain proficiency in weapons also.

Livelihood of Brāhmins

Dealing with the livelihood of Brāhmins the author has stated as follows (I. 2.4-6)

*Rtāmr̥tābhyaṁ bhūdevo jīvedatha mr̥tena vā
pramr̥tenāthāvā jīvedatha satyān̥tena vā
R̥tamūñccham̥ silañcāhur̥ amṛtam̥ karṣan̥am̥ matam̥
satyān̥rtantu vāñijyam̥ teṣāmūñcchasilam̥ mahat̥
amṛtam̥ca kramādanyaddvayam̥ nindyañ̥ pracakṣate*

These stanzas contain the ideas expressed in *Manusmṛti* IV stanzas 4-6 which are as follows:

*Rtāmr̥tābhyaṁ jīvettu mr̥tena pramr̥tena vā
satyān̥rtābhyaṁapi vā na śavātyā kadācāna
R̥tamūñcchaśilañ̥ jñeyam̥ amṛtam̥ syādayācītam̥
mr̥tam̥ tu yācītam̥ bhaikṣam̥ pramr̥tam̥ karṣan̥am̥ smṛtam̥
Satyān̥rtam̥ tu vāñijyam̥ tena caivāpi jīvate
sevā śavāttirākhyātā tasmāttāñ̥ parivarjayet*

Some authorities give the reading “*pranṛta*” and “*anṛta*” for the term “*pramṛta*” since agricultural trade involves some kind of falsehood also.

Śāṅkarasmṛti is of the opinion that a Brāhmin could earn a living by agricultural and commercial activities as a last resort if he fails in his natural vocation of teaching, learning and performing sacrifices for others.

Vrātya and vrātyastoma

I 3.10.a: *vrātyā nāma syurakṛte vrātyastome yathāvidhi.*

Vrātya is a person who has lost his caste through non-observance of one of the principal sāṃskāras. In order to recover the rights forfeited by a delay of the sāṃkāras, a particular rite by name *Vrātyastoma* is to be done. In Kerala this kind of readmission into the caste by performing the rite called *Vrātyastoma* is not accepted. It is said (I.3.12).

*Vrātyastomavidhānena sāvityāḥ pratyupāgamam̥
nāśāsta ityanācāro rāmakṣetra iti sthitih*

Here the importance of performing the investiture ceremony is stressed.

Wearing of the tuft of hair

Several stanzas beginning with (I. 3.13-)

“*na jañām̥ bhārgavakṣetre bibhṛyāt̥ sāṃskṛto vātūḥ*” deal with the wearing of the tuft on the head. A Brahmacārin initiated with sacred thread should not wear the tuft in Kerala. There are certain restrictions in the matter. The Smṛti goes on to categorise the Śikhā into three as *daivī*, *āśurī* and *paiśācī* and states that in South Kerala *daivī* and in North *paiśācī* are accepted by people. The length of these tufts is also mentioned on this occasion (see stanza I. 3.14-17). *Mantrāṅkam*² a manual on acting in Kerala has dealt with the topic of Śikhā and the benefits of wearing it along with its classification.

(1) *Śikhā bahuvidhā proktā
śāstre śikhīśkhopamā
Bhūsurāñām̥ nṛpāñām̥ ca
vaiśyāñām̥ pādajanmanām̥*

(Tuft is of several types and they vary according to the persons wearing it belonging to different castes like Brāhmins, kings, Vaiśyas and Śūdras)

(2) *Śoḍaśāñgulimānā cet
śikhā ceha phalapradā
dvādaśāñgulimānā cet
śikha'mutra phalapradā
saptāñgulimitā sā cet
kalatrahitakāriñi
pañcāñgulipramāñā hi
putrasampatkāri bhavet*

Tufts bearing a length of 16 *āṅgulas* give worldly prosperity, 12 *āṅgulas* give prosperity in the other world (after death), 7 *āṅgulas* give conjugal pleasure with wife and 5 *āṅgulas* give the prosperity of sons. The derivation of the word Śikhā and the significance of each syllable is given as providing peace, pleasure and bliss.

(3) *Śakāraḥ śamadaḥ proktah
ikāraḥ kāmadaḥ svayam̥
khakāro mokṣado nityam̥
sa khalvākāśavācakah*

2. *Mantrāṅkam* (in Malayalam), ed. P.K. Narayanan Nampiar, Kerala Sahitya Akademi, Trichur, 1980, pp. 23-24.

The section is concluded stating that one who does not wear a tuft is fortunate while one who has cut it is like an outcaste.

Janma, Janmin and Janmabhoga

The work has for the first time made use of certain terms indicative of the property rites like ownership of the land, rental due to the landlord and the like. In the Kerala context *Brāhmaṇins* were the landlords.

- I. 2.7 *Janmino yadi bhūdevā janmopagrahanāt kvacit*
- I. 2.8 *āgatena ca jīveyur janmabhogena karsakāt
sarve janmina etena vyākhyātā iti bhārgavah*
- I. 2.11 *jalmeti varṇayatyāsāt tatsambandhena sā ca bhūh
janmetyākhyātē tasya svāmitvam ca tadaśrayam*
- I. 2.14 *Iti janmavatām vṛttir bhārgavena nirūpita.*

In these lines certain terms like *Janmin*, *janmabhoga*, *janma* and *janmavat* are introduced. They stand for the ownership, rental from the property and other benefits accrued to the *Brāhmaṇins* who alone have the right for property. The Malayalam commentator suggests that the term '*janma*' is derived from the root "laj" which by transference of consonants becomes "jal" and "jalma" which is corrupted as "*janma*". The ascendancy among Nampūtiri *janmis* in Kerala has to be assigned to the period commencing from 12th century and when the *janmi* system came into vogue. The term '*janmideya*' also is used in the sense of *janmabhoga* in the line *janmideyāvāśiṣṭena vṛṣalo halakarṣaṇah* (I. 2.17a).

This reference to the ownership of the land is important from the point of view of history.

Only Brahmins are eligible for Vedic studies

- I. 4.1-2 states that *Brāhmaṇin* alone should study Vedas in the Kerala context.

*dvijatvamittham samprāpya sarve tenyatra dharmataḥ
śrutiṁśripti purāṇānām jāyante dhyayanakṣamāḥ.
Atropanīto bhūdeva eko dhyayanamarhati
vedabāhyāstato 'nye tu vipro gurukule vaset*

Elsewhere in India all the three upper castes, *Brāhmaṇins*, *Kṣatriyas* and *Vaiśyas* become eligible for Vedic studies after the investiture with sacred thread. Here is the prerogative of Nampūtiri *Brāhmaṇins* to study the Vedas. Here he should remain in the house of his preceptor for Vedic studies. Since the term "*brahma sāṅgam*" (I. 4.41a) occurs in the section it is implied that the study includes *Vedāṅgas* also without which the study is not complete.

CHAPTER TWO

The eldest son alone should marry

- II. 1.16 states:

*Eka eva gṛham gacche jyeṣṭha putro na cetaraḥ
bhātṛṣvekasya putreṇa sarve te syurhi putrināḥ*

The eldest son shall marry and become a householder. This is the most important among the *anācāras*. There can be two interpretations, namely, that the eldest son should marry and others may marry if they wish. In the case of the second option, the son of one brother should be considered as the son of all the other brothers. Till a few decades ago the practice also had been for the eldest son alone to marry in his caste. The other sons are to remain celibates. The second son could marry only, if after three successive marriages, the first remains issueless. The motive in framing this rule is admittedly to conserve the family property and to prevent disintegration of the wealth by partition, for even Bhārgava who permits proper marriage for younger brother within the caste, is stated to have prohibited partition of property. But it so happened in later times that the eldest married several times irrespective of the question of issue, because that became a communal necessity. The younger sons established conjugal ties with lower castes, though prohibited by this very Smṛti and enjoyed life without marital responsibilities.

Marriageable age of women

According to Smṛti it is better to marry before the girl attains puberty. In Kerala this general rule is not adhered to and even marriage is permitted after puberty. The preferable age also is mentioned in this work.

- II. 1.18

*"Kanyām vā rohiṇīm gaurīmathavā na ca madhyamām; strī tu drṣṭara-
jaskāpi rāmakṣetre na duṣyati. Kanyā is ten year old; Rohiṇī is nine years
old; and Gaurī is eight year old. Madhyamā is one who has attained puberty.
In the *Yamasmṛti* this is explained as follows³:*

*aṣṭavarṣā bhaved gaurī navavarṣā tu rohiṇī,
daśavarṣā bhaved kanyā ata ūrdhvam rajasvalā.*

3. See *Brāhadyamasmṛti*, Nag Publishers, Delhi, III 21.

The *Amarakośa*⁴ defines *madhyamā* as “*syān madhyamā drṣṭarajāḥ*”

The commentator notes that Keralites have taken advantage of this rule and keep women unmarried up to 30 and 40 years.

Uncle's daughter as bride

In South India the daughter of the uncle is considered as the most suitable girl for marriage. This is echoed in this Smṛti.

II. 2.29a

Uduhyante dākṣinātyair mātulasya sutā dvijaiḥ

A Malayalam commentary (12th century A.D.) on Kauṭalya's *Arthaśāstra* (called *Bhāṣākauṭaliyam*) explains the passage, “*svadharmād dāyādyād voparuddhah*” as follows in Malayalam⁵.

svadharmamāvitu dākṣinātyarkku mātula-kanyā vivāhādikal; dāyādāmāvitu dākṣinātyarkke tammāman dhanam marumakkal kollumatu.

The passage means that it is proper for South Indians to marry the daughter of the uncle and to inherit his wealth in the matrilineal way of inheritance. This is specifically stated among the list of 64 *anācāras* as

dāyādā bhāgineyāḥ syuṣṭeṣām naiva tu sūnavāḥ (XII. 4.25b)

II. 4.1 to 20 *Mṛtpiṇḍaparīkṣā* - test using mud balls.

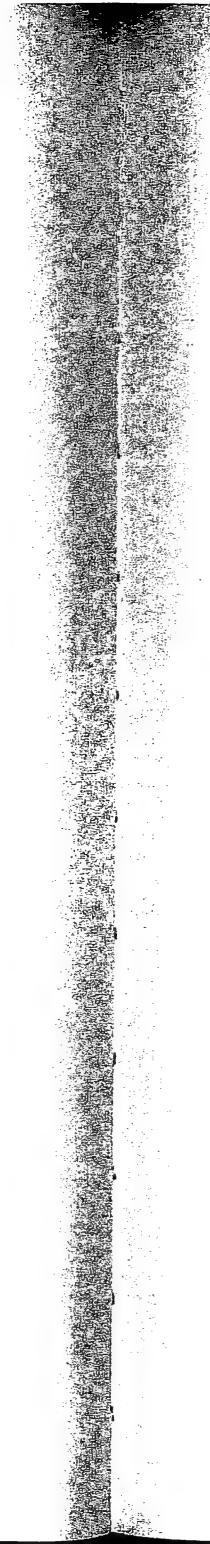
This is to test the merit of the bride.

A diagram is to be drawn on the earth consisting of 16 squares. Eight of them are made of twin columns on the four corners. Of the remaining eight, four are on the upper part and another four on the lower part. The corner columns are to be invoked as the place of divinities, leaving the eight columns for placing mud balls of which one is to be picked at random by the maiden and depending upon her random selection of her merit can be assessed.

The four mud balls placed at upper half of the diagram are indicative of good omen, while those kept in the four columns of the lower half suggest bad or unfavourable omens.

4. *Amarakośa*, kānda II, *Manusyavarga*, 8.

5. *Kauṭaliyam* (Malayalam), Kerala University, Trivandrum, 1972, PI, p. 115.



In the upper part of the diagram the four mud balls to be placed are to be made of clay collected from cattle-shed, sacrificial ground, river-bed and temple campus. The four balls for the lower part of the diagram are to be prepared from the mud of junction of four roads, marshy ground, ground trodden by pig and gravelly place.

The maiden should be made to go round the diagram thrice before picking up a ball at random.

CHAPTER THREE

After the *Darśa* and *Pūrṇamāsa* rites, the householder is to kindle the domestic fire in the house to the accompaniment of prescribed *mantras*.

III. 1.42 *mantrastatrāyamājuhvāna ityādika iṣyate udbudhyasvādiranyaśca sahapāṭhādadhodakaiḥ*

Here the particular *mantras* are indicated by *pratīkas*. For the actual *mantra* one has to look into the manuals on domestic rites prepared by the *Brāhmaṇas* of Kerala based on their respective *Grhyasūtras*. In the particular instance, the *Mantras* are⁶:

- (1) *Ājuhvānassupratīkāḥ purastādagneśvām yonimāśidasādhyā asminthasadhasthe adhyuttarsamīn viśvadevā yajamānaścasīdata.*
- (2) *Udbudhyasvāgne pratijāgrhyenamiṣṭāpūrte sāṃsṛjethā mayaṇca, punah kṛṇvānṣṭvā pitaram yuvānamanvātāmsītvay tantumetam.*

A *Brāhmaṇin* in Kerala is expected to kindle the domestic fire as part of his ritualistic life. In case this fire is extinguished for reasons beyond one's control, one is expected to make expiations. The domestic fire is called “*Aupāsanāgni*” and the one rekindled is termed “*sāṃbhārāgni*” for which 14 objects are to be made use of. This is mentioned in the stanza III 2.6-7 as follows.

6. See *Kriyāratnamālā*, ed. A.M. Krishnasarma, Panchangam Press, Kunnamkulam, Trichur, 1164 ME/1989 A.D. for details.

Pakaliyam Caṭāniū dealing with the rites of *Āśvalāyana caranas* of *Rgvedins* also describes the process of rekindling the fire (see pages 196-199), pub.: Panchangam Press, Trichur (VI edn) ME1161/A.D. 1986.

sikatāmūsaraksmākhu valmīka hradasambhavāḥ
varāhakhātajāḥ pañca mṛdaśca nalinīdalām,
sandhānīyaśilām sākhāḥ pañcāśvathī savāṇgajah
pālāśī śamījā vaikāṇkati ceti caturdaśa
aśanyāhatavrksasya śakalamca vadanti tān.

“*Kriyāratnamālā* or *Kṛṣṇajurvedīya-baudhāyanacātaññu*” gives the Malayalam version as follows:

mana, lūṣara, melippūli, puttu, nīr, panni, tāmara,
koli, yāla, ttiyum, plāśum, vahni, vayyamkātā, śani

(See English translation of the portion of the text for details)

III. 1.16a “*mantratra sapta te agne*” etc. The full text is given in *Kriyāratnamālā* as follows⁷

Sapta te agne samīdhassaptajihvāssaptarṣayassaptadhāmapriyāni.
Saptahotrāssaptandā tvāyajanti saptyonīrāpṛṇasvāgṛhṛtena svāhā.

III. 2.18a

Ādyā tantum tathodbudhyasva trayastrīmśadityapi

Here the *mantra* is as follows⁸.

tantum tannvannrajasobhānumannvihi jyotiṣmataḥ pathorakṣa-dhīyākṛtān.
Anulbaṇam vayatajoguvāmapomanubhavajanayādaivayamjam svāhā.” “Agnaye
tantumete idam na mama” “udbudhyasyāgnepratījāgrh-yenamīśāpūrte samṛ-
jethāmayanca punah kṛṇvamstvā pitaraṇ yuvānamannvā tāmsīttvayi tantu-
metam svāhā.” Agnaye tantumete idam na mama. “Trayastṛīmśattantavoyevi-
tanireya imam yajñam svadhyā dadante teṣām cchinnam pratyetad dadhāmi
svāhā”. “Trayastṛīmśattantubhya idam na mama.

III. 2.18a and 19

dvītīye manvastvagne abhyetyādistataḥ paraḥ agne’ṅgira ityeṣā,
punarūrjeti cāparah caramah saharayeti.

There the *mantras* for the second Āhuti are given as consisting of four items as follows⁹.

7. *Ibid.* p. 26.

8. *Ibid.*

9. *Ibid.* p. 27.

- (1) “*agnebhyāvarttinnabhine āvartitasvāvarcasāsannyā medhayāprajā-
yādhānana svāhā*” “*Agnaye abhyāvarttine idam na mama*”.
- (2) “*agne angiraśśataṇte santvāvṛtassahasranta upāvṛtaḥ tāśām posasya
posenapunarnno naṣṭamākṛdhi punarnno rajimākṛdhi svāhā*”.
“*agnaye abhyāvarttine idam na mama*”.
- (3) “*punarūrijānivarttasva punaragnaiśāyuṣā, punarnnah pāhi
viśvatassvātā*” “*Agnaye abhyāvarttine idam na mama*”.
- (4) “*saharayyā nivarttasvāgnevinmassvadhbārayāviśvaphsniyā-
viśvataḥ*”.

III. 2.1a

“*Trītiye yanma ityasau*”

The *mantra* for the third Āhuti is given as:

“*yanma ātmanomindābhūdagnistat punarāhārjātavedā vicarṣani
svāhā*.” “*agnaye jātavedase idam na mama*”.

III. 2.20a

“*punaragniriti tvanyasturye vyāhṛtayo matāḥ. Punarne
aśvināyuvāmcakṣurādhāttamakṣyossvāhā*”. “*Agnaye indrāya
br̥haspataye aśvibhya idam na mama*”

Altogether there are 14 oblations in the expiatory ceremony of rekindling the domestic fire of the *Brāhmaṇin* householder¹⁰.

III. 3.11

“*Pūrṇāhutim vā sarvatra tatsthāna iti bhārgavaḥ*

In *pūrṇāhuti* four *sruvas* of ghee are to be poured into a *juhū*. *Sruva* = is a small wooden ladle with a double extremity or two oval collateral excavations used for pouring clarified melted butter into the large ladle. *Juhū* is a curved wooden ladle into which four or more ladleful of ghee can be poured. Oblations are to be put in the fire to the accompaniment of *mantras*.

III. 3.22,23a

“*agna āyūmṣyathāgne pavasvāgne pāvaketi ca sa nah pāvaka ityeṣā
tathānyāgnisūci typi śubhagne śubhayaseti manojoyiśca tā ṛcāḥ*

10. *Ibid.*

Here the *mantras* for *pavamāna* rite are referred to. The full mantras are as follows¹¹:

- (1) “*agne āyūṁsi - ducchannomagne pavasva rayim mayi svāhā*” “*agnaye pavamānāya idam na mama*”
- (2) “*agne-pāvaka-yakṣicom sanah pāvaka havisvana - svāhā*” “*agnaye pāvakāya idam na mama*”
- (3) “*agniśucivaitatamah - āhutomudagne arcaya svāhā*” “*agnaye idam na mama*”
- (4) *manojyotirjuṣatāmājyam vicchinnam yajmam samimam dadhātu. Yā iṣṭa uṣasonimṛucascatassandadhāmi haviṣā gṛhṇena svāhā.*

The third chapter dwells at length on the merit of preserving the domestic fire of the householder.

CHAPTER FOUR

This section on daily bath gives a detailed account of the procedures of taking bath in Kerala. It is noted that one should clean the teeth using the mango leaves. In North India twigs of the neem tree are usually used. In other parts of India a brush is made by chewing the end of a small twig, generally of the margosa, for cleaning the teeth. The *Dharmaśāstra* works lay down a twig as this brush for the purpose and among the trees mentioned in this connection we get the banyan, madar, margosa and mango the last of which is abundant in Kerala. So the prohibition in the form of *anācāra; varjayed dantakāṣṭhāni* seems strange. The *Nampūtiris* in Kerala actually uses the mango leaves. It is ordained. (IV. 1.22b,23b) “*cūtapatrena sarvepi kuryur daśāna śodhanam; gṛhasthānāmtu sandagdhatusācūrnopi sammataḥ*”. Burnt husk is usually used by Keralites irrespective of the taste. On certain days this also should not be used and simple washing of the mouth with water alone is needed instead of brushing the teeth. In *Vyāsasmṛti* also it is ordained:

*Alābhe dantakāṣṭhasya niṣiddheśu dineśu ca
apāṁ dvādaśa gaṇḍūṣair vidadhyād dantadhāvanam*

According to Vyāsa when the twig is not available, as well as on prohibited days one should rinse the mouth taking mouthfuls of water twelve times.

Smearing of holy ashes

A *Nampūtiri Brāhmaṇi* is expected to wear a *tripuṇḍra* (three horizontal lines) with holy ashes called *Bhasma* prepared according to particular rites using cowdung. The wearing of this mark would ward off evils and sins and will act as protection. The *Smṛti* derives the word *Kṣāra* since it gives *rakṣā*.

IV. 2.27 States:

*Sarvāghabhaṅgakam bhasma yena kṣaraṇamāpadām
vidadhāti tataḥ prāhuḥ kṣāram rakṣeti kāraṇāt.*

One should also give this holy ashes to others even without a proper request, to recipients like ascetics, celibates and forest-dwellers. But in giving away the ashes one should not touch it by the hand, instead one should put it in a leaf or vessel before the guest who approach after taking bath.

The third quarter of the fourth chapter deals with the process of making holy ashes in all its details. Cowdung is the usual substance to make the ashes. The balls of cowdung after drying should be put in a sacrificial pit to the chant of *mantras*.

Mode of putting cow-dung balls into sacrificial pit

In order to make holy ashes, the dried cowdung balls have to be put into sacrificial pit to get it burnt by fire. For this process certain *mantras* are used. But since these are collected from various sources, it is not easy to trace them all. The text contains the lines. (IV. 3.22-24a)

*manur namo hiranyeti kramādētā hutīścaret
athartasatyamitekā kadrudāyeti cāparā
yasya vaikamkaśītyanyā iti tisro hutīścaret
anājñātatrāyam pañca vyāhṛtyā ca tataḥ param
iti krameṇa hutvātāḥ param sviṣṭkṛtam yajet.*

Some of the *mantras* could be traced to *Kriyāratnamālā* mentioned earlier. For instance “*namo hiranyāya*” is just an invocation to *Brahmā* - the creator (see the line of the text “*Brahmaparāstataḥ*” “*namohiranyabāhave senānnye diśāṁca pataye namah*”). “*kadrudāyeti cāparā*” of the *Smṛti* stands for the invocation to *Kadrudah* = a serpent. This is suggested by the text *nidhānapataye* where the invocation stands for lord of riches (=Kubera-a yakṣa).

11. Ibid.

The portions representing *mantras* may be traced as follows:

(1) *athartasatyamityekā*

Here the *mantra* is as follows:¹²

*Rtamcasatyamcābhīddhāttapasodhyajātaya.
tato rātrirajāyata tatassamudro arṇavah.
samudrādarṇavādadhī samvatisaro ajāyata.
ahorātrāṇī vidadhadviśvasya miṣato vaśī¹³
sūryācandramasau dhātā yathāpūrvamakalpayat
divaṇca prthivīmīcāntarikṣamathosuvah*

This *mantra* is taken from the rite called “*Baudhāyanasnāna*” described in the *Kriyāratnamālā*.

(2) *anājñātatrāyam* etc. Here the *mantra* could be as follows¹⁴
“*anājñātam devakṛtam yadenastasmāttvamasmān jātavedo
mumugdhi*”

(3) *Sviṣṭakṛtam yajet*

The *mantra* suggested here is as follows¹⁴:

*Yadasya karmano'tyārīricam yadvā nyū-
namihākaram agnisviṣṭakṛd vidvān
sarvam sviṣṭam suhutam karotu me
Agnaye sviṣṭakṛte suhutahuta āhuṭinām
kāmānām samiddhayitre svāhā.” “agnaye
sviṣṭakṛte idam na mama*

The rite is concluded with the sprinkling of holy waters. This is referred to in the *Śmṛti* as “*kṣipettadanu mūrdhni brāhmaṇesvamṛtam ityapi*” (IV 3.25b). Here again the *mantra* is taken from the “*Puṇyāha*” *mantras* of Baudhāyana school¹⁵.

*Pāvamānī svastiyānīssudughāhi gṛtaścyutah;
ṛṣibhissambhṛto raso brāhmaṇesvamṛtam hitam.*

12. *Kriyāratnamālā*, op. cit., p.110.

13. *Ibid.*, p. 108.

14. *Ibid.*, p. 15.

15. *Ibid.*, p. 7.

The sixteen *upacāras* - modes of worship

IV. 4.3 speaks of the sixteen *upacāras* as follows:

*athopacārān kurvīta vyāhṛtyāvāhanādikān
śoḍāśāpi krameṇaiva tatogniṇupasamharet*

Before picking up the balls of cowdung burnt by the sacrificial fire, the worship of the pit involving 16 modes of worship is to be performed. These are enumerated in the *Isānāśivagurudevapaddhati* of Isānadeva (13th century A.D.)¹⁶ as follows:

*āsanāvāhanārghyādi pādyamācamanīyakam
sāṅgopāṅgam tathā snānam vasanābharaṇāni ca
gandhāḥ puṣpāṇi tathā dhūpo dīpaścarunivedanam
agnikāryam namaskārō japaṇūjāsamarpāṇam
iṭīśodasadhoddiṣṭā hyupacārāḥ samāsataḥ*

The sixteen items are inumerated by another authority as¹⁷:

*Āsanām svāgatām pādyamarghyamācamanīyakam
madhuparkācamasnānam vasanābharaṇāni ca
gandhapuṣpe dhūpadīpau naivedyām vandanām tathā*

The items are, *āsanām*, *svāgataṁ*, *pādyām*, *arghyām*, *ācamanīyām*, *ma-*
dhuparkām, *punarācamanīyām*, *snānam*, *vastrām*, *ābharaṇām*, *gandham*,
puṣpām, *dūpām*, *dīpām*, *nivedyām* and *namaskāram*. Thus the worship in-
volves the invocation of the deity to grace the seat, offering of oblation, giving
of water for washing the feet, bathing the deity and adorning with garments
and ornaments, offering of flowers and incenses, giving usual oblation and
modes of worship.

“*anorāṇīyātīdi*” IV. 4.8a

While making holy ashes and mixing the powder with camphor etc., the
hymn “*anorāṇīyān*” is to be chanted. The passage is from *Kaṭhapaniṣat*¹⁸.

*anorāṇīyān mahato mahīyān
ātmāya jantor nihito guhāyām
tamakratuh paṣyati vītaśoko
dhātuh prasādānmaḥimānāmātmanaḥ*

16. Ed. T. Ganpati Sastri, Reprinted with elaborate introduction by Dr. N.P. Unni, Bharatiya Vidya Prakashan, Delhi, 1990 in 4 Vols; Vol. I Paṭala VIII stanzas 5-7.

17. See *Sanskrit-English Dictionary* by Apte.

18. *Kaṭhapaniṣat*, I. 1.20.

CHAPTER FIVE

The first quarter of the chapter begins with the enumeration of the 16 rites applicable to the three upper castes with the accompaniment of *mantras*. The rites enumerated here are: *seka*, *pūmsavana*, *śimanta*, *jātakarma*, *nāma-karaṇa*, *niṣkrāmaṇa*, *annaprāśana*, *cūḍākarma*, *karnavedha*, *upanayana*, *vedārambha*, *godāna*, *samāvarttana*, *vivāha*, *aupsānāginsvīkara* and *agnyād-hāna*. Only the higher strata of *Brāhmaṇas* perform all these, others omitting some of them according to convenience.

Kerala manuals on domestic rituals give the list as follows¹⁹:

ādhānam tanayasya pūmsavavidhiḥ śimantajātāhvayau
niṣkrāmo'nnavidhiḥ kṣuropanayane triṇi vratāni kramāt
godānam ca samāpanam vratavidheḥ pāṇigraho'gnyāhutī
viprāder vihitā śrūtāu nigaditāḥ kāryāḥ kriyāḥ sōdaśa

Iṣṭāpūrta

V. 3.13a states

Iṣṭāpūrte tu yatnena kartavye grhamedhinā

A householder is expected to perform *Iṣṭāpūrta* rites. *Iṣṭa* stands for agnivatra, penance, adherence to truth, protection of the Vedas, receiving of guests and performance of Vaiśvadeva sacrifice. *Pūrta* stands for digging of wells and ponds, making of receptacles of water or troughs to give water to cattles, creation of watersheds on the roads for the sake of weary travellers, building of temples and other such institutions. By the act of *Iṣṭa* one reaches heaven while *Pūrta* leads to salvation. In the context details are given by the author of *Śāṅkarasmṛti*. He also mentions the merit accrued by the giving away of gifts. It is maintained that one should give away ten per cent of one's income by way of donations.

V. 3.db speaks of *duṣpratigraha* - receiving bad gifts and the resultant sin. This needs expiations. Such a person should give away a series of gifts in particular months to free himself from the hold of sin. By such acts the sin will be destroyed. It is said "duṣpratigrahaṇam pāpam tair vilumped grhāśrami" (V.4.16a).

19. *Kriyāratnamālā*, p. 14.

CHAPTER SIX

VI. 1.1a *Pañcasūrā grhasthasya*

Five things in a house cause accidental death of animals without intention. They are the fireplace, slab for grinding condiments, broom, pestle and mortar and waterpot. To avoid sin thus caused the householder should perform *pañcayajña* - the five religious acts, which are enumerated as *deva-bhūta-piṭṛ* - *brahma* - *nṛyajñas* which mean sacrifice for gods, oblations to manes, offering of rice-balls to departed ones, performance of religious studies and receiving of guests. Almost all *Smṛtis* and *Dharmaśātras* mention this.

adhyāpanam brahmajyajñah, piṭyajñastu tarpaṇam
homo daivo balirbhauto nṛyajñotithipūjanam

VI. 1.30a *adṛṣṭarajasam kanyāmdadyādeva prayatnataḥ*

A girl should be married away before she attains puberty. Otherwise the householder attains the sin equal to *bhrūnahatyā* - killing an embryo or causing abortion. Dowry also should be given according to one's ability and means. If one could help one should not keep a maiden in his house after her attaining puberty "naivartumatīm tām sthāpayed gṛhe" (VI. 2.32b).

VI. 2.22 *Stresses the importance of having a son*

punnāmanarakādyasmāt trāyate' to 'bhidhiyate
putra ityauraso jātyā dattō mantraprabhāvataḥ

If one is not able to beget a son one should at least adopt a son legally involving proper rites. A son saves the departed ones from the hell called 'put'. *Manusmṛti* IX.138 states:

punnāmno narakādyasmāttrāyate pitaram sutāḥ
tasmat putra iti proktāḥ svayameva svayaṁbhuvā

VI. 3.26

na vinā patim, paśyet somam vasiṣṭham ca,
sarvathā na tvarundhatīm

A wife should not see moon, stars of Vasiṣṭha and Arundhatī without the company of her husband. Here it may be noted that looking at Arundhatī is a

rite included in the marriage ceremony. The *mantra* enjoined for the purpose is as follows²⁰:

saptarṣayāḥ prathamāṁ kṛttikānāmarundhatīṁ
yadhruvatāṁ hananyuḥ ṣaṭkṛttikāḥ mukhyayogam
vanyamasmākamedhatvaṣṭamityarundhatī

The husband is to show the stars Dhruva and Arundhatī as a part of the marriage ritual.

Vasiṣṭha stands for the stellar constellation known as the great Bear, while Arundhatī represents the morning star personified as the wife of Vasiṣṭha, one of the Pleiades, the little and scarcely visible star Alcor.

VI. 4.9

avyaktavarṇamadhuair vacanair dhūlidhūsaraiḥ
aṅgairāṅkādhirūḍhasya tanayasya mrduśmitaiḥ
dinānyutsavakalpāni prayānti grhamedhināṁ

The description of the innocent child speaking incoherent words and climbing the lap of the parents is attractive and it reminds the following situation of Śākuntala of Kālidāsa (VII. 17).

ālakṣyadantamukulānanimittahāsair
avyaktavarṇaramaṇiyavacalpravṛttīn
aṅkāśrayapraṇayinastanayān vahanto
dhanyāstadarāgarajasā malinibhavanti

This is translated by Monier Williams as under: "How blessed the virtuous parents whose attire is soiled with dust by raising from the ground, the child that asks a refuge in their arms, and happy are they with lisping prattle, in accent sweetly inarticulate, he charms their ears; and with his artless smiles gladdens their hearts, revealing to their gaze his pearly teeth just budding into view."

20. *Ibid.*, p. 99.

CHAPTER SEVEN

VII. 1.26b

gartāṅkaṇasya nyastābhīḥ pṛṇayed grhiṇī śuciḥ

VII. 1.30a

Catuśśālāntare Śūdrām vāsayettu pṛthag grhe

Catuśśālā is a combination of four ekaśālās with or without the corner śālas, a structure with halls on four sides around a central courtyard which is referred to here as *gartaṅkaṇa* which is about 2 feet below the level of the side-halls. In local language Malayalam such a house is called "Nālukettū" - having four halls and the central courtyard called "Naṭumittam" which is referred to here as *gartāṅkaṇa*. It is said in some stanzas (VII. 1.21b and 22) that the courtyard should not be polluted by water used for washing the hands, water used for gargling and water used for washing the feet, except in the case of a Brāhmaṇ whose acts do not pollute the courtyard. Brāhmaṇ houses in Kerala are of this type called Nālukettū or *Catuśśālā* meaning a quadrangular building.

VII. 2.25b,26a

Samrakṣet sa catuṭhaścet sthālipāko'sya niskṛtiḥ
kartavyaḥ pavamānākhyastatra jāte yathoditam

Sthālipāka - particular religious act performed by a householder.

Pavamāna is one of the sacred fires and used for *sthālipāka* rites.

Here the purificatory rite is necessitated where the *grhyāgni* is polluted by the touch of cats and other animals or by the proximity of the low caste referred to here as *Caturtha*. The procedures of *sthālipāka* and *pavamāna* are described in manuals of *grhya* rituals²¹.

VII. 3.1 to 5 Pollution by proximity

In this section it is said that members of the different community should keep away from the sacred fire. They should remain at a particular distance lest the fire becomes polluted. The distance at which a Śūdra and washerman

21. *Ibid.*, p. 129.

should remain is six feet, but a Śūdra in the service of the Brāhmaṇa shall approach up to a distance of their feet. Thus the distance to be maintained is enumerated as three feet to sixty-four feet for the outcaste. If this distance is crossed the fire should be purified by expiatory rites.

Brāhmaṇābhāsas - Brāhmaṇins who have no right to study the Vedas (VII. 3.11) too could pollute the sacred fire by touching it.

Another feature of Kerala is that one may require to travel by canoes – or country boats – to different places since there are more than forty-five rivers flowing to the Arabian sea from the Western Ghats. After marriage the bridegroom has to carry the fire to his residence, usually located on the banks of some river. This is described in a stanza.

VII. 3.12

*naukāyāne tu grhyāgnimuttarottaramāhite
trītye bhājane nyasya naukām śūdrena vāhayet*

In such cases there should be three pots or vessels of which only the third should touch the canoe. In this vessel there should be two more kept inside and the innermost one should contain the sacred fire in the form of ember. Thus after avoiding the touch of ember with the canoe a Śūdra may paddle the boat.

śrīgagrāhikayā naite sarve bodhayitum kṣamāḥ (VII. 3.24b)

Śrīgagrāhikā: taking by the horns, i.e., in a direct manner, directly or without any intervening agent.

VII. 4.2a

yāpayed saha dāsibhiḥ sacchatrāvaraṇām bahiḥ

A Nampūtiri woman should go out of the house only in the company of her personal maid and that too covering most of her body with a palmyrah umbrella. This is called *maṭakkuta*, an umbrella carried as a screen by high-caste women. When a lady is banished from the caste she should no more carry this umbrella screening the body. A Brāhmaṇin lady should not wear ring on toes or anklets.

VIII. 4.20.b

strīṇām cārītraśuddhau tu loko'yam sampratiṣṭhitah

The Smṛti considers chastity as the highest virtue of women especially in



Kerala. That country where chastity is ignored will go to dogs and the ruler will be in utter darkness. This being the case it is the duty of the husband that the wife remains chaste and satisfied in her requirements, both biological and ethical. Though this may apply to all places it is of highest importance in the land of Paraśurāma.

CHAPTER EIGHT

Smārtavicāra - One of the most important topics of the Smṛti, the examination of chastity by Smārtas is dealt with in the first quarter of the chapter. The various proceedings from the first allegation up to the judgement is detailed in the work based on contemporary evidence. This was in vogue in Kerala and we have several such accounts both in Malayalam and English by the victims of this practice which is rather harsh. "The Last Smārthavichāra" by late A.M.N. Chakiar is a study in practice, himself being a victim of this procedure prevalent in a principality or country, the former State of Cochin²².

Some historians of Kerala like V. Nagam Aiya has recorded the proceedings of this examination as follows²³:

"The Smārta Vichāram or the system of enquiring into sexual offences prevalent among the Nambūtiris is one of the most important of their institutions and perhaps one of the most cruel. The Nambūtiri women are guarded with more than Moslem jealousy. They are kept in strictest Ghosha. Among other virtues chastity is reckoned as of the highest importance, the least suspicion either in man or woman entailing loss of caste, social position and separation from the family. The enquiry into these cases among the Nambūtiris is conducted by the Smārta and hence the name of the caste trial itself.

The moment a Nambūtiri woman is suspected of adultery, the caste neighbours should be informed of the same by the master of the house and they should be guided by no considerations of personal affection or public policy. The person suspecting may happen to be the father, brother, mother or son of the suspected victim and the consequence of betrayal may be ruinous to the family means and reputation, but no attempt is made by anyone at con-

22. A.M.N. Chakiar, *The Last Smārthavichāra*, Trippunithura, Cochin, 1998.

23. V. Nagam Aiya, *Travancore State Manual* (in 3 vols), 1906; reprinted, Asian Educational Services, New Delhi, 1989, pp. 272-274.

cealment, and the master of the house is at once intimated of the suspicion, who is no less bound to communicate it to the community at large and await its decision. Such is the Nambūdīri's simplicity, the love of truth and regard for personal honour. The suspected woman is transferred to a separate shed called *Añchāmpura*²⁴, in the compound itself but apart from the main building, and all the persons implicated in the crime are placed under interdict. A preliminary enquiry called *Dāśivichāram*²⁵ is held by the woman's male relations together with the Brāhmins of the neighbourhood who interrogate the *Dāśi* or maid-servant attached to the suspected woman. This concluded, the matter is laid before the king whose sanction has to be obtained before beginning a *Smārta Vichāram*. A fee of sixty-four fanams or Rs. 9 has to be sent in along with the application for sanction, which fee is credited to the treasury of Sri Padmanābhaswamy, as whose deputy or vassal, the Travancore Mahārājā is supposed to rule. A committee of enquiry or Panchayat is then appointed consisting of a Smārta or judge, two *Mimāṃsakars* (persons versed in law), one *Akakkoyimma* (regulator of order at the trial) and one *Purakkoyimma* (who is the representative of the sovereign)²⁶. In all parts of Malabar except Travancore, one of the recognised six Vaidikans has to accompany the Smārta to the place of enquiry which is generally the neighbouring village temple²⁷, and the Smārta merely conducts the enquiry as the deputy of the Vaidikan, but in Travancore where there is no Vaidikan, the Smārta's authority is supreme. The *Mimāṃsakars* are Nambūdīris well-versed in the law and are selected by the Smārta himself to help him in the enquiries. The *Akakkoyimma* or village chieftain holds his appointment by heredity, while the *Purakkoyimma* was formerly the Mahārājā himself, but now his deputy, generally a Taluq or Village officer.

On the day appointed the Smārta begins the formal investigation. The procedure is thus. The Smārta presumes nothing against the suspected female but on the contrary he does not even know that the suspected woman is confined in the out-house and proposes to go over there. But at the entrance he is prevented by the maid-servant who stands at the door and tells him that her mis-

24. Śāṅkarasmṛti, VIII 1.4 states,
grhīṇīm pañcāme veśmanyupaveśya nivāsayet.

25. Ibid., VIII. 1.3.
sādhvīr dāsīr prthaṇṇītvā tisraistairanuyojayet.

26. Ibid., Stanzas 7 and 8.
nrpo'tha caturair dūtairānāya parinīthitān
mimāṃsakāśca smārtām ca preṣayet tad grhāṇ prati
vīprām ca svapratīnidhiṇ vastrām darvāvagunṭhakām.
27. Ibid., VIII. 1.10.
devālāye vā yat satyam tatprakāśanatatparāḥ.

tress is inside. The Smārta expresses surprise and demands an explanation, when he is told that such and such a woman being accused of adultery is placed in the room. The accused, who is strictly ghosha, is questioned through the maid-servant and by repeated interrogations, the enquiry lasting for several days, she is made to confess her guilt. It is not always easy to extract a confession and a verdict of guilty can be passed only on the accused giving a circumstantial confession of her guilt, which is usually brought about by the novel position she is placed on, the scanty food allowed her, the fatiguing and minute examination, to which she is subjected, and the entreaties of all her relatives and generally by the expostulation and promises of the Smārta who advises her that it is best for her to confess her crime. Once the confession is obtained, the rest is easy. The woman is at once outcasted. She is thereafter considered as dead to the family and her funeral ceremonies are performed. The other members of the family then perform certain *Prāyaścittam* or expiatory ceremonies as prescribed by the Vādhyān and with the usual purificatory ceremonies, a *Śuddhabhojanam*²⁸ feast is held in token of the purification of the family, to which the members of the committee as well as other Brāhmins are invited, and this closes the ceremony. It has to be mentioned that all males who have been proved to be implicated in the offence are also outcasted. In all these cases the decision of the Smārta or judge is publicly proclaimed by a foreign *Pattar* Brāhmin (no Nambūdīri would do it for any consideration). This enquiry is a most expensive affair; during the whole course of the trial which vary often, takes great length of time, the master of the house has to feed the committee of enquiry and as a result suspected families are generally ruined whether the enquiry ends in conviction or acquittal."

K.P. Padmanabha Menon in his work on Kerala history²⁹ has given a more detailed account of the *Smārtha Vichāra* partly based on Śāṅkarasmṛti and partly based on other historical sources and personal knowledge. Hence his account is worth looking into in detail. Dealing with the topic of adultery among the Brāhmin caste he makes his observations as follows:

"The purity of the race is so jealously and rigidly guarded that the least suspicion as regards the conduct of a Nambūdīri woman forms the subject of elaborate and rigorous enquiry. The Śāṅkarasmṛti says that the whole world rests in the chaste conduct of women, and the country where Brāhmin women are not chaste cannot claim to be properly governed. So the Raja should al-

28. Ibid., VIII 1.36
sabhyāssamānābhijanaissa bhuñjīyureva te.

29. K.P. Padmanabha Menon, *History of Kerala* (in 4 vols), Reprinted by Asian Educational Services, New Delhi, 1984, Vol. III, pp 108-113.

ways be on the lookout for suspects and punish them severely. The enquiry is conducted by the Smārta, and hence the term *Smārta Vichāram*. No consideration whatever would deter a Nambūtiri, where once his suspicion is aroused, from courting a formal enquiry into the conduct of a female member of his family, however dear, or however closely she may be related to him. The Smṛti ordains that he should at once go with his Vādhyān to his relatives, and call their attention, to his suspicions. He should then bring home with him the Vādhyān, 5 or 6 *Enaingers* (clansmen) who are truthful, well-versed in sifting the matter, and arriving at the truth, and who have persuasive tongue. These at first interrogate three of the Nayar maids attending the Illam, who may be expected to know what transpires in the house, and who may be expected to speak out the truth. This preliminary enquiry is called *Dāśivichāram*. If by this enquiry the suspicion is found to be well-grounded, the suspect is at once removed to a shed outside the *Nālukettu* or quadrangle, it is called *Añchāmpura*, i.e. the fifth house. If there is not a permanent building available, a temporary shed is raised with green-thatch roofing and therefore called *Paccholappura*. The subject is thence forward not called by her name or as *Antarjanam*, but is known an Sādhanam or "The thing" or "article".

After that the Gr̥hastha, accompanied by his *Enaingers* and others, goes before the reigning sovereign and lays before him his suspicions. He should say "O, sovereign, pray do all that is necessary to be done to relieve me from this difficulty, and protect *Dharma*" (justice, religion etc.). Upon this the Rājā should appoint a Smārta (judge) and four *Mimāṃsakas* or men learned in the law. The Rājā should also send a Brāhmaṇ to represent the sovereign, who should be supplied with a cloth with which he has to cover his head and face when sitting at the enquiry (VIII. 1.8). At present this latter office is known as *Koyma*. There are two classes of *kōymas*, the *Akakoya* (whose office is hereditary), and the *Purakoya* (who is appointed for the time being). The business of the former is to preserve order within, and of the latter to watch the whole enquiry as the deputy of the sovereign. The *Mimāṃsakas* frame the questions and communicate them to the Rājā's deputy and the Smārta in private. This should be done from outside the house, say, at the nearest pagoda. Their one object should be to arrive at the truth (Śloka 9 to 10). The Smārta should after he has fully understood and grasped the importance of the questions framed, proceed to the house along with the Rājā's deputy and the gr̥hastha. He should in the meanwhile pray to the sun and moon, who are ever witnesses to all the thoughts of men, whether good or evil, as also of all that transpires in this, mundane sphere, to cause the truth of the matter to be disclosed and demonstrated. It would appear that at present in Travancore alone the Smārta conducts the enquiry, while outside that state

one of the six Vaidikas accompanies the Smārta expresses surprise that a lady of the house should be confined there, and asks the reason why. This leads to the examination which with scrupulous respect to the ghosha observances of the class, is at first conducted through the maid, and the "suspect" is made to admit that there is a charge against her. This is the first point to be gained, for nothing further can be done in the matter until the accused herself has made this admission. This point however is not easily gained and the Smārta has often to appeal to her own feelings and knowledge of the world and asks her to recollect how unlikely it would be that an *Antarjanam* of her position should be turned out of her house and placed in the *Añchāmpura* unless there was some cause for. The Smārta sits in the adjoining room, so that neither the judge nor the 'suspect' can see each other, though they can hear each speak. The "suspect" sits near the door and the Smārta puts the questions prepared by the *Mimāṃsakas*. Meanwhile the Rājā's deputy sits by the side of the Smārta with his head and face covered, paying particular attention to the questions and answers. If he finds the questions are not put properly, he should at once drop the cover. This will draw the attention of the Smārta and he should proceed to repeat the questions which the *Mimāṃsakas* had instructed him to ask. When the Rājā's deputy finds that the question are properly put, he should cover his head and face again. The answers received should be carefully stored in memory and communicated to the *Mimāṃsakas* in the presence of the Rājā's deputy who should act in the same manner as at the enquiry with regard to the answers. The process should be continued till the innocence is proved, or the 'guilt' of the suspect is brought home to her. If she admits the guilt, the purdah is removed, and the suspect appears before the judge. Otherwise, till she gives a circumstantial confession, the questioning in camera will go on (Stanzas 13 to 19). Often the enquiry is an expensive one, as it lasts for days and days together, and the gr̥hastha has to maintain the whole judiciary staff. It is not enough to confess guilt. She should point out all her paramours, if there be more than one. She should be particularly asked who the first partaker in her guilt was, and then the 2nd, 3rd and so on. She should herself give out the names. Often the questions degenerate into indelicate and obscene forms, yet they have to be asked. The Smārta communicates the result of his interrogation to the *Mimāṃsakas*. All of them should then go in a body to the Rājā's deputy and the *Mimāṃsakas* should carefully watch that the Smārta makes a correct report. If he goes wrong, the *mimāṃsakas* should set him right. The Rājā's deputy should report to his master if the Smārtas or *Mimāṃsakas* have in any way misconducted themselves. The "suspect" who has now been thus found guilty, after having made a full circumstantial and voluntary confession should be "sent not" with the clapping of hands (stanza 19 to 20).

In former days, when the servant accused her mistress and there was other evidence forthcoming, but the accused did not confess, various modes of torture were resorted to in order to extract a confession, such as rolling up the accused in piece of matting and letting the bundle fall from the roof to the courtyard below. This was done by women, and the mat supplied the place of the purdah. At other times live rat-snakes and other vermin were turned into the room beside her, and even in certain cases cobras, and it is said that if, after having been with the cobra a certain length of time, and she was unhurt, the fact was accepted as conclusive evidence of her innocence³⁰. When the enquiry is closed, and the party has assembled at the village temple, the guardian of the woman appears before them and makes his obeisance. The Smārta then recounts the whole course of enquiry and solemnly pronounces sentence of excommunication. The proceedings then assume a sad and serious aspect. The assembly comes outside the temple and a Paṭṭar Brāhmaṇi i.e., one of the East Coast, in a stentorian voice repeats the substance of the charge and the sentence awarded. A man from the assembled crowd steps forward and snatches her umbrella with which Nambūtiri ladies screen themselves when going out, as she is no longer worthy to carry it, she has also to divest herself of the brass bracelets worn on her arms. The Dāsi or maid, who has hitherto attended her always, is ordered to leave her, and the Smārta claps his hands and the assembly joins him in this, in token of her being turned out of caste. He who was hitherto her guardian leaves her, and the Smārta hands her over to the *Purakōyam*, or the representative of the sovereign. From this moment she is considered dead and the family performs her funeral rites. She becomes in future to them even less than if she had died. Indeed, if she happens to die in the course of the enquiry, the proceedings go on as if she were still alive and they are formally brought to a conclusion the usual manner by a verdict of guilty or of acquittal against the men implicated. The members of her family have then to perform certain penances or *Prāyaścittams*, expiatory ceremonies, as prescribed by the Vaidikan. After this a *Śuddhabhojanam*, or feast is given in token of purification, at which the members of the enquiring committee as well as the other Brāhmaṇins sit with the members of the family and take their meals. This brings the matter to a close. Similar ceremonies had also to be performed in the families of her partners in guilt, who are also excommunicated. Everyone of them, except the one who, according to the woman's statement was the first to lead her astray, has a right to be admitted to the "boiling ghee ordeal" as administered at the temple of Śucindram in Travancore.

30. Logan, *Malabar*, p. 123.

If his hand is burnt, he is guilty; if it comes out clean, he is judged as innocent. The order for submission to the ordeal is called a *pampu* and is granted by the president (Smārta) of the Tribunal. Since this form of ordeal at Śucindram has been abolished by the Travancore Sirkar, and all forms of ordeals, put a stop to by all the governments, a *pampu* is no more of any use.

This "ghee ordeal" is described in the *Śukasandeśa* of Lakṣmīdāsa (I. 37), a 13th century A.D. message poem of Kerala as follows:

Śuddhisthānam kila bhagavatastacchucindram mahendra-
syāsevethāḥ prathitamavananu mandirān candramauleḥ
yasmīnnadyāpi ca sadasatoh karmanoḥ sūkṣmayorā-
pyālakṣyante bhūvi tanubhṛtāmātmaḥaste phalāni

(Set your eyes upon Śucindram, the world famous abode of Lord Śiva (the moon-crested one) where, it is said that Indra himself was purified; the results of human actions, good or bad however subtle, are observed on the hands of men")

This ordeal is called the "Kaimukku ordeal" in which the guilty is expected to dip his hands into boiling ghee and is asked to take a metal replica of a bull. This is mentioned by Mānaveda, the author of the *Vilāśinī* commentary on the message poem as follows³¹:

anenāgamyāgamanādidoṣasandehaniṣṭyartham yatra tatrājyastha
vṛṣabhadharaṇena mithyāvādinām haste śyāmikā, satyavādināṁtu
viśuddhiśca dṛṣyate ityanubhava uktah

The hand after dipping into the boiled ghee before the flagstaff at the temple at an appointed time is covered with leaves and opened only the next day. If one is guilty the hand exhibits the signs of burning with black marker.

There are copies of such orders available in native records in which one is asked to submit to such an ordeal. There are details as to how the lady was maintained by the king after her excommunication from the society³². She is provided with a hut near a river and provisions for her living supplied from time to time just enough to maintain her life. This order is communicated to different authorities to take care of the situation.

Before closing this section on *Smārtavicāra*, we have to examine the

31. *Śukasandeśa* of Lakṣmīdāsa with *Vilāśinī* commentary, ed. Dr. N.P. Unni, Nag Publishers, Delhi, 1985, p. 33.

32. K.P. Padmanabha Menon, op.cit Vol. III, p. 114.

views of one of the most authoritative sources. Kāṇippayyūr Śāṅkaran Nampūtirippād in his reminiscences has dealt with the topic from his own experience and that of his contemporaries in a historical and academic spirit³³. According to him a *Smārtavicāra* consists of six stages as follows: (1) *Dāśīvicāra*, (2) putting the culprit (referred to as *sādhanam*) in *Añchāmpura* (a fifth room), (3) *Smārtavicāram*, (4) *Svarūpam collal* and (5) *Udakavicchedam* and (6) *Śuddhabhojanam*. Since these procedures have already been discussed in the above pages these are not dealt with here. The fourth item called “*svarūpam collal*” is the judgement and the arguments leading to it.

Kāṇippayyūr has stated that during his lifetime there were five instances of *Smārtavicāram*. In the first there were 65 people and in the second 15 people involved. In the three other cases only one each culprit was involved. In these one of the judgement was of acquittal. He has also cited a *pampu* recommending “*kaimukku*” at Śucindram temple. If one is found innocent at this ghee ordeal she was given a certificate called *Śuddhapatram*. Kāṇippayyūr states that the *Kaimukku* ordeal at Śucindram temple was stopped by Government in the year 1036 M.E./A.D. 1861³⁴.

VIII. 1.10b

sākṣināḥ sūryacandrādīn prārthayanto dhṛtvratāḥ

This refers to the eternal witnesses of all action in the universe enumerated in the oft quoted stanza occurring in *Mahābhārata*, *Pañcatantra* and many other authoritative sources.

*Ādityacandrāvanilānalau ca
dyaur bhūmirāpo hrdayaṇ yamaśca
ahaśca rātriśca ubhe ca sandhye
dharmaśca jānāti narasya vṛttam*

(Sun and moon, wind and fire, heaven, earth and water, the heart and yama, day and night, both twilights and justice are acquainted with the conduct of man). This oath is taken before all auspicious things are begun. It is after taking this oath that the ghee ordeal and similar tests are carried out.

33. Kāṇippayyūr Śāṅkaran Nampūtirippād, *Ente Smaranakal* (in Malayalam meaning my reminiscences) Panchangam Book Dept., Trichur (II edn, 1166 ME/1941 A.D.), pp. 115-144.

34. *Ibid.*, p. 141.

VIII. 1.30a

Kālajāṁstu yathākālamadhah kuryādyathāśrutam

The children born after the date of adultery are referred to as “*Kālajāḥ*” – born after the period of guilt. In Malayalam they are referred to as “*Kālattil pettavar*” – those who come under the period of guilt.

It is the practice in Kerala that those men who are under the cloud of guilt, if initiated already with the sacred thread are included under the caste of Cākyār and the women are included among the caste of Nampiars the respective traditional functions of these community of temple servants are to perform *Kūttu* and *Kūtiyāttam* and to play at *Milāvu* - the drum³⁵. We have an actual instance in this matter as exemplified by the case of A.M.N. Chakiar, the author of the work *The Last Smārtavichāra*³⁶. In this work the author himself has admitted that he was born and brought up as a Nampūtiri Brāhmaṇ. In the preface to the work Mr. Chakiar has observed that “I was born of Nampūtiri parents in a Nampūtiri Illom and I lived as a Nampūtiri for about eleven years. One February morning 1918, I was told by the community that I was no longer a Nampūtiri, but a Chakiar.” He continues his heart-rending experience as follows³⁷: “I was given the name Neelakantan after the Chakiar with that name who performed my adoption farce. A new born child had no voice, literally or figuratively, in the choice of his name, but here I was old enough to protest and say: «I have already a name which my father had given me and let me at least retain that name». But my voice failed to prevail. Thus it was how Nedumparampil Illattu Cheriya Krishnan Nampūtiri’s son, Krishnan Nampūtiri became Ayiniyil Muriṅgothu Neelakanta Chakiar, A.M.N. Chakiar for short”³⁸. He was also required to perform a *kūttu* in Muthukulangara temple, Eroor under the strict supervision of his tormentor and he actually went through the movements for a short while before an audience of a single person, none other than one of the Smārtans. The girl in question who caused all these commotion that destroyed an illustrious family of Nampūtiri Brāhmaṇ was Thātri. When Thātri was cast out, a Muslim was allowed to take her to Vadanappalli in South Malabar, where she lived with him but not for long. The weight of grief and remorse must have shortened her life³⁹.

35. *Ibid.*, pp. 141-42.

36. A.M.N. Chakiar, *op. cit.*

37. *Ibid.*, preface p.v.

38. *Ibid.*, pp. 112-113.

39. *Ibid.*, pp. 144-145.

This Smārta enquiry of Kuriyedathu Thātri wife of Rāman Nampūthiri was held in the Cochin State in 1905. There are records containing the name of all the 66 persons (males) accused. We have an account or rather reference to the procedure given by the Western writer. Mr. Francis Day, a civil surgeon of British Cochin and Medical Officer to the Maharājā of Cochin, was a resident of the State for two years. He has recorded his memoirs in a significant book entitled: *The Land of the Perumals or Cochin, its, past and present*⁴⁰. He has given detailed information on many customs and manners of the region. Referring to the *Smārtavicāra* – without mentioning the term – he gives the following information. “They are not unfrequently expelled from their caste, for heinous, and even trivial offences; the ceremonies which are elsewhere employed on this occasion, are here unpractised. A Namboorie woman who is sentenced to lose her caste, is sent to Tripooiterah, where a stage is erected, on which she stands holding an umbrella over her head. The Dellawah then reads the sentence to the assembled people, declares her expelled from her caste, and taking her umbrella, breaks its stick in two pieces. Persons willing to take the woman may now do so, on giving a written promise, to support her whilst she lives.”

VIII. 1.33b

asūnyavate vidhāyāmbuvicchedam tān grhādbahih

Here one is treated as dead once the guilt is established. As far as they are concerned, they are treated as dead. An authority describes the feature in his reminiscences as follows⁴¹: “As in the case of offering libation, water should be poured thrice pronouncing the name of the culprit to the chant of *mantras*. Suppose the girl belongs to Kaśyapa gotra and her name is Pārvati, the *mantra* should be like “*Kāśyapagotre pārvatide udakam karomi*”. In the case of the offender the name of the girl should be replaced with his name as “*Parameśvaraśarman*”. The three libations indicate that he is banished from the house, village and the country.

VIII. 1.29a

avṛtyā naiva yuñjita tām bhraṣṭāmapi pārthivah

Even though the lady is outcasted she should be provided with means of subsistence. In this connection Government Order No. C.N. 1230 of 80 of 5th July 1905 from the Sarvādhi Kāryakkār (Secretary to H.H. the Rājā of

40. Francis Day, *Madras*, 1863; reprinted, Asian Educational Services, New Delhi, 1990.

41. Kānippayyūr, *op. cit.*, p. 127.

Cochin)⁴² contains the lines - “As it has been the custom to lodge such *sādhanam* in a secluded locality by the side of a river and give her sustenance and maintain her till her death, the above-mentioned *sādhanam* is sent under custody of policemen, who have instruction to take her to a place near the *Ūttupura* (Choultry or Brāhmaṇ feeding house at Chalakkudi, leave her there and come away. Conveyances should be arranged for the *sādhanam* and the Police constables and maidservants who escort her, to proceed from here to Chalakkudi. Their feeding at Chalakkudi *Ūttupura* should also be arranged for. As soon as the *sādhanam* reaches Chalakkudi, she should be lodged in a house, if there is one close by. Otherwise a house should be built of mud walls and bamboo roofing with door and lock, and she should be lodged therein, with no opportunity to have any sort of intercourse with anyone. She should be given one measure of rice with the necessary accompaniments daily for the rest of her life from the Chalakkudi *Ūttupura*”.

The statement of Śāṅkarasmṛti may be seen put into practice in the above account of an actual instance which took place as late as 1905 A.D. It is noted that the Rājā later ruled that the persons named by the woman should also be called on to defend themselves. They are allowed to cross-examine the woman and produce such evidence as they deem necessary, though no representation by council is allowed⁴³.

VIII. 2.3a

janmamātreṇa śūdrāste dvijatvam karmanirmitam

The Smṛti here proclaims the dictum that “*janmanā jāyate śūdraḥ karmanā jāyate dvijah*” proclaimed in many authoritative texts. But in Kerala a Śūdra woman should not feed breast-milk to a Brāhmaṇ child by birth. Further a Brāhmaṇ woman who has come into contact with a Śūdra lady should take a bath and purify herself before feeding her child. (VIII. 2.4)

42. K.P. Padmanabha Menon, Vol. III, p. 114.

43. *Ibid.*, p. 116.

CHAPTER NINE

IX. 1.6b and 7a

svānuṣṭhānāsamarthasya jarayābhīhatasya tu
bhṛgvagnijalasampātair mṛtireṣā vidhiyate

When a Vānaprastha becomes too old to perform his duties he may court death by *Bhṛgupatana* - jumping from a summit, entering into fire or plunging into water. One who has attained Yoga could burn oneself in the fire of Yoga. The Malayalam commentator notes that these are just enumerated for the sake of tradition, but in practice it could not be done since it is against the law of the country.

IX. 4.8b and 9a

viprāṇāmeva samnyāso na tu rājñām na vā viśām
tañca varjyām kalāvāhuriṣyate bhārgavakṣitau

Only Brāhmins have the right to become an ascetic and not for Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas. But in the Kaliyuga, samnyāsa may be avoided, though in Kerala Brāhmins may embrace asceticism. Others should help them in performing the vows like *Cāturmāsyā* = a sacrifice performed in every four months, i.e. at the beginning of the months of Kārttika, Phālguna and Āṣāḍha or a vow lasting for four months.

CHAPTER TEN

This chapter is devoted to the stage of life called *saṃnyāsa*. Many of the ideas are taken from the sixth chapter of *Manusmṛti*. Some instances may be compared here as follows:

<i>Manusmṛti</i> Ch. VI	<i>Śāṅkarasmṛti</i> Ch. X, pāda 1
(1) dr̄ṣṭipūtam nyaset pādām vastrapūtam jalām pibet sātyapūtam vaded vācam (46)	dr̄ṣṭipūtam nyaset pādām vastrapūtam pibed apaḥ sātyapūtam vaded vācam (10)
(2) manahpūtam samācaren (46)	manahpūtam samācaren (11a)

Explanatory Notes

(3) nābhinandeta maranam maranam nābhinandeta (12b)
nābhinandeta jīvitam (46) jīvitam vā nirāgrahā (12b)

(4) atirādāmstitikṣeta ativādāmstitikṣeta (12b)
nāvamanyeta kamcana (47) nāvamanyeta kamcana (12a)

Dealing with the rules of *Saṃnyāsa* X.1.2b states that a Samnyāsi could partake in the meals only in the house of a Brāhmin and that too if she is properly invited. He should walk along the road barefooted and a disciple should walk in front of him sounding a conch (X.1.2a). He should not travel in a vehicle. There is a dictum that one should take a bath with the dress if one meets with an ascetic riding a vehicle.

Vāhanastham yatim dr̄ṣtvā sacelasnānamācaren

Two stanzas (X. 2.4 and 5) mention the various authorites to look after the administration like Grāmādhyakṣas (village officer), Daśādhyakṣas (superior officer of village authority), Satādhyakṣas (higher than the superior officer) and Deśādhyakṣas (officer of a district). The qualifications of various officers are also mentioned here as well as the rate and items of royal share by way of tax. One sixth of the produce is the normal tax in the field of agriculture. Salt is exempted from the scope of tax. The importance of engaging spies is stressed in this section on administration.

etad viśisyate rājñaścakṣuścārātmakam tu yat (X. 2.25)

The idea is quoted from different Dharmasāstras and *Mahābhārata* where similar stanzas occur. For instance, Mallinātha in his commentary on *Kirātārjunīya* (I.4) quotes the following:

gāvah paśyanti gandhena vedaiḥ paśyanti pañcītāḥ
cāraih paśyanti rājānaścakṣubhyām itare janāḥ.

X. 2.2 states that king on a hunt should not kill a wild elephant. If it causes trouble to ascetics or foresters it should be driven to another region of the forest. Kālidāsa in *Raghuvamśa* (V. 50) has noted this rule.

Tamāpatatantam nr̄pater avadhyo
vanyaḥ karīṭi śrutavān kumārah

In the commentary Mallinātha observes “atra cāksusah:- lakṣmikāmo yuddhāḥ anyatra karivadham na kuryāt, Iyām hi śrīḥ ye karināḥ” Elephants are not to be killed except in battle, and wild elephants, never brought to the battle, come under the exception.

X. 3.7b and 8a

*bhūbhūjo mrgayādīni vyasanāni pracakṣte
saptabhyo vyasanebhyo yo buddhipūrvam̄ nivartate*

There are seven calamities or misfortunes for the kings like going on a hunt etc., but the wise one should not get addicted to them. Here the seven enumerated are *mrgayā* (hunt), *dyūta* (chess play), *stribhoga* (addiction to women), *madyapāna* (drinking of liquor), *vākpārūṣya* (using bad words), *daṇḍapārūṣya* (cruel punishment) *arthadūṣana* (destruction of wealth). *Manusmṛti*. VII. 47.8 mentions a total of eighteen attachments in two categories arising from love of pleasure or anger (evil passion). Thus there are Kāmaja (out of love) and Krodhaja (out of anger) attachments. Manu states:

*mrgayāksa divāsvapnaḥ parivādah striyo madah
tauryātrikam vṛthātyā ca kāmajo daśako gunaḥ
paśūnyam sāhasaṁ droha iṣyāsūyārthadūṣanam
vāgdaṇḍajam ca pāruṣyam krodhajo'pi gaṇoṣṭakah.*

CHAPTER ELEVEN

Quarter one deals with the duties of *Vaiśyas* who are to follow trade as their vocation. There are objects which are not to be sold. According to one school there are ten things not to be traded. Another school lists five articles which should not be sold. Ten per cent annual profit is permitted and is called Sāttvika while twenty percent profit is called Tāmasa. One should expect profit from the *Brāhmaṇa* as well as from the King. Breeding of cattle is also discussed in this section.

Śūdradharmā is the next topic. He should attend to the duties of *Brāhmaṇa* leaving his own function unfinished. *Śūdra* should not speak Sanskrit, but should learn it in the Kerala context since he is to assist the Nampūtiri in several ghṛya rituals.

XI. 3.13b

jantuhinśā na ca svargyā tasmānmāṁsam vivarjayet

In the chapter it is said that animal sacrifice is permitted in rituals like homa for gods, but not in oblation prepared for departed manes. This is fol-

lowing the general rules. But the author is against all kinds animal killing as noted in this line. He is against the practice of non-vegetarianism. This is stressed again as follows:

XI. 3.21a

Tasmānmāṁsam na khādeyuh keralasthā viśeṣataḥ

This is the considered view of Bhārgava, though he is afraid of the dictates of Veda which press people for animal sacrifice.

XI. 3.27a to 28

*Keraleśvabhimanyante vṛṣalīgamanam pratī
bhārgavasyābhyanujñānam snātakā api bhūsurāḥ*

It is well known that among the Nampūtiri *Brāhmaṇins* only the senior member or issue marries from the same caste. It is the practice for others to assume concubinage relationship with the women of the *Śūdra* caste. Here the author maintains that there is no sanction or authority of Paraśurāma for the social practice. *Snātakas* - the celibates should always avoid sexual union with women of lower caste. If they so wish they could marry from their own caste for which there is no objection. So the evil practice of *vṛṣalīsevā*-union with *Śūdrā* ladies by *Brāhmaṇins* is against the rules of Paraśurāma. *Śāṅkarasmṛti* does not sanction it.

It is evident that the *Śāṅkarasmṛti* was composed at a time when *Brāhmaṇins* used to indulge in concubinage relationship with *Śūdra* women without any objection. But this tradition is objected to by this work. This is a significant aspect of *Śāṅkarasmṛti*.

XI. 4.3

*vanyānnabhuvgvanasthāḥ syādulūkhalavidhīm vinā
dantolūkhala eva syādathavā vāyubhojanah*

One who lives in the Vānaprastha status should not use anything that is dehusked using mortar and pestle. Instead his own teeth should function as mortar and pestle in crushing the food items.

CHAPTER TWELVE

XII. 1.1 states that those who have learnt grammar and those who have performed sacrifices should be given prominent position in the row when the food is being supplied. This is the rule of Bhārgava.

XII. 1.8a states “*mlecchabhāśām na cābhyaṣet*”. This is considered by some as prohibition to study the English Language. This is preposterous since at the time of the composition of *Śāṅkarasmṛti* the British authorities did not come to India. Hence the study of English is out of question. It cannot be held that it is a prophecy regarding the arrival of the foreign language in India. Hence the statement should be interpreted as “opposing views” or “heretical tradition” as those of the Cārvākas.

XII. 1.9 states “*na striyam bhrāṣṭakañcukām*”. This reference is to the misplacement of the upper garments of women. The line means that one should not look at a lady whose upper garment has slipped from the normal position. It presupposes that women used to wear upper garment. But there is a misconception among Keralites that Paraśurāma has ordained that ladies, especially Śūdra women should not wear upper garments. In actual situation this practice of not wearing the upper garments was in vogue in Kerala till about the early part of the 19th century A.D. It goes to the credit of a ruler of the Travancore dynasty to permit the ladies of all castes to wear the upper garment and it was considered as a progressive measure at that time.

First quarter of the twelfth chapter has taken many ideas from the fourth chapter of *Manusmṛti*. Some of the stanzas are quoted to show the indebtedness of the author of *Śāṅkarasmṛti* to the earlier text.

Manusmṛti (Ch. IV)

- (1) *nāmedhyam prakṣipedagnau* (53) *nāmedhyam prakṣipedagnau* (10b)
- (2) *na ca pādau pratāpayet* (53) *pādau na tapāyedagnau* (11b)
- (3) *na cainamabhiṅghayet* (54) *nāgnīm pādena laṅghayet* (11a)
- (4) *na pādau dhāvayet kāmsye kadācidapi bhājane* (65) *na kāmsyabhājane nyasya- mnākrāmedaighrimanghrīṇā* (12a)
- (5) *upānahau ca vāsaśca dhṛtamanyair na dhārayed* (66) *vastramanyadhṛtam naiva dhārayennatu pāduke* (13b)
- (6) *na mr̄loṣṭam ca mr̄dnīyat* (20) *na loṣṭamardanam kuryāt* (12b)

Śāṅkarasmṛti (Ch. 12, pāda 1)

XII. 2.24b and 25a

A *Brāhmaṇī* lady whether with a living husband or a widow should not go on a pilgrimage. Regarding the first the injunction is *tīrthayātrām na kurvīta pativratnī kūlāṅgānā* (XII. 2.21). As for the latter the following lines are to the point.

*Tīrthayātrām na kurvīta dvijānāmiha yoṣitāḥ
snāyādāmbūni gaṅgāyāḥ keralesu nilaiva sā.*

- (7) *na kurvīta vṛthāceṣṭām* (63) *vṛthāceṣṭām na kurvīta* (17b)
- (8) *na śūdrarājye nivaset* (61) *śūdrarājye sthitīm tyajet* (16b)
- (9) *naināmīkṣeta cāśnatīm* (43) *na bhūmjānāmca gehinīm* (9a)
- (10) *na caiva pralikhedbhūmīm* (55) *na caiva bhuvamālikhet* (12b)
- (11) *nagnām nekṣta ca striyam* (53) *na ca nagnām* (9b)
- (12) *na jīrṇamalavad vāsā bhavecca vibhave sati* (34) *malinamca tathā tadvat
sacchidram vibhave sati* (7b)

These references show that the author of *Śāṅkarasmṛti* has heavily drawn upon the *Manusmṛti* in various matters.

Pāda II of the chapter deals with the rules relating to women. Here again there are many parallelisms between the two Smṛtis.

Manusmṛti (Ch. IV)

- (1) *ācārāllabhatे hyāyuh* (15b) *ācārādāpnuyādāyuh* (2a)
- (2) *sarvalakṣaṇahīnopi
yah sadācārvānnarah
śraddadhāno'naśūyuśca
śatam varṣāṇi jīvati* (158) *sarvalakṣaṇahīno'pi
sadācāraṇam samāśritah
śraddhāvananuśiṣyūśca
jīvedeva śatāṇi samāḥ* (3)
- (3) *hīnāṅgān atiriktāṅgān
jātihīnāmśca nākṣipet* (141) *hīnāṅgān adhikāṅgān vā
vikṛtāṅgānāthā'pi vā
na prahaset* (11)

Śāṅkarasmṛti (Ch. 12, pāda 2)

There are restrictions for the movement of ladies within the boundaries of Kerala. Those living in the south and as well as in the north should not cross the limit earmarked by certain rivers (some of which are not identified at present). A girl living in the south should not cross the river Kumbhavatī and those in the north should not cross Payasvī. One should not aspire to go to the river Ganges for pilgrimage since the river Nilā which is the biggest in Kerala (also called Bhāratappuzha) itself may be considered as Ganges.

This Nilā is referred to in many works of Kerala origin. The river is sacred because on its banks there is a temple of Viṣṇu at a spot called Nāvā or Tirunāvāya in Malayalam). The *Kokilasandesa* of Uddanḍa mentions the river as follows⁴⁴.

Pārṣve yasya pravahati nilānāma kallolini sā
sandhyānrta bhramiṣu patitā mastakājjāhnavīva
nāvāksetraprānayi ramayākrānta dormadhyamāste
kule yasyāh kuvalayadalasyāmalam dhāma kimcit

(Nearby flows the river Nilā resembling the Ganges fallen down from the matted locks of the god during his evening dances, on the banks of which there is the temple of Nāvā consecrated to Lord Viṣṇu along with Lakṣmī).

The identity of the rivers Kumbhavati and Payasvini could not be established at present. These are the Sankritised forms of some Malayalam names.

XII. 3 deals with the rules regarding girls in menstruation. Some of the rules are peculiar to Kerala. She should move out only during day time.

snānāmbaraṁ vasānaiva dattam rajakayoṣītā
nirvṛttavālākarmā susnātā ca dvijānganā.

Before taking the bath she should wear at first clothes supplied by the washer woman and then the Nair lady living in the house as her personal maid is to bathe her properly in the case of *non-Brāhmaṇi* women, they should wear the fresh clothes and perform bath themselves without any aid. In the case of *Brāhmaṇi* of lower caste, the system of Nampūtiris itself is followed. (XII 3.16)

dvijābhāṣavadvadhuṭinām dvijastrīvaccā dr̥ṣyate

Here the word *dvijābhāṣa* stands for Müssatu, Elayatu and other men of the Ambalavāsi community who follow the customs of Nampūtiris.

A Nair maid always lives within the household of a Nampūtiri. Her duty is to assist the lady of the house in numerous matters like taking bath and going out of the home. For bath after menstruation the help of this lady is a must, since she is enjoined to help the Nampūtiri woman. These maids are generally called *Atiyār*⁴⁵ in vernacular and these people never considered their duties as beneath their dignity. Since they live with their family they are also referred to as

44. Ed. N.P. Unni, Kerala Saṃskṛtam Publications, Trivandrum, 1997, p. 75 (Part I Stanza 72).

45. Kāṇippayūr, Ente Smaraṇakal, Vol. I, p. 23.

Irrikkanamma (one who lives with). The Nambūtiri not only loved them but also allowed certain privileges on special occasions and festivals.

XII. 4 deals with the 64 *anācāras*. The word is derived from an *anyatrācaranābhāvād anācārān bhṛgūdvah - ācaṣṭa*. Hence the term does not mean *durācāras* - or bad practices. But since some of the items mentioned are common to other Dharmāśāstras also the term is not quite applicable to Kerala. Still some suggest mal-observances as a proper translation to the word⁴⁶. K.P. Padmanabha Menon has given translated form of the 64 *anācāras* and has quoted the views of Dr. Subrahmanyā Ayyar classifying them under six heads as (1) Personal hygiene, (2) Eating, (3) Worship of gods and manes (4) Conduct in society, (5) Aśramas and stages of life and (6) the regulation for women's conduct. V. Nagam Aiya⁴⁷ has listed all the 64 *anācāras* based on Śāṅkarasmṛti and has stated that "Malabar has four *āchāram*s and sixty *anāchāram*s, only some of these *anāchāram*s are peculiar to Malabar and can strictly be called *keralāchāram*".

The last one of the so-called *anācāras* states "patyau mrte vadhuḥ naiva kuryāt sahamṛtiṁ", a chaste wife should not enter the funeral pyre of the husband and commit suicide in an effort to accompany him to the other world. This practice was in vogue in some parts of India and is called *sati* (sometimes spelt as *suttee* by European writers). The British Government had to enact a law to prevent this horrible practice of forcing a widow to enter the funeral pyre to be burned with her husband.

The last chapter ends with a promise to deal with funeral rites, pollution due to death and birth and miscellaneous matters in the second part of the book which is yet to be found out.

46. See K.P. Padmanabha Menon, *op. cit.*, p. 63; for *anācāras*, see pp. 63-68.

47. *Travancore State Manual*, Vol II, pp. 267-271.

APPENDIX B

GLOSSARY

Abhidyotanam - purification of sacrificial objects by holding over the flame.

Abhyāṅga - smearing the body with oily substances; smearing with oil.

Abhyudayaśrāddha - an expiatory sacrifice for prosperity.

Abrahmanyam - an act not befitting a Brāhmaṇa; inimical to Brāhmaṇa.

Adambhatā - humility; absence of pride.

Ādhāna; Garbhādhāna - The first of the 16 saṃskāras; impregnation.

Ādhyān - the higher class of Nampūtiri entitled to the study of Vedas - usually referred to with the suffix 'pāṭu' as Nampūtirippāṭu.

Adrśyakarāṇi - the power to render invisible.

Agamyāgamana - illicit intercourse with a woman.

Aghamarṣaṇa - "sin-effacing", a particular Vedic hymn [Rv. X. 190] used as a daily prayer.

Agnihotram - an oblation to Agni; maintenance of the sacred fire and offering oblations.

Agnihotrin - one who performs the Agnihotra sacrifice or maintains the sacred fire.

Agnikārya - worship of Agni, the sacred fire; offer of oblations to fire.

Agniṣoma - relating to Agni and Soma; bringing out the fire and the soma, a ceremony.

Agnyagāra - fire-sanctuary; the place where the sacrificial fire is maintained.

Agnyāhita - one who maintains the sacred fire.

Agrajanmā - the first born; an elder brother; a Brāhmaṇa.

Ahimsā - abstaining from killing or giving pain to others in thought, word or deed.

Āhitāgni - A Brāhmaṇa who consecrates the fire.

Akakkoyimma - (Malayalam) a village chieftain who holds his appointment by heredity; a regulator of the sovereign.

Ākṣiptabija - one who masturbates, self-defilement.

Akutobhaya - having no fear from any quarter, secure.

Alobhitva - absence of greed.

Amāvāsyā - the night of new moon (when the sun and moon dwell together).

Amṛta - a way of life using grains discarded by the owner in a field after the harvest.

Anabhidhyāna - absence of jealousy, absence of desire.

Anadhyāya - intermission of study, a holiday.

Anahamkāra - absence of pride.

Anavadya - faultless, irreproachable.

Anāsakti - detachment.

Añchāmpura - añcāmpura (Malayalam) a separate shed in the compound itself, but apart from the main building of a Kerala house.

Andhakūpa - a well of which the mouth is hidden; a particular hell.

Annaprāśa - prāśana, the first feeding of a child.

Antarjanam - a Nampūtiri lady; one who is inside (strictly ghōṣa)

Antarvatni - a pregnant woman.

Anuvāka - a chapter of the Vedas, a subdivision or section.

Anvārambhanikā - the rite which makes the performer entitled to the fruits and merits.

Apaiśunya - keeping away from inciting others or scandalising others.

Āpannasatvā - a pregnant woman.

Apāruṣya - omission of harsh words.

Apauruṣeya - superhuman; of divine origin.

Apaṭu - not clever.

Ādrāntaraṅgatā - kindheartedness.

Ārṣam - a form of marriage derived from the Rishis; one of the eight forms of marriage in which the father of the bride receives one or two pairs of cows from the bridegroom.

Āśauca - pollution in general.

Aśmādhiropaṇa - stepping over a mortar by a bride as a part of the marriage ceremony.

Āśrama - a stage, order or period of the religious life of the three upper castes. These are four, viz; Brahmacarya, Gārhasthya, Vānaprastha and Samnyāsa.

Āṣṭakā - a śrāddha ceremony to be performed on the 8th day of 3 months in which the manes are to be propitiated.

Āsura - one of the 8 forms of marriage in which the bridegroom purchases the bride from her father or other paternal kinsmen.

Āsyān - Nampūtiri Brāhmaṇin of Kerala who has no right to study the Vedas.

Aupāsanāgni - the domestic fire to be kept by the bridegroom.

Aurasa - one of the 12 types of sons; produced from the breast; born of oneself, a legitimate son.

Āvitin - A Brāhmaṇin who has the sacred thread on in the usual manner over the left shoulder and under the right arm.

Bhārgavakṣetra - Kerala, the land of Bhārgava - Paraśurāma.

Bhārgavakṣiti - the same as above.

Bhārgavāvani - the same as above.

Bhikṣu - a religious mendicant, a Brāhmaṇin in the 4th order of his religious life.

Bhraṣṭā - an outcasted woman.

Bhūsūkta - hymn addressed to the Earth; the science of agriculture.

Bhūtayajña - one of the five daily yajñas; sacrifices to all created things.

Bibhiṣikā/vibhiṣikā - an act of terrifying.

Brāhma - one of the 8 forms of marriage in which the bride well-decorated, is given away to the bridegroom without requiring any gift from him.

Brahmacārin - a religious student; a Brāhmaṇa in the first order of his life.

Brahmacarya - religious studentship, life of celibacy.

Brahmadanḍa - the curse of a Brāhmaṇin.

Brāhmaṇa - a man belonging to the first of the 4 original castes; born from the mouth of Virātpuruṣa.

Brahmasūtra - the sacred thread of the Brāhmaṇin

Brahmavarcasam - spiritual pre-eminence, the inherent sanctity or power of a Brāhmaṇin.

Brahmayajña - one of the five daily sacrifices; teaching and reciting of the Vedas.

Cākṣuṣya - pleasing to the eyes; wholesome for the eyes or the eye-sight.

Caturaśra - four-cornered; quadrangular.

Catuśśālā - a combination of 4 Ekaśālās (unitary building) with or without the corner śālās; a structure with halls on four sides around a central courtyard. A typical house of a Kerala landlord.

Cūḍākarma - the ceremony of tonsure.

Daiva - one of the 8 forms of marriage in which the daughter is given away at a sacrifice to the officiating priest.

Dama - forbearance, self-restraint.

Dāna - Gift; the act of giving.

Darśa - the moon when just becomes visible, a day of new moon; half-monthly sacrifice performed on the day.

Dāśivicāra - examination or questioning of the personal maids at a preliminary enquiry to Smārtavicāra.

Dattakarṇa - giving ear to; listening to.

Dattaputraka - an adopted son.

Dayā - mercy, pity.

Dāyāda - a distant descendant; a claimant of inheritance.

Devakhātam - 'dug by the gods' - a natural pond or reservoir.

Devayajña - one of the five daily yajñas; sacrifices to gods.

Devyātrā - an idol procession; any sacred festival when the idols are carried in procession.

Devotsava - festival of god.

Dhanurveda - the science of archery, military science attached to Yajurveda.

Dhruvarkṣadarśanam - looking at the Polar star as a part of the marriage ceremony.

Dikṣita - a priest engaged in Dikṣā, one who is consecrated.

Drṣṭipūta - purified (i.e. protected from impurity) by the sight.

Dūradarśin - far seeing, long-sighted.

Dūraśravāṇa - hearing from afar.

Dūrvāṇkura - shoots of Dūrva grass or bent grass, *Panicum Dactylon*.

Dvijābhāṣa - a lower category of Brāhmaṇins; mostly castes of temple servants.

Ekaputra - having only one son.

Ekaśālā - type of building with a central core hall.

Embrāṇ - Brāhmaṇin of Tulunād origin, settled in Kerala doing jobs of temple priests.

Eṇaṅgan - a close relative; cousin or brother-in-law.

Ganarātravrata - a vow lasting for several nights.

Gāndharva - one of the 8 forms of marriage which requires only mutual agreement - relating to Gandharvas.

Gandūṣa - mouthful of water used to rinse the mouth.

Gartāṅkana - a courtyard inside a Catuśśālā at a lower level than the surrounding halls.

Ghaṭāvasthā - suspending the breath as a religious austerity.

Gṛhṭaśrapaṇa - boiling of ghee; melting of butter.

Godhūma - wheat

Gopatha - A Brāhmaṇa text dealing with rules of sacrifices with illustration, attached to the Atharvaveda.

Gopikāmr̥t - (known as Gopicandana), a species of white clay said to be brought from Dvārakā and used by Viṣṇu worshippers for marking the face.

Goṣṭhaśayyāvrata - sleeping in the cattle-shed as a religious observance to promote agriculture.

Grahāveśa - oppression caused by a planet to children.

Gṛhadevatā - the deity of a house.

Gṛhamedhin - one who performs the domestic sacrifices; the householder.

Gṛhāṅkana - courtyard of the house.

Gṛhastha - a householder; one who has entered the stage of a householder.

Grhyāgni - 'domestic Agni' - a sacred fire which is incumbent on every Brāhmaṇa to keep up.

Gulphakiṇkiṇi - anklet worn on the root of the ankle.

Havya - oblation to the Gods.

Iṣṭa - the merit of sacrifices which leads to heaven.

Iṣṭāpūrta - performing sacrifices and digging wells and doing other acts of charity.

Jaghanyaja - Śūdra; man of the lowest caste.

Jalma - form produced from the root "laj" by transference which in turn formed the word 'janma'.

Jāmātā - a son-in-law, literally one who measures the wife.

Janma - property right over the land, ownership of property.

Janmabhoga - rental accrued from property, share of profit; rent from the tenants.

Janmāṁśa - rental accrued from property, share of profit; rent from the tenants.

Janmideya - rental due to the landlord.

Janmin - one who possesses the *janmavastu* - land or property having ownership; landlord.

Jātakarman - a birth ceremony; one of the 16 rites.

Jātimātraka - a Brāhmaṇa only by caste, a lower type.

Kācam - glass, crystal.

Kaimukku - (Malayalam) 'dipping of the hand' in boiled ghee to prove innocence at the Śucindram temple in Kerala. Now it is abolished.

Kālaja - one who is born after the alleged loss of chastity of a woman.

Kāmyavrata - a vow performed for a benefit, an optional vow.

Karnavedha - piercing the earlobes; one of the 16 rites.

Kāśa - a species of grass, *saccharum spontaneum*.

Kaṭisūtra - girdle on the loins.

Kaupina - long piece of cloth to cover the privy, used by ascetics.

Kavya - oblation to the manes.

Keśānta - (Godāna). The gift of cutting the hair as a religious ceremony.

Khanitra - a spade, hoe, a pickaxe.

Kriḍāparicchada - plaything, toy.

Kṛtacihna - marked with signs as punishment.

Kṛtrīma - an artificial or adopted son without the consent of his natural parents.

Kṣamā - patience, forbearance.

Kṣatriya - a man of the second caste, or military caste, born from the arms of 'Virātpuruṣa'.

Kṣetrapinḍa - oblation offered to manes in certain holy temples.

Kuladūṣaka - one who brings disgrace to the family.

Kulattha - a kind of pulse; *Dolichos Cuniflorus*.

Kumbhaka - an exercise in Yoga; stopping the breath by closing the mouth and both the nostrils with the fingers of the right hand.

Kumbhipāka - a particular hell in which the wicked are baked like potter's vessels.

Kusida - lending of money upon interest, or collection of usury.

Kūṭastha - a person who stands at the head of a genealogical table.

Kūttampalam - the temple theatre of Kerala where the Chakyars perform "Kūttu" and "Kūtiyāttam" during special occasions.

Lājahoma - offering of parched or fried grain in sacrificial fire in a marriage ceremony.

Lohakāra - a blacksmith; one who works on metals.

Mahāpātakin - guilty of a great crime.

Manahpūta - pure in heart; mentally pure.

Manāśśilā - the red arsenic.

Mantha - churning stick.

Marakkuta - (Malayalam) the covering umbrella thatched with palmyra leaves used by Nampūtiri women on going out of the house.

Maskarin - an ascetic or religious mendicant.

Mimāṁsaka - one who is well-versed in the religious practices and social rules of conduct according to Dharmaśāstras.

Mṛtam - a way of life by constantly resorting to begging.

Mukura - a mirror.

Mukhebhagaḥ - one who defiles his mouth by doing fellatio.

Nābhināla - the umbilical cord.

Nāmakarāṇa - the ceremony of naming a child.

Nāsāvedhaḥ - piercing the nostril.

Nibandhanam - a literary composition, treatise.

Niśāda-sthapatinyāya - the maxim that a hunter accidentally or by chance performs the function of an architect-engineer.

Niśkrāmaṇa - taking the child for the first time out of the house to see the sun.

Nivāpāmbu - a libation of water etc., of the śrāddha ceremony.

Nivītiṇ - wearing the sacred thread like a necklace round the neck in worshiping the Rishis.

Nṛyajñā - entertaining the guest as one of the five daily yajñas.

Paccōlappura - (Malayalam) see Añchāmpura - a thatched temporary shed with green palm leaves.

Pādāṅguliyaka - ring worn on the toes of the foot.

Paiśāca - the eighth and lowest type of marriage in which a lover ravishes a maiden without her consent when she is sleeping or intoxicated or deranged in intellect.

Pampu - (Malayalam) the order permitting to subject oneself to an ordeal like dipping the hand in boiled ghee etc.

Pañcagavya - the five products of the cow; viz., milk, coagulated or sour milk, butter and the liquid and solid excreta.

Pañcāgni - the five sacred fires, (1) Anvāharya or Dakṣiṇa, (2) Gārhapatya, (3) Āhavaniya, (4) Sabhya and (5) Āvasathya.

Pañcāhāyana - five-year-old child.

Pañcaṣa - five or six.

Pañcasūna - five things by which animal life is accidentally destroyed in a house, viz., the fireplace, slab used for grinding, broom, pestle and mortar and waterpot.

Pañcayajña - five sacrifices to be performed by a householder for propitiating Devas, Bhūtas, Pitṛs, Brahma and Humans as guests.

Pañktipāvana - one who purifies by his presence the persons who sit in the same row to dine with him.

Paracakra - army of an enemy; invasion by an enemy.

Parṇabhuṭ - one who eats food on the plantain leaves (as is practised in Kerala).

Pārvanām - relating to a division of time or to the changes of the moon; oblation offered at new and full-moon.

Paśubandha - an animal sacrifice.

Pativatni - having a husband; a married woman.

Paurṇamāsa - relating to full moon; the rite to be performed on that day by the householder.

Pavamāneṣṭi - offering to the sacrificial fire called Pavamāna.

Pitṛyajña - one of the five daily sacrifices, sacrifice to manes.

Prācīnāvitin - the wearing of the sacred thread over the right shoulder (as at a śrāddha).

Prājāpatyam - one of the 8 forms of marriage in which the father gives the daughter to the bridegroom without receiving any present from him.

Pramṛta - a way of life by engaging in agriculture.

Prāśana - annaprāśana - the first feeding of a child.

Pratigraha - receiving of gifts.

Pravēṇikābandha - tying the loin-cloth with a gridle.

Prsthavamśa - the backbone; the backside of the body.

Purakkoyimma - (Malayalam) the Maharaja or his deputy attending Smārtavicāra.

Pumsavana - the rite for causing the birth of a male child.

Pūrnāhuti - 'a complete oblation', an offering made with the full ladle.

Pūrta - an act of pious liberality like feeding a Brāhmaṇin, digging wells etc., which leads to liberation.

Puṣpodbheda - appearance of the menstrual discharge during periods.

Rajasvalā - a woman during her menses.

Rākṣasa - one of the 8 forms of marriage in which a girl is forcibly seized and carried away after the defeat or destruction of her relatives in battle.

Rāmakṣetra - Kerala, the land of Paraśurāma.

Rāmāvani - Rāmakṣetra.

Raurava - one of the eight hot hells, people condemned to hell will be eaten by worms called rurus.

Rta - a way of life by collecting grains left over and lying scattered in a bazaar.

Rtumati - a girl who has attained puberty.

Sabhāsadaḥ - councillors, assessors in a court.

Sādhanam - 'the thing', the article, stands for the Nampūtiri woman whose chastity is under doubt.

Sahodha - son of an woman pregnant at the time of marriage.

Sahyādri - the Western Ghats known as Sahyan bordering Kerala.

Sālagrāma - a kind of sacred stone said to be typical of Viṣṇu, collected from the Gaṇḍaki river.

Samāvarttana - returning from the house of a preceptor after studies.

Sāmya - equality.

Ṣaṅḍa - a eunuch (who are of sixteen kinds).

Saṅkrānti - passage of the sun or a planet from one sign or position in the heavens into another.

Santānadevatā - deities ensuring childbirth in a house.

Śāntidāna - an expiatory gift, a propitiatory rite for avoiding evil or calamity.

Sāpatnyam - the state or condition of a rival wife.

Sapinda - sharing the same 'pinda' or funeral riceball offering; a kinsman.

Sapindikarana - investiture of the relationship of a 'Sapinda'; a srāddha in honour of deceased relatives.

Saptaka - a golden ornament for the neck.

Saptapadi - the seven steps at a marriage (the bride and bridegroom walk together seven steps after which the marriage becomes irrevocable).

Sarvānnina - eating all sorts of food whether pure or not.

Ṣaṣṭika - a kind of rice of quick growth ripening in about sixty days.

Ṣaṭkarmin - a Brāhmaṇa who is enjoined to perform six duties like adhyayana, adhyāpana, yajana, yājana, dāna and pratigraha.

Śastranītya - one who is continually under arms.

Satyam - truthfulness, honesty, sincerity.

Satyānṛta - way of life by resorting to business, practice of truth and false.

Satyapūta - purified by truth.

Satyarata - devoted to truth.

Śāvāśauca - defilement caused by contact with a corpse or the death of a relation.

Śāvitri - ceremony of investiture with the sacred thread.

Seka - niṣeka, the rite of impregnation.

Śibikā - a palanquin, a litter to be carried by bearers.

Śikhābandha - tie of the tuft of hair on the head.

Śilācchit - a mason working on stones, a sculptor.

Silam - collecting what is left in a field after harvest.

Simanta - parting of the hair.

Smārta - one well-versed in smṛti texts.

Smārtavicāra - examination by the Smārta to find out the truth.

Snātaka - a Brāhmaṇa just returned from the house of his preceptor and become an initiated householder.

Ṣoḍaśakriyā - sixteen purificatory rites of Brāhmaṇins.

Śringagrāhikā - literally 'taking by the horns'; in a direct manner.

Śrotriya - a learned Brāhmaṇin well-versed in Vedas.

Sruvāhuti - a libation offered with a 'sruva' (a small wooden ladle with a double extremity or two oval collateral excavations used for pouring clarified melted butter into the large ladle called 'sruk').

Steyam - theft, robbery.

Sthālipāka - a particular religious act performed by the householder.

Stridhanam - dowry, given to the bridegroom.

Śuddhabhojanam - feast held in token of the purification of the family to which all Brāhmaṇins are invited.

Suddhapratram - an order acquitting the culprit of all crimes.

Śūdra - a man of the fourth caste; born from the feet of Virātpuruṣa.

Svarṇakāra - goldsmith.

Svarūpam collal - (Malayalam) the judgement and the arguments leading to it in a Smārtavicāra.

Svastyayanam - auspicious progress; mantra recited for good luck.

Svayambhū - Brahmā, the self-born creator.

Svayamdatta - a grown up son adopted without the consent of his natural parents.

Svistakrt - offering a right sacrifice especially applied to Agni.

Takṣan - literally one who reduces; one who is engaged in woodcraft and stonework.

Tantuvāyah - a weaver.

Tapas - penance, religious austerity.

Tirthaśraddha - offering of oblation to manes on the banks of sacred streams.

Tithi - a lunar day.

Tretāgnisangraha - kindling the sacred fire in the house; also called Ādhāna.

Tripuṇḍra - three horizontal lines with the ashes on the forehead and other parts of the body.

Trikṣṇa - the three-eyed (Śiva).

Trāṇayā - a straw mat.

Tulasi - holy basil.

Uñccham - living by collecting left-overs in a market.

Upākarman - a ceremony performed before commencing to read the Veda after the monsoon.

Upānaha - a sandal; shoe; wooden shoes as worn by Brāhmins and devotees.

Upanayana - the initiation with the investiture of the sacred thread.

Uparāga - an eclipse of the sun and moon.

Ūrdhvapuṇḍra - wearing ashes on the body in a perpendicular way as against horizontal.

Ūrmikā - a finger ring.

Utkutikāsana - sitting upon the hams.

Uttarāyaṇa - the summer solstice; the period of the sun's progress to the north of the equator.

Ūttupura - (Malayalam) choultry or Brāhmin feeding house.

Vacāprāśanam - feeding with the vacā - a kind of aromatic root for clarity of speech.

Vaiśvadevam - an offering made for Viśvedevas - offering to all deities.

Vaiśya - a man of the third caste, his trade being agriculture; born of the thighs of the Virātpuruṣa.

Vaitānikāgni - Sacred fire at a sacrifice called Vitāna.

Vākovākyam - speech and reply; dialogue; a particular Vedic text.

Vāksiddha - a supernatural person in speech.

Vanastha - forest abiding; forest-dweller, hermit.

Vapanam - shaving; the first haircut of a child.

Vardhaki - literally one who 'increases or joins'. One of the four divisions of Silpins.

Varṇa - caste, especially applied to the four principal castes.

Vastrapūta - purified by cloth; strained through a cloth.

Vāstu - the site of a house; building ground.

Vedamātr - mother of the Vedas, names of Sarasvati, Sāvitri and Gāyatrī.

Vedārambha - the study of the Vedas.

Vedavikraya - trade of Vedas; teaching of Vedas for financial benefits.

Vihāngama - moving in the sky.

Viṣṇubali - an offering to Viṣṇu for protection of pregnancy.

Viśvātmā - the soul of the universe, the Supreme Being.

Vratalopā - violation of a vow.

Vrātya - outcaste for want of sacred thread.

Vrātyastoma - sacrifice performed to recover the rights forfeited by the loss of sacred thread.

Vṛṣali - a Śūdra woman.

Vṛsaligamanam - cohabitation with a Śūdra woman.

Vṛsalisevā - sexual union with a Śūdra lady.

Vṛtti - livelihood.

Vyavahāra - legal proceedings.

Yaga - an offering; a sacrifice.

Yajana - the act of sacrifice; one of the 6 duties of a Brāhmaṇin.

Yājana - the act of performing or conducting a sacrifice; duty of a Brāhmaṇin.

Yajñā - sacrifice.

Yajñopavīta - the sacred thread worn by members of the first three classes.

Yama - restraining.

Yāma - a watch; one-eighth part of a day.

Yātrā - a festive or solemn occasion; a festival in a temple.

Yodhin - a warrior.

Yoga - deep and abstract meditation.

Yogasamādhi - the absorption of the soul in profound and abstract contemplation.

Yogin - a contemplative saint.

Yaugapadyam - simultaneity.

Zamorin - king of Calicut (north Kerala).

APPENDIX C

SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

Aiyya, V. Nagam, *Travancore State Manual* (in 3 vols) Reprint; Asian Educational Services, New Delhi, 1989.

Apte, V.S., *English Sanskrit Dictionary*, Reprint, Nag Publishers, Delhi, 1985.

Chakiar, A.M.N., *The Last Smartha Vichara*, Trippunithura, Cochin, Kerala, 1998.

Day, Francis, *The Land of the Perumals or Cochin its past and present*, Madras, 1863, Reprint, Asian Educational Services, New Delhi, 1990.

Gundert, Dr. A, *A Malayalam and English Dictionary* Mangalore, 1872.

Īśānadeva, *Īśāṇaśivagurudevapaddhati* is 4 vols, ed. T. Ganapati Sastri, Trivandrum, Reprinted with elaborate introduction by Dr. N.P. Unni, Bharatiya Vidya Prakashan, Delhi, 1990.

Iyer, Ullur S. Parameswara, *Keralasāhityacaritram*, University of Kerala, Trivandrum, Vol I, 1957; Vol II, 1962.

Kālidāsa, *Raghuvamśa*, edited from different places.

Kālidāsa, *Śākuntala*, ed. by Monier Williams.

Kālidāsa, *Meghasandeśa*, ed. with commentaries of *Pradīpa*, *Vidyullatā* and *Sumanoramanī* by Dr. N.P. Unni, Bharatiya Vidya Prakashan, Delhi, 1985.

Kane, P.V., *History of Dharmasāstra* (in 8 vols) Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, Poona, 1972.

Keralācāradīpaka, Published from Jnanasagaram Book Depot, Trichur, 1929.

Keralotpatti (Malayalam) ed. H. Gundert; also from different places.

Lakṣmidāsa, *Śukasandeśa*, with ed. with English translation by Dr. Geetha Pattabhiraman, Higginbothams, Madras.

Lakṣmidāsa, *Śukasandeśa* with *Vilāśinī* commentary of Mānaveda, ed. Dr. N.P. Unni, Nag Publishers, Delhi, 1985.

Lakṣmidāsa, *Śukasandeśa* with Malayalam Commentary, ed. Vatakkumkur Rajaraja Varma, Kamalalaya Book Depot, Trivandrum, 1958.

Manusmṛti, ed. Nirnaya Sagar Press, Bombay, Reprinted, Motilal Banarsi das, Delhi.

Menon, Dr. C.A. *Keralotpatti*, University of Madras, Madras, 1953.

Menon, K.P. Padmanabha, *History of Kerala* (in 4 vols) Reprinted, Asian Educational Services, New Delhi, 1986.

Menon, A. Sreedhara, *A Survey of Kerala History*, National Book Stall, Kottayam, 1967.

Mussatu, T.C. Parameswaran, *Śāṅkarasmṛti athava Laghudharmaprakāśikā*, (in Malayalam Script), Bharatavilasam Press, Trichur, ME 100/AD 1925.

Nair, Dr. K. Maheswaran, *Śāṅkarasmṛti athavā Laghudharmaprakāśikā* (in Devanagari Script), Swantham Books, Trivandrum, 2001.

Namputiri, Kāṇippayyūr Śankaran, *Nampūtirimārum marumakkattāyavum* (in Malayalam), Panchangam Press, Kunnamkulam, 1961.

Namputiri, Kāṇippayyūr Śankaran, *Ente Smaranakal* (in Malayalam), Panchangam Press, Kunnamkulam, II edn. ME 1166/AD 1941.

Nampiar, P.K. Narayanan, *Mantrāṇikam* (in Malayalam) Kerala Sahitya Akademi, Trichur, 1980.

Panikkar, K.M., *A History of Kerala*, Annamalai Nagar, 1960.

Panikkar, R. Narayana, *Keralabhisahitya Caritram* (in 7 vols), Trivandrum, 1943.

Pillai, P. Govinda, *Keralabhaśācaritram* (II edn) Kottayam, 1960.

Raja, Vatakumkur V. Rajarajavarma, *Keraliya Samskr̥tasahityacaritram* (in 7 vols) Reprinted, Sree Sankaracharya University of Sanskrit, Kalady, Kerala 2001 (in Malayalam).

Raja, Vatakumkur, V. Rajarajavarma, *Kerala Sāhityacaritram Carcayum Pūraṇavum* (in Malayalam and in 2 parts) Kottayam, 1967.

Raja, Dr. K. Kunjunni, *Contribution of Kerala to Sanskrit Literature*, University of Madras, Madras, 1958.

Sarma, A.M. Krishna, *Kṛṣṇayajurvedīya baudhāyana caṭaṇī* (in Malayalam), Panchangam Press, Kunnamkulam, ME 1164/AD 1989.

Sastri, Sekharipuram Seshu, *Keralamāhātmyam* (in Malayalam) Bharatavilasam Press, Trichur, 1912.

Uddanda, *Kokilasandeśa*, ed. Dr. N.P. Unni, Kerala Samskr̥tam Publications, Trivandrum, 1997 (II edn).

Unni, Dr N.P. *A History of Mushikavamśa*, Kerala Historical Society, Trivandrum, 1980.

Visscher, Jacobus Canter, *Letters from Malabar*, ed. K.P. Padmanabha Menon in his *History of Kerala* Vol I.

Yājñavalkya, *Yājñavalkyasmṛti*, ed. Narayana Rama Acharya, Nag Publishers, Delhi, 1985.

APPENDIX D

INDEX OF HALF-VERSES

akālenārka I, 4.38a
akurvan V, 1.28b
akṛtotra III, 1.52a
akṛtopanaya I, 3.9a
akṛtyamanyat V, 2.21b
akṛtvā pava III, 1.4b
akṛtvā phala V, 3.25b
akṛtvā śauca VII, 3.14b
akṛtvā svaya V, 3. 10a
akṣarārambha V, 2.12a
akṣarārambha VIII, 2.13a
agarutritaya IV, 4.6a
agrasthastu IV, 1.23a
agnā āyūmṣi III, 3.22a
agnaye pava III, 3.7a
agnāvanu III, 3.4b
agnigurva I, 2.13a
agni gurvatithi I, 2.11b
agniṁ pathi III, 4.2b
agnirityādi IV, 4.5a
agnihinena III, 4.15a
agnihotram V, 3.14a
agniśomātmakam IV, 2.32a
agne aṅgira III, 2.19a
agneḥ pari VI, 2.43b
agnir bhasme IV, 4.4a
agneḥ sparsa VII, 3.16a
agneralam III, 3.19a
agnau sam III, 4.10b
agrāhyatva II, 2.9a
aṅgāni cūḍāṇ IV, 1.29a
aṅgairaṅkā VI, 4.9a
aṅghriṇā III, 1.17b
ajantu dahano IV, 3.7b
ajinām krṣṇa V, 4.12b
ajihmaḥ X, 4.10a
ajñātavāmi X, 3.16a
añjanodva I, 4.37b
anorāṇīyān IV, 4.8a
ata ūrdhvam III, 1.29b
atantu karmā VI, 2.24b
atandritā VI, 3.27b
atastad V, 2.19a
ataḥ pumām VI, 2.29b
ataste I, 1.6a
atithim pri VI, 1.17a
atithim vaiśva IV, 1.19b
atithīn IV, 4.30a
atipannā XI, 3.5a
atimānusa IX, 2.20a
atiryag I, 3.22b
ativādān X, 1.12b
atitaśayana VII, 1.29a
ato'tra VI, 1.18a
ato na VI, 2.65a
ato nirasya X, 1.24b
ato'prama IX, 4.15b
ato vivāha V, 3.9b
atratu V, 1.24a
atrāśakto IX, 4.6a
atropanito I, 4.2a
atyakṣmīriti IV, 3.14a
atyantāga X, 4.11a
atyāpadyapi VI, 3.9a
atyāpanna XI, 2.14a
atha kanyā III, 1.199
atha tatra III, 2.5a
athartasatya IV, 3.22b
atha tān III, 2.8b
atha tānāha I, 1.199

atha tām VIII, 1.27b
 atha tālī VIII, 1.5a
 atha dharmā XI, 2.1a
 atha cāntē IV, 1.28b
 atha parṇa XII, 3.12b
 atha parvata IX, 2.22a
 atha madhya IV, 4.20b
 atha sandhyām IV, 2.1a
 atha sampanna IX, 1.7b
 atha snātaka II, 1.15a
 athavā deha IX, 4.4a
 athavā dhavala I, 3.23b
 athavā mr̄ṇmaye IV, 3.12a
 athavā śuddha VII, 1.20b
 athāto'nu XII, 4.1a
 athādvija XII, 3.15b
 athānyacca IV, 4.33a
 athābhidhiyate II, 1.21a
 athārabheta III, 1.34b
 athāvasita VIII, 1.27b
 athāhani IV, 4.1a
 athottarā II, 4.1a
 athopacāra IV, 4.3a
 athopayoga II, 2.17b
 athosasi IV, 3.6b
 athaikām IV, 3.17b
 athābhyaṣet IX, 4.1a
 adarśayan IX, 3.11b
 adugha VIII, 2.16b
 adugdha IV, 3.3b
 adṛṣya IX, 3.8a
 adṛṣṭa VI, 1.30a
 adyādaṣṭau IV, 4.25b
 adyedamanyat XI, 2.4a
 adhaśśayi I, 4.23a
 adhitya I, 2.1a
 ardham dadyād X, 3.14a
 adharmo'sya I, 1.8a
 adhārmika XII, 1.17a
 adhauta IV, 1.25b
 adhikṣipta XI, 2.6b
 adhyāpana I, 4.14b

adhyūṣur I, 1.15a
 adhyetavya I, 4.5a
 anagnerasya III, 4.9b
 anadhyayanam VII, 2.14b
 anabhidhyāna I, 1.13a
 anarcaka III, 1.34a
 anavadyam I, 1.4b
 anācārān XII, 4.1b
 anāpadya VIII, 4.9b
 anāvṛta VIII, 1.25a
 anāhatam XII, 3.5b
 anicchayā XIII, 3.18b
 anivedita X, 3.11a
 aniṣṭhebhyo I, 4.12a
 anihṛ IV, 1.15b
 anukurvanti X, 2.21a
 anujesu VI, 2.12a
 anucchiṣṭe IV, 4.24b
 anumantā XI, 3.18b
 anumodya X, 1.2b
 anumantrya X, 1.5a
 anurūpeṇa XII, 1.6a
 anuvākam V, 4.18a
 anūnābhijana X, 1.16b
 anṛtena IV, 2.6b
 anekāgra I, 3.32a
 anenavidhi II, 4.20b
 antaḥ pañca II, 4.10b
 antaram na VII, 1.9b
 antarvatnīm V, 2.1a
 antasteṣu II, 2.21b
 antike I, 4.15b
 antyatryamśe V, 2.79
 antyāmbu pāna IV, 4.26b
 annam nāmetad XI, 4.5a
 annam paryu XII, 4.8a
 annaprāśa V, 2.10b
 annam bahu XI, 1.24a
 annamannaśine XII, 2.19b
 annam vā V, 4.9b
 annasya XI, 1.5b
 anyattūpa I, 3.2b

annyatra nāvo I, 4.22b
 annyatra bhārgava I, 1.30b
 anyatrācarāṇa III, 4.2a
 anyatrādhyayana XI, 1.27b
 anyatrāpi ca XI, 1.156
 anyatrāpi VII, 1.14b
 anyatrāpyanu III, 3.24b
 anyathātām VI, 2.10b
 anyathā VI, 2.48
 anyathāndham XI, 4.15b
 anyathā śūdra III, 4.16b
 anya piṇḍe II, 4.20a
 anya vatsa VII, 2.9b
 anyasmai VI, 3.4a
 anyasya XII, 4.17a
 anyāmīśca III, 1.31a
 anye go XI, 1.5a
 anyena IX, 1.15a
 anye ṣad IX, 1.2b
 anyairapi III, 1.10a
 anyādhāna III, 3.5b
 anyārambha III, 4.4a
 anyāsya III, 1.2a
 apathe VI, 1.14b
 apanīya VIII, 1.14b
 aparādha X, 4.8a
 apāruṣya I, 1.12b
 apāmīḍvāda IV, 1.26c
 api cāṣya II, 1.36c
 api smaran IX, 3.15a
 api svadharma VII, 4.18a
 aputrayostu VI, 2.7a
 aprakṣālīya VIII, 1.23b
 aphenila IV, 1.18b
 abudhyā XI, 3.30b
 abudhyā pati IV, 4.28a
 abudhyā bha XI, 3.16a
 abrāhmaṇa I, 1.24a
 abrāhmaṇo na XII, 4.26c
 abhakṣyānyapi IV, 4.27b
 abhāvē saṃskṛta IV, 4.11a
 abhikrudhyan I, 4.18a

abhidyotana III, 3.13b
 abhidyotanato III, 3.14a
 abhidvāram ca III, 1.7c
 abhidhāṣya XI, 1.1b
 abhivāḍya I, 4.10a
 abhukte XII, 2.14b
 abhyupetya I, 4.16a
 amantram vā V, 1.28a
 amāvāṣyā XII, 2.6b
 amitram X, 4.3b
 amukhyam X, 3.26a
 amedhyatām X, 1.15b
 ambukṣepa IV, 2.14b
 anyacca khalu VI, 2.32a
 ayameva VI, 3.8a
 arunodaya VIII, 3.5a
 arandhra VII, 4.12b
 aruntuda XII, 2.9a
 arcayed XII, 2.20b
 ardham madya X, 2.13a
 ardhenu IX, 3.24b
 alakṣmīm III, 1.5b
 alabdhvā X, 3.28b
 alpākṣarair I, 1.3b
 avatāra VII, 1.10b
 avamānam XII, 4.36
 avarjya XII, 3.1b
 avaśiṣṭo II, 4.12b
 aviśeṣenā I, 1.11a
 avītyā VIII, 1.29a
 avyaktavarnā VI, 4.9a
 aśaktasya X, 3.12a
 aśakyapari X, 2.6a
 aśanyāhata III, 2.8a
 aśasto II, 3.3b
 aśivaiḥ IV, 3.2a
 aśiṣṭakṛtya IV, 4.21a
 aśucirnaiva XII, 4.10b
 aśūdrayā VIII, 2.6b
 aśūnyatve VIII, 1.33b
 aśnāti XII, 3.11b
 aśrūṇi VII, 2.16a

aśvamāśvina V, 4.10b
 aśtamyāḥ II, 2.2a
 aśtādaśa VII, 3.2b
 aśtau prāg II, 4.3a
 asakṛd V, 1.11a
 aśatīm II, 3.28a
 aśatputra VI, 4.17a
 aśatsaṅga VI, 4.19b
 aśapīṇḍa II, 1.20b
 aśamskṛtān XI, 3.1a
 aśamāśikha X, 1.32a
 aśamicina VIII, 1.14a
 aśādhāraṇa IV, 2.8b
 aśiddham VI, 2.63a
 aśinā X, 1.13b
 aśukṣma VII, 4.21a
 aśprṣya X, 1.27b
 aśprṣya VII, 2.7b
 aśyaputraṛa VI, 3.3a
 aśvargyam VIII, 4.16a
 aśvargyam tasya V, 1.11b
 ahanyeva XII, 3.1a
 ahaviṣyam XII, 4.22b
 ahimsakāni XI, 3.10a
 ahimsādaya IX, 2.3b
 aho bharo III, 4.79
 ahnāḥ sakṛd IV, 4.21b
 ākāṅkṣetām VI, 2.6b
 ākūrcādatha IX, 3.34b
 ākhubhakṣake VII, 2.16b
 ākhor viṭ VII, 2.15a
 ākhyāṣye IV, 3.1a
 āgāḥ kṣantavyam XI, 2.7a
 āgatena ca I, 2.8a
 āgate I, 1.28b
 āgandha IV, 1.7a
 āgarbha III, 1.28a
 āgāva IV, 3.99
 āgneyam IV, 1.41b
 ācāmeyuḥ IV, 1.19b
 ācāraṭ XII, 2.2b

ācārabheda VII, 4.22a
 ācāramāśrayet XII, 2.1b
 ācārādāpnuyat XII, 2.2a
 ācāryā I, 4.8a
 ājānubhyām IX, 3.23b
 ājyamāśicya III, 3.16a
 ājyamutpādyā III, 1.43b
 ājyasya ca III, 2.14a
 ātithyam V, 3.14b
 ātmānam X, 4.1a
 ātmānaḥ kṛta II, 3.25a
 ātmānaḥ paśu XI, 3.7b
 ātmānastārakam VI, 1.7b
 ātmānamanī V, 1.1a
 ātyantika V, 4.2b
 ātyantikam VIII, 2.22a
 ādityasevā VI, 4.5a
 ādityodaya VIII, 3.4b
 ādityamadhyā IV, 2.2a
 ādāu tu IV, 3.19a
 ādyāprajā V, 2.4b
 ādyāścatvāra I, 3.4a
 ādyo niṣedhāḥ XII, 2.10b
 ādvāvīmśāt I, 3.8b
 ādhānataḥ V, 2.1a
 ādhānādivasa V, 2.1b
 ādhānarkṣe VI, 3.21a
 ādhāya kadati IX, 2.36a
 ādhāya manasi VIII, 1.11a
 āniyamāno VII, 4.35
 āpadbhyām IX, 3.20b
 āpadyapi tu I, 2.18b
 āpadyapi na XI, 3.8b
 āpannopi II, 3.5b
 āpannopi na X, 2.18b
 āpāyośca IX, 3.27b
 āptān X, 2.8b
 āpnuyāt IX, 3.40a
 āpnuyācca IX, 3.30b
 āpnuyādvijayam IX, 3.34a
 āmadhyāhnāt I, 4.27a

ārsāḥ saho II, 3.8b
 āranyakaiśca I, 2.15b
 ārabhya VIII, 2.12a
 āropyāgnim III, 1.23a
 ārohati VI, 1.11b
 ālasyam I, 4.40a
 ālipyātraiva III, 1.43a
 ālokyā I, 1.2a
 āvarjayet XI, 1.13a
 āvaśyake X, 4.6a
 āvipram V, 3.21b
 āvedanasya VIII, 1.24a
 āvedanasya VIII, 1.24a
 āvedanasya VIII, 1.26a
 āvedayed VIII, 1.5a
 āveditaśced X, 3.15a
 āśāsūyādi X, 1.30b
 āśāste pava III, 3.2b
 āśāste brāhma XII, 2.11a
 āśīrvādo XII, 4.13a
 āśaucāpagama V, 3.8a
 āśauce lavaṇa IV, 4.23b
 āśramatraya VIII, 4.13b
 āśramo brahma I, 1.9a
 āśrayed X, 2.2b
 āśleṣe V, 1.6a
 āśvāsayet XI, 1.21a
 āśvāśo jāyate VI, 2.20b
 āśodaśat I, 3.8a
 āsanasthasya IX, 2.18a
 āsannaḥ sam III, 1.16a
 āsanne su III, 1.2b
 āśicya prāk III, 3.15a
 āśināḥ pra IV, 3.32b
 āśine nica I, 4.22b
 āśino juhuyāt III, 3.10a
 āśureṇā II, 3.12a
 āśuro'pi II, 3.5a
 āśuryasya IV, 2.15a
 āsthāya VI, 3.29a
 āsvādyā VI, 2.19a

āhāriṣyāmi IV, 3.29a
 āhurdvitiyam V, 1.17a
 āhurāhṛda IX, 3.31b
 āhūtassarvadā XI, 2.3b
 āhṛtya bhaikṣa I, 3.34b
 icchanti bhā V, 1.14b
 icchanti śva VII, 3.5b
 iti kecana V, 2.23b
 iti kecidatha II, 1.30b
 iti kramena IV, 3.24a
 iti janmavatām I, 2.14b
 iti dvādaśa V, 4.15a
 iti trirambunā IV, 1.28a
 iti proktassadā XII, 1.20b
 iti brāhmaṇa VI, 3.9b
 iti bhārgava V, 1.16a
 iti bhārgava X, 3.5a
 iti yohyāfijasā IX, 2.30a
 iti samkṣepa X, 1.25b
 iti samkṣepataḥ IV, 2.14b
 iti samgrahataḥ VII, 3.24b
 iti sādhāraṇāḥ I, 1.34a
 itihāsapurāṇa XI, 2.18c
 itihāsāmīśca II, 1.8b
 itihāsaiḥ VII, 4.1a
 itthamācarataḥ II, 2.3b
 ittham samkṣepa XII, 2.28b
 ityayam pava III, 3.10b
 ityevābhuyudaya VI, 3.3b
 ityarthamṛṣayāḥ I, 3.10b
 idam tu IX, 4.2a
 idameva V, 4.19b
 idhmaśeṣam IV, 3.24b
 indriyānām IX, 2.7a
 indriyāḥ IX, 3.3a
 iyameva IX, 3.41b
 iyān viśeṣa I, 3.11a
 iyāneva hi VI, 1.39a
 iṣṭim vaiśvā VI, 1.20b
 iṣṭāpūrte V, 3.13a
 iṣṭissautrāmani V, 3.12a

istena prāpunyāt V, 3.13b
 idṛśam yad X, 1.20a
 iśvaram tatra IX, 3.33a
 uktāḥ prāyeṇa X, 4.15a
 uktānuktāni V, 1.2b
 ukteṣu teṣu VI, 2.34a
 ugrānugreṣu X, 2.9b
 uccaistarām VI, 3.19b
 uccaissatkṛtya IX, 3.14a
 ucchīṣṭahastā VI, 3.26a
 ucchīṣṭakhalasya I, 2.26a
 utkarṣāpādakam VIII, 2.2b
 uttamā madyapā II, 2.30b
 uttameṣvana VI, 1.37b
 uttamo dvādaśa V, 2.18a
 uttarām vā IX, 1.8b
 uttareṣu tu I, 3.16a
 utiṣṭhet guru I, 4.15a
 utiṣṭhet pūrva I, 4.23b
 uthāpyārādhayet III, 2.21b
 utpasyamāna V, 1.16b
 utpādya vidhi IV, 2.29b
 utṣṭyja kutra IX, 1.8a
 udagnistha III, 3.12b
 udagvinyasya III, 3.3b
 uduhyante II, 2.29c
 udyānabhū VII, 4.7a
 uddhartavyo VI, 4.11b
 uddhārayeyur VII, 1.18b
 uddhūlyā tatra III, 1.39b
 uddhṛtya tri IV, 1.30b
 udbudhyasya III, 1.42b
 udvāhe yāvad VI, 3.7a
 unmattavṛṣa V, 3.7b
 upanīteḥ V, 2.13b
 upapāditam VI, 3.6a
 uparāgād XI, 4.5b
 upavītam na XII, 1.14a
 upavītam tu I, 3.23a
 upavītamakā I, 3.26a
 upaveśanam IX, 2.4a

upasparśena VII, 3.8a
 upasparśe ca śū VII, 3.9b
 upasparśe VII, 3.13b
 upasprīṣyād X, 3.3b
 upākarmāṇi V, 2.14a
 upādhyāyam VIII, 2.16a
 upānahau ca V, 4.7a
 upāyāmśaiva X, 2.27a
 upāsyę IV, 2.3a
 upoṣya tad IV, 3.10a
 ubhayantad V, 2.24b
 ubhaye tebhi VIII, 4.14b
 ubhayaistaiḥ VIII, 3.20a
 ubhyornarake V, 1.12b
 ubhayorapi X, 1.14c
 ubhayoreka II, 2.4a
 ubhāvetāu VIII, 1.11b
 umārdhadeham IX, 3.38b
 urvaśyādyā IX, 2.24b
 uśitvaiva I, 4.7b
 uṣṭrikābāḍavā VII, 2.8b
 ūḍhāmajāṭa VI, 2.32b
 udhāyāmadhya VI, 2.55a
 ūdhāyāmauraso VI, 3.12a
 ūrujāṅghrijayoḥ I, 1.32a
 ūrdhvam jīga III, 4.1b
 ūrdhvam tu II, 1.37b
 ūrdhvam na I, 3.11b
 ūrdhvapuṇḍram IV, 2.20b
 ūrdhvapuṇḍram IV, 2.23a
 ūrdhvapuṇḍre XII, 3.7a
 ūrmikāmcā VI, 4.2a
 ūhah pipilikā VII, 2.8a
 rjukāya IX, 2.9a
 ṛtamityādikam II, 4.14a
 ṛtamūñccham I, 2.5b
 ṛtāmṛtābhyaṁ I, 2.4b
 ṛtāvagacchato V, 1.12a
 ṛtāvetau V, 1.14a
 ṛtukālam V, 1.13b
 ṛtumatyā V, 2.18b

ṛtumatyā VII, 1.11a
 ṛte ca dakṣinā X, 2.17a
 ṛte devotsavāt I, 4.41b
 ṛtvig gr̄hnāti II, 3.7b
 ṛṣinā bhārgaveṇa I, 3.26b
 eka eva gr̄ham II, 1.16 a
 eka eva hi V, 1.26a
 ekagrānthi I, 3.21b
 ekam tu vā II, 1.2a
 ekam tyajet VIII, 2.15a
 ekatrica XI, 1.9b
 ekadhaiva IX, 2.9b
 ekaṇputro VI, 3.5b
 ekayajño XII, 4.24b
 ekasminneva XII, 1.15a
 ekasya yā II, 2.4b
 ekahotā III, 1.46a
 ekākṣarasya I, 4.13a
 ekādaśam V, 1.19a
 ekādaśāmī XI, 3.19b
 ekādaśe dine V, 2.7a
 ekādaśyām na VIII, 3.13b
 ekāsanasya IX, 2.11a
 ekāham X, 1.7b
 ekāhamapi IX, 3.16a
 eke punar VI, 2.31a
 ekonā vimśati III, 1.50b
 ekaikāntarubhau IV, 1.12a
 etaccatuskam IV, 2.18a
 etacchaucam IV, 1.13b
 etadantyam II, 4.19a
 etad dvayam III, 4.3b
 etad viśiṣyate X, 2.25a
 etad ālambanam IX, 2.29b
 etadevāksaram IX, 2.28b
 etasyaivāksaram IX, 2.28a
 etādrśisuh II, 2.7a
 etena citta IX, 3.6a
 etena śaunḍikā VII, 1.12a
 etena sarve XI, 2.18b
 etāvanto hi XII, 4.27a
 etāvatyātma VIII, 2.21a
 ete rajasvalā XIII, 3.19a
 enasāmapanoda IX, 2.27a
 enaso dvividhāt I, 3.3b
 enāmāśādyā IX, 3.42a
 ebhīrvihāya VI, 2.17a
 ebhyolpakebhyo VII, 2.11a
 ebhīrāyatane VII, 2.22b
 evam kuṭumbi VII, 4.15b
 evam kulebhyā VIII, 1.31b
 evam kramāt VIII, 2.25b
 evam gotrasya II, 1.33a
 evam jitāsano IX, 2.12a
 evam dvijān XI, 2.23b
 evam nirdiṣṭa V, 3.1a
 evam brahma X, 3.29a
 evam bhasma IV, 4.9a
 evam bhāvana IX, 3.5b
 evamapavyavani VIII, 2.3b
 evamāgasmitā VIII, 1.20b
 evamāpanna VI, 3.27a
 evameva VIII, 1.35a
 evam yāḥ I, 40.41b
 evam yāvāt VIII, 1.18a
 evam yo XI, 2.13a
 evam rahaṇ VI, 2.19a
 evam vartana I, 2.14c
 evam vidvān II, 1.10b
 evam vidhai III, 4.17b
 evam vṛutto I, 4.26a
 evam vai VIII, 4.6a
 evam vai varta V, 4.20a
 evam vaivāhika III, 1.52b
 evam vrata I, 2.23a
 evam santata IX, 3.16c
 evam svādhyāya IX, 1.16a
 esa niskārano IV, 1.10a
 esa bhārgava XIII, 1.2b
 esa mukhya IX, 4.5b
 aiśe dyavā II, 4.11a
 aiśvarya IV, 2.26b

aihikāmuṣmika VI, 3.5c
 oghavad yāti VI, 1.23a
 ojobde V, 2.13a
 om tad brahma IV, 4.2b
 omagnim III, 2.12b
 omityaṅgikṛta V, 2.20a
 auttarāṇam XII, 2.23c
 aurase vā VI, 3.12b
 aurdhvadehika XII, 4.28b
 kaṭipat VIII, 2.9a
 kaṭisūtramca IV, 1.27a
 kaṭisūtrasya I, 3.20a
 kaṭisūtre VI, 4.2b
 kaniyān VI, 3.15b
 kanyakā puruṣa II, 2.23b
 kanyākūṭastha II, 2.12b
 kanyāgāre X, 1.8b
 kanyādāne VI, 1.33a
 kanyādāne yathā VI, 1.29a
 kanyā pitā II, 4.20a
 kanyāyām II, 2.10b
 kanyāyāśca II, 3.12b
 kanyāvikraya XIII, 4.12b
 kaḥ sudhīḥ IX, 4.13b
 kapilāyāḥ IV, 2.24b
 karayoh kaṅkāṇa VII, 4.3b
 karoti yadi XII, 3.8b
 karoti yadi XII, 3.9a
 karṇavedha V, 1.23a
 karṇavedhāntimā V, 1.25b
 karṇābhīyām IX, 3.4b
 kartavyaḥ VII, 2.26a
 karmabhir vā VIII, 4.10b
 karmabhyāḥ I, 4.7a
 karmasāksī I, 2.22b
 karmāṇī yāni VI, 3.18a
 karmārambhe VIII, 3.1a
 karśitāḥ XI, 2.3a
 kalaśe IV, 3.11b
 kalyastatra IX, 1.9a
 kalpayed IX, 3.3b

kalyāṇeṣu III, 1.23b
 kasyacid vipra VII, 1.1b
 kasyāṁścid IV, 3.5b
 kāṇḍe tu VII, 3.19a
 kāntim kautuka III, 1.6b
 kāmacāraḥ VI, 2.67b
 kāmato retasāḥ I, 4.43a
 kāmānasyā VII, 4.13a
 kāmena kṣatriyām II, 3.1b
 kāmena sveṣu V, 1.8b
 kāmyeṣu VIII, 4.5a
 kāraṇāni VI, 3.17b
 kārayed III, 1.5a
 kārtike V, 4.11a
 kārpāsa I, 3.21a
 kāryaḥ punaḥ IV, 1.38a
 kāryaśca V, 2.14b
 kāryo nānyena V, 4.5b
 kālajāṁstu VIII, 1.30a
 kālamanyacca VIII, 1.21a
 kālenāśuddhi VII, 1.8a
 kālamabhyāsa IX, 2.10a
 kālenūḍhaḥ V, 3.7a
 kāle sarvatra XI, 2.23a
 kāśāyamśas I, 3.24a
 kāśāyam kāti X, 1.9b
 kāśāro VII, 1.10a
 kiṁca strīṇām VI, 2.25a
 kim tena VII, 4.20a
 kim tvatra V, 3.27b
 kintvayam III, 4.8a
 kīrtīñca I, 2.24a
 kudyeṇāntar VIII, 1.12a
 kuṇḍikā I, 4.28b
 kunakha VII, 2.6b
 kumāri VII, 3.18a
 kumudotpala III, 1.9a
 kumbhake IX, 2.15b
 kumbhayitvā IX, 2.16b
 kuryāt parvasu XII, 1.20a
 kuryāt pitā XIII, 4.15c

kuryāt pūrta XI, 1.9a
 kuryādatha III, 2.14b
 kuryād dvijānām I, 2.2a
 kuryuh kṣetrā XII, 4.25a
 kuryustathā X, 2.8a
 kurvan kṣetra I, 2.22a
 kurvita karṣṇām XI, 1.19b
 kurvita cādhvaram V, 3.11b
 kurvita tadadho VI, 1.1a
 kurvita tadanu III, 2.2b
 kurvita dhṛta IV, 1.15a
 kulatantu VI, 3.2b
 kulatantu vidhāna VI, 2.29b
 kulato laksāṇena III, 1.1b
 kulanāśakaram VII, 4.16b
 kulaśilagūṇa V, 2.22b
 kulasantāna V, 3.6c
 kūṭasthāya II, 1.25a
 kūṭasthā api II, 2.12a
 kūṭasthāt II, 1.29a
 kūṭasthādanya II, 1.34b
 kūṭasthe sati II, 2.16a
 kūpakānna I, 4.35b
 kūpodakam VI, 3.25a
 kṛtāparyagni III, 3.17a
 kṛtākṛta VI, 2.66a
 kṛtārthāḥ XI, 3.3a
 kṛtvā gr̥hastha V, 3.18a
 kṛtvā catur III, 3.20a
 kṛtvā dharma VIII, 1.6a
 kṛtvā yaśaḥ IV, 2.25c
 kṛṣyāyatta XI, 1.24b
 kecidācamanam IV, 1.40b
 kenāpi VI, 4.14a
 keraleṣu XII, 2.24a
 keraleṣvabhi XI, 3.26b
 kevalamṛtūrdhva IV, 2.22b
 kevalena IX, 3.6a
 keśaprārambha I, 3.14a
 keśasammita I, 3.30a
 keśāntan V, 1.20a

kesāntasnāna V, 2.16a
 keśāṁcinnā V, 4.2a
 koṇe nair̥takē III, 2.11b
 koṣe praveṣa X, 3.10b
 kaupinam I, 3.22a
 kaupinadhāraṇam IV, 1.17b
 kratubhūtyai XI, 3.3b
 kratvarthe paṣu XI, 3.7a
 kriyāḥ ṣoḍaśa XII, 4.12a
 kṛidāparicchada VI, 3.7b
 kṛitā dravyeṇa II, 3.10b
 krośamekam V, 3.18b
 kvacit kṣiṇam VI, 1.23b
 kvacit viṣeṣa II, 2.1b
 klibān X, 2.10a
 kliptān II, 4.13b
 kṣatabindu VII, 2.6a
 kṣatrādinām XII, 4.14a
 kṣatriyo I, 2.15a
 kṣatreṣvadhyā I, 2.2a
 kṣamate VI, 2.62b
 kṣamā satyam II, 1.12a
 kṣāro rakṣā IV, 2.24a
 kṣipet IV, 3.25b
 kṣiptvā IV, 1.31a
 kṣudrakāntaka VII, 2.13b
 kṣudrāsu IX, 3.10b
 kṣudhātura V, 3.22b
 kṣudhābādhā V, 3.21a
 kṣetrajaḥ VI, 3.10b
 kṣetrapiṇḍena VI, 2.17c
 khañjāvanāhatam XII, 3.11a
 khādeyuḥ XI, 3.1b
 gaṇarāṭra XI, 2.16a
 gaṇḍūṣāṇ IV, 1.17a
 gataprāyam VIII, 4.6b
 gatvā tenaiva IX, 4.4b
 gandharūpa II, 3.30a
 gandhasrag III, 1.30b
 gamane VI, 2.18b
 gamayet IX, 3.39a

gartāṅkāṇa VII, 1.26b
 garbhato I, 3.7a
 garbhādeka I, 3.6a
 garbhīṇyām VI, 3.23a
 gāndharva II, 3.2b
 gām prabhāte XI, 1.12a
 gārbhikād VIII, 2.1b
 gurave dakṣīṇām II, 1.14b
 gurutalpa X, 4.13b
 guruvad vṛtti XI, 3.8a
 gurvarth VI, 1.29a
 gṛhabhū VII, 1.9a
 gṛhabhūmau VII, 1.8b
 gṛham gamiṣyan II, 1.18a
 gṛhamagnī VI, 4.22b
 gṛhavāstu VII, 1.1a
 gṛhasthāḥ VII, 2.27a
 gṛhasthāḥ pṛṣṭha IV, 1.33a
 gṛhasthāḥ svar VI, 1.15b
 gṛhasthāṣṭya tu VIII, 4.13a
 gṛhasthāṣṭya pra VI, 1.5b
 gṛhasthāṣṭyāpī VI, 1.22a
 gṛhasthāṣṭśca I, 1.9b
 gṛhasthāṅnām tu IV, 1.23b
 gṛhastho bhrūṇa VI, 1.30b
 gṛhād bahir XIII, 4.19b
 gṛhāntarāle VII, 1.25a
 gṛhābhīṣṭara III, 1.18a
 gṛhārthe tu VIII, 2.15a
 gṛhīṇī ca VI, 3.24c
 gṛhīṇīm paṇcāme VII, 1.4b
 gṛhītena ca II, 4.16a
 gṛhṇātī II, 3.6b
 gṛhṇīyat IV, 3.13a
 gṛhṇīyat jihva IX, 3.5a
 gṛhṇīyāttesu II, 4.15b
 gṛhyāgñī VII, 2.1b
 gṛhyāgñereva VII, 3.6b
 gogāmī XI, 3.24b
 gohnādinam VII, 1.2a
 gobrahmaṇo XI, 4.6b

gobhiḥ kṛṣyā I, 2.16a
 gotrapravara II, 1.44a
 gobhyo grīṣme XI, 1.15a
 gorakṣayā ca I, 2.3a
 goṣṭhaśayyā I, 1.26b
 goṣṭhavedi II, 4.12a
 goṣṭhānnīṣkāsayed XI, 1.21b
 goṣṭhe nīveśya IV, 3.6a
 gaurī padmā VIII, 3.2a
 grahāveśādi VI, 4.1a
 grāhayeyuṣca VIII, 1.9b
 grāhyo vipraḥ III, 1.21a
 grīṣme pañca IX, 1.5b
 ghaṭānāmapi II, 3.31a
 ghanasāra IV, 4.6b
 ghṛtam vā VII, 2.10a
 ghṛtmākṣika X, 2.12a
 catasra iti III, 2.20b
 catasraśca II, 4.4a
 catasraḥ syuḥ II, 2.15a
 caturaśram IX, 3.21a
 caturo vārṣikān X, 1.8a
 caturtham X, 2.12b
 caturthasya II, 2.7b
 caturthim rājanīm III, 1.33a
 caturthe' hani XII, 3.13b
 caturdaśam V, 1.20b
 caturdaśim VIII, 3.6a
 caturvīṁśati VII, 3.3a
 catuśśālā VII, 1.19a
 catuśśālānta VII, 1.30a
 caturṣvetesu III, 1.4a
 catuspād II, 2.4b
 catvāri II, 4.4b
 catvāro mukha I, 1.5b
 caramassaha III, 2.19b
 cāturmāṣya IX, 4.10a
 cāracakṣur X, 2.24b
 cittavṛtti IX, 1.16b
 cūḍāratnam VII, 4.9b
 cūṭapatreṇa IV, 1.22b

cūrṇānām VII, 4.9b
 ceṣṭābhīrathavā I, 4.20b
 coditaścānu VIII, 4.5b
 caitre māsi V, 4.6a
 cchitvā bhītavā II, 3.13a
 cchedo vā VIII, 1.18b
 jaghanyo I, 2.18a
 jananim VI, 1.25a
 jantuhiṁsā XI, 3.13b
 janmakarma X, 3.21a
 janmāmātreṇa VIII, 2.3a
 janmarkṣe VII, 1.28b
 janmideya I, 2.17a
 janmino yadi I, 2.7b
 japannapī XI, 2.19b
 jāpet saha IV, 4.28b
 jalakrīḍa VII, 4.7b
 jalāmagnīśca VIII, 1.27b
 jalāmatrīdīna VII, 1.7a
 jalayogena IX, 3.27a
 jalāśaya VII, 1.6b
 jāgarti III, 4.11a
 jātakarma V, 1.25a
 jātavedasam IV, 3.27b
 jātasya II, 1.23a
 jātitastu XI, 3.29a
 jātito veda VII, 3.10a
 jātē tasmin IV, 4.7a
 jātē tu jātā V, 2.5b
 jātō na bhāgī VI, 2.5b
 jāyate'gni VI, 4.19a
 jāyate tena VI, 2.49a
 jāyamāṇasya X, 1.18a
 jāyeta ca IX, 2.21b
 jāyeta piṇḍataḥ VI, 2.53a
 jīvannapī XI, 3.10b
 jīvitvā janma I, 2.12a
 juhuyācca VI, 1.18a
 juhuyāccāgnī V, 3.11a
 jetavyā V, 3.17a
 jyotiṣivid II, 3.31a

jñātībhīssaha III, 1.12a
 jñātvā V, 1.5a
 jñātvā vipra IV, 2.10a
 jñeyā pravara II, 4.19b
 taksāṣca VII, 3.3b
 tacca kuryād VII, 1.31a
 tañcāvarjyam IX, 4.9a
 tāṇḍulān I, 2.12b
 tata ḥāśīna III, 2.17a
 tataḥ param ca XI, 4.6a
 tataḥ paro III, 1.47b
 tataḥ pulaka IV, 3.28a
 tataḥ prākṣālyā XII, 2.12b
 tataḥ prāṇīmukha II, 4.8a
 tataśāktyā na V, 3.22a
 tataḥ savaya IX, 2.25b
 tatastathām ta VI, 2.12a
 tato' dhiṇam III, 4.8b
 tato' pyadhiṇa IX, 2.18b
 tato vyāhṛti IV, 3.21a
 tatkrama III, 3.11b
 tattaddharme X, 2.2a
 tattaddāna V, 4.3a
 tattaddānāvīdi V, 4.3b
 tattatpūrṇa III, 4.5b
 tattat saṅkhyā II, 2.19a
 tatpatnyorapi XII, 4.15b
 tatphalam II, 1.11b
 tat sāntāneṣu VI, 2.41a
 tat samsarga VIII, 1.35b
 tat sahasra VI, 1.6b
 tat sādhayet IX, 2.16a
 tat siddhāṣana IX, 2.4b
 tat sthāne VII, 1.19b
 tatra cāṣu XI, 2.12b
 tatra tāmāsa XI, 1.9a
 tatra tvakarane V, 2.6b
 tatra drṣṭāni I, 4.6a
 tatra pañcadaśa XI, 1.7a
 tatra yogī IX, 3.36a
 tatra syurāṣṭau II, 2.21a

tatrāgnāvagni III, 1.41b
 tatrāpi jāte VII, 2.18a
 tatrāpi dāna VI, 2.54b
 tatrāpi niṣkṛti VII, 2.21a
 tatrāpi sūta VI, 2.55b
 tatrāpyalabdhe X, 1.22b
 tatraiva IX, 3.22b
 tatraiva dhāra IX, 3.26a
 tatraiva dhārayan IX, 3.30a
 tatraiva dhārayan IX, 3.33b
 tatraiva vā VIII, 4.11b
 tatraivāyatane III, 1.41a
 tathā gurūṇām XII, 2.18a
 tathā ghṛtācikā VII, 2.12a
 tathātyalpa VII, 2.3a
 tathā nayajmān VI, 1.15a
 tathā pāparatā X, 2.20a
 tathāpi tatra V, 3.4b
 tathāpi tam VI, 2.51b
 tathā mṛtasya VII, 2.23a
 tathā yogodakam IX, 1.13a
 tathā vrata V, 2.15a
 tathā sati V, 3.3a
 tathāpi svapitū II, 1.34a
 tathāpyadhi VI, 2.9a
 tathāpyupari VII, 3.25a
 tathetārāgnī VII, 2.2b
 tathaiva guru I, 4.24b
 tathaiva pṛcched VIII, 1.15b
 tathaiva brahma IV, 2.30b
 tathaivopacito IX, 1.12a
 tathaivopavaset VIII, 3.5b
 tathaivātithayo VI, 1.10b
 tathocchiṣṭāśca VII, 2.17c
 tadgr̥ham III, 4.12b
 tad gr̥he III, 4.13b
 tad gr̥hesu X, 1.27a
 tadanyoydbhāvām VI, 2.45b
 tad bhaikṣa XI, 3.26a
 tadabhāvē II, 1.12b
 tadardha IV, 2.16c

tadalabhe V, 4.14b
 tadalpāyāsa IV, 2.37a
 tadaśaktau VI, 1.31b
 tadā tām VIII, 1.19b
 tadāpyā VIII, 2.22b
 tadā buddhi IX, 3.9b
 tadidam X, 2.22b
 tadiyāhāva IX, 4.14b
 tadeva brahma XI, 4.4b
 tadeva medhyam XI, 4.1b
 tadaivāpi VII, 3.17c
 tadvadanyatra X, 1.21a
 tantuvāyasya XII, 4.13b
 tannāmani III, 3.8a
 tapasvinām X, 3.18b
 tapoyajñā II, 1.3a
 tarpayantya II, 1.5b
 tamupasthita I, 4.16d
 tam dṛṣṭvā VIII, 1.15a
 tam varjayet VII, 3.8b
 tayloragni IV, 2.35b
 tayossapinḍa II, 2.5b
 tayossāpindya II, 1.43a
 taruṇārka IX, 3.29b
 talpakothā VII, 2.12b
 tasmāttad VI, 2.63b
 tasmāttā eva III, 4.6b
 tasmāt pumān VI, 2.38b
 tasmāt prasūta VI, 2.66b
 tasmāt sagotra II, 1.39a
 tasmāt sandhyām IV, 2.4a
 tasmāt snātva V, 1.10b
 tasmāt svadārān VII, 4.18b
 tasmādagnim III, 4.16a
 tasmādagnim sadā III, 4.10a
 tasmād dharmān I, 2.27a
 tasmād vana IX, 3.42b
 tasmādanāratam X, 3.17a
 tasmādaputro VI, 2.21a
 tasmādatithi VI, 1.16a
 tasmāddānam I, 1.20a

tasmādyajmā XI, 3.15b
 tasmādyateran XI, 4.15a
 tasmānmāṇsam XI, 3.21a
 tasmīnnukte VIII, 1.20a
 tasminneva VI, 3.16a
 tasmin siddhe VI, 1.39b
 tasya gāvah XII, 2.8a
 tasya tasya VI, 4.21a
 tasya dānāt VI, 2.60a
 tasya patnī II, 2.26b
 tasya viṇ IX, 3.8b
 tasya siddham XI, 3.12b
 tasyāmāpya IX, 4.6b
 tasyaivam IX, 3.17b
 tasyaiva mukhye II, 1.39b
 tādṛśam XI, 3.4a
 tānapi III, 3.2a
 tānpraya II, 3.21a
 tāneva ca X, 3.24b
 tānnidhāya IV, 3.16a
 tābhīrdatta IX, 3.40b
 tābhīḥ pra VIII, 1.4a
 tābhyaṁ XII, 1.2a
 tābhyaṁanyad IV, 2.19c
 tām kuryāt II, 3.17a
 tām ca kuryuḥ VIII, 3.13a
 tām tām V, 1.7b
 tāmakurvan VI, 1.22b
 tāmapya VI, 2.10a
 tāmeva pratha IV, 2.9b
 tām vijānā VI, 4.16a
 tāraṇe sapta V, 3.16a
 tāvataḥ vīpra II, 1.23b
 tāvatoranya II, 2.5a
 tāvad dīksā XII, 4.16b
 tāvadevāsanam IX, 2.5a
 tāvad yāvad VI, 3.29a
 tāvatsam II, 4.2b
 tāvadhaḥ III, 1.30a
 tāsām II, 2.10a
 tiṣṭhantah IV, 2.11a
 tiṣṭhiḥ VII, 1.25b
 tiṣṭvetāsu VIII, 3.6a
 tisraścasasro III, 2.17b
 tisrah sandhyām IV, 2.2b
 tisro rātri III, 1.32b
 tisro vīnā III, 1.50a
 tisro vyāhṛtayah III, 1.49a
 tire vā X, 1.9a
 tīrthayātrām XII, 2.21b
 tīrthaśiāddham XII, 2.24b
 turye turye IX, 1.4a
 tulasiādala II, 4.7b
 tuṣākapāla IV, 1.5a
 tūṣṇim gāvo IV, 3.96
 tūṣṇim niveśa III, 2.3a
 tṛṇāśayyām V, 4.7b
 tṛṇyamatha V, 1.17b
 tṛṇye bhājane VII, 3.17b
 tṛṇye' hani XII, 3.4a
 te dvijā IV, 2.6b
 tena pakvam X, 1.32b
 tenaiva saha X, 3.19b
 tenaiva homaḥ IX, 1.2a
 tebhyo'anya II, 1.43b
 tebhyo'parādhā X, 3.2a
 teṣām kālān VIII, 2.2a
 teṣām kauṭu XI, 1.22b
 teṣām mate tu II, 1.31a
 teṣāmapi X, 2.6e
 teṣāmūthāna VII, 1.21a
 teṣu mimāmsa VIII, 1.8b
 teṣvamī deva II, 4.9b
 tairapytra V, 2.8a
 tau tu XII, 3.8a
 trayametad XII, 2.7a
 trayo jñeyā I, 3.1b
 tripundra IV, 4.13b
 tripundrasā IV, 2.23b
 tripundreṇā IV, 4.15a
 tripundreṇā vinā IV, 4.15b
 tripundreṇā vinā IV, 4.16a

tribhyo gṛhastha IV, 2.33b
 tirevam vidhi IV, 2.12a
 tir me IV, 3.13b
 trivargo VI, 1.3a
 trivāram I, 1.17a
 triṇi varṣāṇi X, 3.28a
 triṇi dvikāni I, 2.1b
 tretāgnī V, 1.24b
 tretāgnisam V, 2.23a
 traivārṣika VII, 3.15b
 traivārṣika VI, 1.19b
 tryāvartini IV, 1.11b
 tyaktvā I, 3.14b
 daksīṇā IV, 1.1b
 daksīṇām XII, 4.11b
 daksīṇe IV, 2.20a
 daksīṇe bhā IV, 4.16b
 daksīṇe I, 3.16c
 dagdhagātra IV, 3.4a
 dandi bhikṣā I, 4.27b
 danḍastatho I, 3.28b
 danḍapūtām X, 1.11a
 dattamāca VI, 2.52a
 dattasvikaraṇam VI, 2.54a
 dattāyā II, 3.26a
 datte'pi VIII, 4.7b
 datvā go II, 3.8a
 datvā pulaka IV, 3.26b
 dadadbhir VI, 1.6a
 dadyāt kanyām II, 3.16a
 dadyāt kuṭumbā V, 4.6b
 dadyācā daśā V, 3.24b
 dadyācā sarva X, 3.15b
 dadyāt gṛṭā VI, 1.7b
 dadyāt prati VII, 4.17b
 dadhinirma XI, 1.16a
 dadhinirma XII, 2.6a
 dadhi pañcāka VII, 1.28a
 dantānā IV, 1.25a
 dantolūkhala XI, 4.3b
 dambhādya X, 2.23a

dayayā vā XI, 3.14b
 darbhāsana II, 4.9a
 darśitā IV, 4.33b
 darśaśca III, 4.1a
 darśaśca paur III, 1.36a
 dātavyaśca VI, 2.41b
 dātm X, 2.10b
 dānaiśca V, 3.23b
 dāyādā XII, 4.25b
 dāsān dāsi I, 2.14a
 dāsānātmani VIII, 2.17a
 dāsāya XI, 1.11b
 dāśipadam II, 3.11a
 dāsīrubha III, 1.25b
 dāsīsu cānna VII, 4.14a
 dāhakasya VII, 1.11b
 dīkṣu toyam IV, 3.26a
 dinānyutsava VI, 4.10a
 dīksāntare III, 1.38b
 diyatāmiti I, 1.18b
 dīrghatīvra II, 3.19a
 durlabhaḥ IX, 4.11b
 durlabhaṇ I, 2.21b
 duṣṭāyām VIII, 1.30b
 duṣṭāyām VIII, 1.31a
 duṣputra VI, 4.13a
 duṣprati V, 4.21a
 duṣpratigraha V, 4.16a
 dustarāṇ I, 2.25b
 duhitṛṣvapi VIII, 2.14a
 dūrataḥ VII, 1.12b
 dūradarśi IX, 3.7a
 dūram dāsair VII, 4.2b
 dūrādāyāntam I, 4.19a
 dūrādeva IX, 3.11a
 dūrādvihāya XI, 3.11b
 dūrikṛtya VI, 1.35b
 dūśitam tad VIII, 1.37a
 dr̥ṣyāte XI, 3.27b
 dr̥ṣyādṛṣya IV, 2.9a
 dr̥ṣtamātre VI, 1.36a

dr̥ṣṭipūtān X, 1.10a
 devakhātam IX, 3.43a
 devatā III, 3.6b
 devatāyā IX, 4.1b
 devam nārā IX, 3.25a
 devayajmo VI, 1.2a
 devasenā VIII, 3.2b
 devān XI, 4.2a
 devāmśca X, 3.22b
 devālaya III, 1.14b
 devālaye VIII, 1.10a
 devālayeṣu XII, 4.21c
 deśādhyakṣa X, 2.7b
 dairike XI, 3.6b
 daivo ya VI, 2.3a
 doṣānām VII, 3.21b
 doṣānāmiti VII, 3.18b
 doṣāstebhyāḥ VII, 3.23b
 dauhitram III, 1.22a
 dauhitro VI, 3.8b
 draṣṭavya VIII, 2.14b
 drāghiyasyā IX, 2.17b
 dvātrimśat IV, 4.26a
 dvādaśa IV, 1.8a
 dvārikṛtya VI, 2.34b
 dvāvāpyanyau I, 2.25c
 dvāvetā III, 1.24b
 dvijatvam I, 4.1a
 dvijaḥ prātaśca IV, 2.1b
 dvijatvamāca VI, 4.17a
 dvijāṅgaṇā VII, 4.11a
 dvijānām yaḥ II, 1.4a
 dvijābhāṣā VII, 3.16c
 dvijair IV, 1.42b
 dvitiyanna X, 4.8b
 dvitiyām vā V, 2.21a
 dvitiye mannavā III, 2.18b
 dvau dvau II, 4.8b
 dvau dharmā I, 2.4a
 dhanadurgam X, 2.3b
 dharma eva I, 2.27b

dharmapca II, 4.11b
 dharmbhedasya I, 3.27b
 dharmam VIII, 3.7a
 dharmāśca VI, 3.28a
 dharmasthāsu X, 2.19b
 dharmasya X, 1.33b
 dharmādharma I, 1.8b
 dharmenānena II, 1.13a
 dharmye VI, 4.21b
 dhātustri IX, 2.14b
 dhāraṇā IX, 3.20a
 dhārayetām VIII, 1.17a
 dhārayet I, 3.33a
 dhārayedatha VII, 4.4a
 dhārayed vipra XI, 2.17b
 dhārayeyuh I, 3.20b
 dhāryāṇi IX, 1.1b
 dhāvan dhāva I, 4.17b
 dhautavastra IV, 3.10b
 dhautavastro IV, 3.7a
 dhautān II, 4.7a
 dhyāyan IX, 3.22a
 dhyātvā I, 1.16b
 dhyeyaika IX, 2.7b
 dhruvarkṣe VI, 2.44b
 na kāṃṣya XII, 1.12a
 na kāṃṣya XII, 3.6a
 na kiṇcid XI, 2.21a
 na kuryāt XII, 3.3a
 na kuryān X, 3.1a
 na kuryālloka VII, 1.19b
 na kurvita I, 4.35a
 na kulathān I, 4.29a
 na kevalam VI, 2.56a
 na kruddhasya XII, 1.9a
 na khañjāya II, 3.22a
 na khādati XI, 3.17a
 na gacchet XI, 3.24a
 na gṛhā VI, 3.24a
 na ca kṛṣṇa XI, 1.18b
 na ca gitān II, 1.39b

na ca nagna XII, 1.9b
 na cābhijana II, 3.22b
 na caite I, 3.31a
 na jaṭām I, 3.13a
 na tatra XII, 2.10a
 na tatra tiṣṭhet I, 4.21b
 na taylor VI, 2.29a
 na tasya I, 4.20a
 na tilānnam XII, 1.15a
 na teṣām I, 4.13b
 natvā dharma I, 1.1a
 na dadyād VI, 3.1a
 na danta XII, 3.2b
 na dantair XII, 1.13a
 na dārair XI, 4.10b
 nadimṛt I, 4.18a
 na dūrasthām XII, 2.26a
 nadyā rodhasi XII, 2.25b
 na nāstī XII, 1.8a
 na nirvāsān I, 4.29b
 nanu svārtha X, 4.4b
 na pamcamē V, 2.3b
 na payogula I, 4.30a
 na parvaṇī XI, 1.18a
 na paśyet I, 4.38b
 na paśyet vaca XII, 1.8b
 na pāṇau XI, 4.9b
 na pādāvupa I, 4.25a
 na pibet XI, 2.10a
 na pūrvam IV, 4.20a
 na pratyanila IV, 1.5b
 na praudhā XI, 4.13b
 na bijam VII, 1.4a
 na bhasmani IV, 1.4b
 na bhinnāsana XI, 4.8b
 na bhūmau IV, 1.3a
 na māksikam II, 4.32a
 na yogāt para IX, 1.11a
 narakesu X, 1.19b
 na rasālām I, 4.32b
 narasya tair VII, 3.11b

na rātrau XI, 4.11a
 na rātrau san XII, 2.28a
 na lumpecca I, 4.44a
 na lobhāt VI, 31b
 na loṣṭa XII, 1.12b
 na vatasakam XII, 1.16b
 na vadet XI, 2.7b
 navamān V, 1.19a
 navame I, 3.7b
 na varṇa I, 4.31a
 na valmīke IV, 1.4a
 na vidyate VI, 1.4a
 na vilumpet III, 1.37a
 na vrata V, 1.4b
 na śabda I, 4.31b
 na śādvale IV, 1.3b
 naśyatyeva VII, 3.15a
 na ṣaṣṭhyām V, 1.2b
 na sidet IX, 3.41a
 na striyā I, 4.39a
 na snāyād XI, 2.8b
 na spr̄secca XII, 3.2a
 na spr̄seyuḥ IV, 4.25a
 na haste IV, 2.34a
 na līna XII, 1.5a
 na hināṁśca XII, 1.4b
 nākāryam I, 4.11b
 nātāḥ XI, 3.20b
 nātī dirgha I, 3.30b
 nātmānam XII, 1.18a
 nātāpadyapi I, 2.20b
 nādadyād X, 2.16b
 nādhikāṅgi II, 3.29a
 nādhikriya VIII, 3.15a
 nādhyasyet X, 1.20b
 nānādhyāyena IV, 4.31a
 nānārūpa IV, 4.26a
 nāntarā IV, 4.22a
 nāntarā visṛ I, 4.33b
 nānyaguhyam XII, 1.10a
 nānyāḥ sam VI, 2.56b

nānyābhi I, 4.8b
 nāpriya V, 1.4a
 nābhiveṣṭana VII, 4.10a
 nāmasam IX, 4.10b
 nāmedhyam XII, 1.11a
 nāmnaḥ prāg V, 2.9a
 nārīgamana XI, 3.28a
 nārdravāsā XI, 4.8a
 nārdrāmbarā XII, 2.13b
 nārdharātре XI, 4.7b
 nāryāśca VII, 2.9a
 nārhanti II, 3.20b
 nālametat VII, 1.22b
 nāvekṣamāṇa X, 1.5b
 nāsāsta I, 3.12b
 nāsikā VII, 4.4b
 nāhimsayā XI, 3.13a
 nāhutvā XI, 4.11b
 nityakarma XII, 3.15a
 nityāndha X, 1.16b
 nityair VIII, 4.10c
 nityam yad IV, 2.21b
 nityam śāstra XII, 1.7a
 nidhānapataye IV, 3.21b
 nidhānamitū III, 2.22a
 nidheyastatra VI, 2.36b
 nidhau labdhe X, 3.10a
 nipuṇān X, 2.9a
 nimantra III, 1.33b
 nimantritair VIII, 3.8a
 nimittena XII, 1.19a
 nimitte sati IV, 1.19a
 nirayesu I, 2.26b
 nirasyedatha III, 2.3a
 nirāyatana III, 1.40c
 nirdhūtapāpā IV, 1.5a
 nirmijjyāva IV, 1.35a
 nirlikhya XII, 1.20a
 nirvāṇam III, 1.38a
 nivarteta VIII, 4.1a
 nivāpāṁbu VI, 2.20a

nivṛttavṛṣali XII, 3.14b
 nivṛttepi II, 1.44b
 nivedayecca VIII, 1.17b
 niveditānna XII, 4.22a
 niṣāda VI, 2.28a
 niṣiddha VI, 4.3b
 niṣiddhanna I, 2.21a
 niṣkṛtim VII, 2.18b
 niṣkṛtim vīda III, 1.52a
 niṣkṛtīr vīrata VIII, 3.12b
 niṣkṛtīstatra VII, 3.17b
 niṣkrāmaṇa V, 2.10a
 niṣpīḍya IV, 1.39a
 niṣprayāśo IV, 4.10b
 nistvacam I, 3.31b
 nissvebhyo X, 3.16a
 nissārya VIII, 1.34a
 nihite III, 1.51b
 nicasaurata V, 1.9a
 nicāṁśca VI, 1.38a
 nicebhyāḥ VI, 1.35a
 nitvāntikam IV, 3.8b
 nūnam syāt II, 4.17a
 nr̄pāstu X, 1.24a
 nr̄po'tha VIII, 1.7b
 nryajño VI, 1.4a
 necchāma II, 3.11b
 netavyo VI, 4.22a
 naikasmin XI, 4.13a
 naikādaśyām IV, 1.24a
 naite vīcchettum VI, 2.58b
 naiva kuryāt XII, 4.26b
 naiva bhinna II, 3.23a
 naiva śāstram XI, 2.8a
 naivādyāt XI, 4.7a
 naivānabhi X, 1.31a
 naivārtha X, 3.7a
 nairdhanye V, 2.20b
 naiṣṭhika V, 3.12b
 naiṣṭhiko IV, 1.16b
 naiṣṭhiko yāvad V, 3.2b

nocchiṣṭahavi XII, 1.14b
 notsaṅgo XI, 4.9a
 nodavyām XII, 1.15b
 nodvahet II, 3.29a
 nommattāya II, 3.21b
 noparāge XI, 1.19a
 nopekṣeta X, 2.29a
 nordhvapuṇḍri XI, 2.17a
 naukāyāne VII, 3.12b
 nyasyābhi III, 3.16b
 nyavased XII, 3.6b
 nyāyyadandā X, 9.9b
 nyāyyenāśādya VI, 2.1a
 paksānte IX, 1.5a
 paksāntan III, 1.36a
 paksopahata II, 3.18a
 pacanādika XII, 4.4a
 pañcabhir VI, 2.8a
 pañcabhyo V, 4.12a
 pañcamam V, 1.18a
 pañcamasya II, 1.27a
 pañcamī II, 1.29b
 pañcamyāh II, 2.20b
 pañcasūnā VI, 1.1a
 pañcasūnām VI, 1.4b
 pañcāgnīn III, 4.4b
 pañcānāmiti IV, 3.15a
 pañcāvittīnī IV, 1.10a
 patitānām VII, 2.20b
 patitānī V, 3.19b
 patite IX, 3.31a
 patipravāṇa XII, 2.15a
 patireveśvaraḥ VI, 2.5b
 patnim vinyasya VIII, 4.7a
 patnyāmāpanna VI, 3.20b
 patnyā saha VIII, 4.8a
 patyuh XII, 2.16a
 patyurāyuh VIII, 4.3b
 patyau jivati VIII, 4.3a
 patram XII, 3.13a
 patrasya I, 4.34b

padatrayāt VII, 3.1b
 padadvādaśa VII, 3.2a
 pathikebhyo V, 3.15b
 panthāno III, 4.9a
 parakṣetre XII, 1.16a
 paracakra XI, 3.17b
 parañica X, 3.9b
 paranārī VII, 4.17b
 parahṛd VI, 3.6b
 parikramya II, 4.15a
 parigṛhṇāt II, 3.14a
 parigraham V, 1.22b
 paridadhyaācca IV, 1.39b
 paripāti IV, 1.8c
 parimṛjya IV, 1.6a
 parivartya XII, 2.5a
 parihārād VII, 3.9a
 parokṣam VIII, 1.12b
 paryāpto IX, 2.27b
 paryukṣya III, 3.20b
 paryukṣya samit III, 3.9b
 pavamāna VII, 3.20b
 pavitram VI, 3.23b
 paśavyeṣu XI, 1.12b
 paścāttāpa VIII, 1.28b
 paścādupa VIII, 3.11a
 paścādbhojana VIII, 3.12a
 pāṇim grhṇātī II, 3.27a
 pātreṇa IV, 2.34b
 pātre dakṣiṇa III, 2.5b
 pātreṣu kutra IV, 3.16b
 pādāṅguli VII, 4.9a
 pādāvanejanam VII, 1.22a
 pādaṣṭkāt VII, 3.1a
 padau na XII, 1.11b
 pādau mr̥d IV, 1.27b
 pādau yathā IV, 1.40a
 pānād vā XI, 1.14a
 pāpātmanā XI, 3.31a
 pāpāni IX, 2.30b
 pāpiṣṭho II, 3.15a

pāratantrya X, 1.18b
 pāralaukika VI, 2.16b
 pālāśī III, 2.7b
 pāvakasya V, 1.8a
 pāvamāni III, 3.24a
 pāśikṛta I, 4.76b
 piṇḍakartur VI, 2.13a
 pitā ca III, 1.19b
 pitānya I, 3.4a
 pitāmaha II, 1.42b
 pitāmahaḥ syāt II, 2.15b
 pituḥ pitṛ II, 1.32a
 pituḥ pitā II, 2.26a
 pitustena II, 1.38b
 piturmātula II, 1.32b
 pitṛkarma VI, 3.4b
 pitṛpakṣa II, 1.35a
 pitṛbandho II, 1.26a
 pitṛbhīḥ VI, 2.7b
 pitṛmīśa II, 1.4b
 pitṛmīśa madhu II, 1.9b
 pitrā datta II, 3.6a
 pitrādayaḥ II, 1.40a
 pitrossam XII, 4.16a
 pitryamannam VI, 3.22a
 pitrye karmani XII, 2.9b
 pitrye karmani VIII, 3.7b
 puṇyeḥṇī I, 4.3a
 putra iti VI, 2.22b
 putradharma VI, 3.11a
 putram vilokya X, 1.4a
 putrasya VI, 2.14a
 putra eva VI, 2.13b
 putrasya yena II, 1.38a
 putrasya vā II, 2.14b
 putrasya siddha VI, 2.64b
 putrasya svesu VI, 3.14b
 putrasyaiva VI, 2.59b
 putrā eva III, 1.21b
 putrādyaḥ X, 3.27d
 putrā na XII, 2.18b

putrārtham V, 1.3b
 putrau putri II, 2.11b
 punaragni III, 1.48b
 punaragni III, 2.20a
 punaścaiva III, 3.21a
 punnāma VI, 2.22a
 pumāṁsaḥ II, 2.22b
 pumāścitta III, 3.32a
 pumsaḥ sam VI, 2.51a
 pumstva eva II, 3.16b
 pumstvamca II, 3.23b
 purastācca III, 1.25a
 puruṣakrama II, 2.11a
 puruṣāpekṣa II, 1.30a
 puṣpodbheda V, 1.13a
 puṣpodbheda V, 1.2b
 pumsava V, 2.3a
 pūtāḥ syuḥ IV, 1.26b
 pūtighrāṇa VII, 2.25a
 pūrayitvā III, 2.15a
 pūruṣāśca VIII, 1.29b
 pūrṇāhuti III, 2.16b
 pūrṇāhutim vā III, 3.11a
 pūrṇāhutisū III, 4.6a
 pūrtam V, 3.15a
 pūrvābhyā IX, 2.22b
 pūrvaiḥ IV, 4.17b
 pṛthagveṣā I, 1.10a
 pāiśācaścāṣṭa II, 3.3a
 pauṭryaḥ II, 2.28b
 paurīmāsa III, 4.3a
 paurvāparyeṇa I, 1.27b
 panṣe tu V, 4.13a
 prakalpya III, 1.2a
 prakalpya rekhā II, 4.56
 prakīrṇa XII, 2.29a
 prakṛtiṣṭha IV, 2.13a
 prakosṭhād IV, 1.32a
 prajābhyāḥ X, 2.11b
 pranayāt IX, 3.14b
 pratikālam XI, 2.22a

pratigrāha IX, 4.14a
 pratigrāhya V, 4.18b
 pratipakṣam VIII, 2.19a
 pratimāsam VI, 4.4a
 prativarṇam I, 2.28a
 prativarṣam XI, 3.22b
 prativarṣam yathā XI, 1.7b
 pratīṣidhā VIII, 2.20a
 pratīṣṭhāpya IV, 3.18b
 pratīkṣamāṇo III, 1.12a
 pratyakṣam VI, 1.33b
 pratyakṣamca I, 4.12b
 pratyakṣalavanya IV, 4.24a
 pratyapatyam V, 1.15a
 pratyabdam VIII, 2.19b
 pratyaham tad III, 2.18b
 pratyaham sāgni I, 4.26b
 pratyahañca IV, 2.19b
 pratyaham śrāddha IV, 2.4b
 pratyāharanam II, 3.26b
 pratyāhāram IX, 2.1b
 prathamam III, 1.18a
 prathamāmadhi VI, 3.17a
 prathamo'yam VIII, 1.22b
 pradhānāḥ XII, 3.19b
 prapadena IV, 3.20a
 pramṛtena I, 2.5a
 prayato XII, 2.14a
 pravartanā I, 1.7b
 pravarteta XIII, 2.5b
 praviśenna I, 4.36a
 pravṛtiṇī IV, 2.22a
 praveśam vāra VII, 1.16b
 praveśayet III, 1.28b
 praśama I, 4.36a
 praśamayya V, 3.20a
 praśame V, 4.17a
 prasiddhyā III, 1.47a
 prasūtām VI, 2.40a
 prasūtāyāḥ IX, 2.33b
 prasthāpayati II, 3.28b

prasthāya III, 1.13b
 prasvedah IX, 2.17a
 prākprati III, 3.18a
 prāgaśṭama VI, 4.20b
 prāgeva VII, 3.22b
 prāgjāyate XII, 3.9b
 prāgeva co I, 4.4b
 prānānya III, 1.35b
 prācināvītināḥ IV, 2.13a
 prācīmabhi IV, 2.10b
 prācyā II, 2.30a
 prāṇadām II, 1.3b
 prāṇasandhā X, 1.6b
 prāṇatyāgo I, 1.32b
 prāṇasamyamana IX, 2.6b
 prāṇān gr̥hān XI, 2.2b
 prāṇāpāna IX, 3.2a
 prāṇāyāma IX, 2.13b
 prāṇāyāmena V, 4.17b
 prāṇaspanda IX, 2.13a
 prāṇinām XI, 3.11a
 prātaśca X, 1.28b
 prātassāyam XI, 3.11a
 prātaśca X, 1.28b
 prātassāyam VII, 1.24b
 prādurbhūtasya I, 1.16a
 prānte vṛti VII, 1.3b
 prāptumarhati II, 1.17b
 prāpnuvanti XI, 3.5b
 prāpya vā IX, 2.26a
 prāptau XII, 3.4b
 prāpte tu VI, 4.11a
 prāpnuyāt XI, 3.31b
 prāya ḥāyāśrama I, 4.44b
 prāyacchat X, 3.24a
 prāyastadeva I, 1.3a
 prāya'scittam VI, 3.14a
 prāyeṇa X, 4.5a
 prāyo jalam IV, 4.5b
 prārabdha VIII, 2.20b
 prāśanam V, 1.18b

prāha dānāni V, 4.4b
 priyam vada II, 3.24a
 prinayitvā XI, 3.2b
 pretya I, 2.24b
 pretya lokān I, 1.21a
 prokṣaṇī III, 3.13c
 proksya III, 1.39a
 phalayajma XI, 1.20b
 phāle tu X, 4.12b
 phālgune V, 4.14a
 bandhanācca XI, 3.14a
 bahavo X, 4.1b
 bahir vidhāya VIII, 1.28a
 bahu duhkha X, 1.17b
 bahudhā IX, 2.20b
 bahudhā sam II, 3.27b
 bahu na I, 2.20a
 bahusmṛti XII, 2.1a
 bahūnām XI, 4.12b
 bāṇodhāraṇa X, 3.4b
 bādhāścāya VI, 4.1b
 bālakasya VIII, 1.9b
 bālam camaryā X, 2.14a
 bālasya śūdra VIII, 2.8b
 bālassadvamśa VI, 4.13b
 bālānnirbhatsa XI, 4.20a
 bāhujāṅghri I, 1.31a
 bāhujoruja I, 1.28a
 bāhujorujayoh I, 1.30a
 bāhulyāt V, 3.19b
 binduvāpam IX, 3.36b
 bibhiṣikā VI, 4.8a
 bibhṛyānna VIII, 2.17b
 bilvamāla VI, 4.4b
 bijasamgraha VII, 4.13b
 buddhipūrvam XI, 3.16b
 bubhukṣitaiḥ VI, 4.7a
 baijikam VI, 4.18a
 bṛmhayet IV, 3.25a
 brahmakṣatra I, 1.22a
 brahmacyā XII, 4.11b
 brahmacāri IV, 2.17b
 brahmacāri cared II, 1.1b
 brahmacāri divam VI, 1.12a
 brahmacāri vana VI, 1.5a
 brahmaṇā kalpitāḥ V, 4.1b
 brahmajajna VI, 1.2b
 brahmavarcasa I, 3.5b
 brahmavarcasam XII, 3.12a
 brāhmāṇam IV, 3.28b
 brāhmaṇah I, 3.1a
 brāhmaṇah kṣa I, 1.5a
 brāhmaṇam vā X, 3.20b
 brāhmaṇastapasā X, 1.1a
 brāhmaṇastapasā XI, 1.25b
 brāhmaṇānām X, 3.1b
 brāhmaṇārthe XI, 2.6a
 brāhmaṇebhyāḥ X, 2.17b
 brāhmaṇo'gni III, 1.45a
 brāhmaṇo naiva XII, 4.14b
 brāhmaṇorūja I, 1.26a
 brāhmam proksa IV, 1.41a
 brāhmam loka II, 1.13a
 brāhme muhūrte IV, 1.1a
 bhajate'pa XII, 3.10b
 bhajantasate XII, 4.28a
 bhajeta X, 3.23a
 bhajeyuḥ III, 1.26b
 bhartuḥ pada XII, 2.21b
 bhartureva XII, 3.18a
 bhavecca X, 1.12a
 bhavedeva VI, 2.60b
 bhasmadāna IV, 2.32b
 bhasmalohita IV, 2.25b
 bhagini VI, 2.28b
 bhāgamanvatra X, 2.22a
 bhāgineya I, 3.27a
 bhāgineyātma VI, 2.26a
 bhāgineyātma VI, 2.37a
 bhāgiśvavida X, 3.27b
 bhārgavasya XI, 3.27a
 bhārgaveṇa V, 4.15b

bhārgaveṇa samā VI, 2.42b
 bhārgaveṇa samā XII, 4.27b
 bhārgavo V, 4.4a
 bhāryā dadāti X, 4.4a
 bhāvāduta VI, 2.4a
 bhiksānnam XI, 4.4a
 bhikṣubhya IV, 2.33a
 bhittistambha III, 1.6a
 bhuñjita I, 4.28a
 bhuñjita kada XII, 2.16a
 bhuvāsca III, 1.3b
 bhuvi vā IX, 2.15b
 bhūjajayam IX, 3.23a
 bhūtapreta IV, 2.27a
 bhūbhūjo X, 3.7b
 bhūmim IX, 2.19b
 bhūmav IV, 3.12b
 bhūyopi X, 2.19a
 bhūrbhuva III, 2.9b
 bhṛgvagni IX, 1.7a
 bhedāsyu II, 2.11b
 bhramaccittām IV, 3.2b
 bhrāṣṭaśca V, 3.8b
 bhrātrā VI, 2.58a
 maṅktvā IV, 1.31b
 maṅgalya III, 1.14a
 mattām II, 3.14b
 madyārthe VII, 1.5a
 madhyato III, 2.4b
 madhyadeśe II, 2.29b
 madhyamām II, 1.29b
 manur namo IV, 3.22a
 manththam XII, 2.7b
 mantrakarma VI, 2.67a
 mantrajāpi III, 1.24a
 mantrapūrva III, 3.59
 mantrasādhana IX, 2.14a
 mantrastatra III, 1.42a
 mantrēṇāśicya III, 2.21a
 mantrōtra III, 2.16a
 manyate V, 4.20a

mayūrānya VII, 2.4a
 maraṇam X, 1.11b
 maricādi X, 2.15a
 malinam XII, 1.7b
 mallikākunda III, 1.9b
 mantrākṣetra IX, 4.11a
 mahāpātakin X, 4.10b
 mahāpāpāni IV, 4.14b
 mahiśīghṛta XII, 4.9b
 mātaraśca VIII, 3.1b
 mātaram pita VI, 1.26a
 mātā pradiya VI, 2.57a
 mātāmaha II, 2.25b
 mātāmahyāḥ II, 1.41b
 mātuḥ mātā II, 2.17a
 mātuḥ mātāmaho II, 1.40b
 mātureva VI, 2.30b
 mātussamāna II, 2.20a
 mātpakṣa II, 1.36a
 mātpāndho II, 1.26a
 mātpāndhośca II, 1.28b
 mātpāvad I, 4.25b
 mātpāmāṣepi II, 1.45a
 mātpāmāṣo II, 1.45b
 mānuṣye I, 3.15b
 mā bhūd VII, 3.10b
 mārjane IV, 1.35b
 māṁsasya VII, 2.24b
 māsamekam III, 1.35a
 māsād VIII, 2.8a
 māsi proṣṭha V, 4.10a
 māhānasika XII, 3.17b
 mitam svādu VI, 4.6b
 mitād bahi VII, 3.5a
 mitrāmitra X, 4.3b
 mimāṁsaka VIII, 1.22a
 mimāṁsakāśca VIII, 1.7b
 muktakeśā VI, 3.25b
 mukhajo I, 1.33a
 munih kāmyāni V, 3.27a
 mūtram tatra IV, 3.14b

mūtram puriṣam VII, 1.23a
 mūtre viṣṭe IV, 1.14b
 mūtreṇa IV, 4.4b
 mūlasya XI, 1.8a
 mṛgāyā X, 3.3a
 mṛgāyāyām X, 3.5a
 mṛṭavatsām IV, 3.3a
 mṛṭesu tesu XII, 4.18b
 medaḥ sa II, 1.7b
 mōksamārgam IX, 4.15a
 mocanam IX, 3.2b
 mauni bhumijita I, 4.33a
 mriyamāna VI, 3.16b
 mriyamānasya VI, 2.14b
 mriyeta IX, 2.23a
 mleccha VII, 4.8a
 ya icchet XI, 1.16a
 yacca dattam III, 4.14b
 yajña eva XI, 3.6a
 yajñāḥ VI, 1.3b
 yajñāṅga VII, 1.6a
 yajñairvā VI, 1.19a
 yatamānah VI, 1.34b
 yatavāk X, 1.13a
 yatavācaśca IV, 1.2b
 yatihasta VI, 1.8a
 yat praya II, 3.9c
 yatra jāte VI, 2.47a
 yatra sthita X, 2.5b
 yatra syād XI, 2.12a
 yatra svamāṁsam XI, 3.20a
 yetetāsmād I, 4.21c
 yathākāmam VIV, 3.11b
 yathākālam gur I, 4.9c
 yathākālam yathā XI, 1.17b
 yathākulam V, 2.9a
 yathāgnir IX, 1.11b
 yāthācāram IV, 2.11b
 yāthācāram vratā VII, 4.15a
 yāthācāraśca I, 3.25b
 yathājanma VI, 2.59a
 yāthā daya I, 1.14b
 yathā na ca VII, 1.17b
 yathānanta VI, 1.36b
 yathā na ninda VI, 1.16b
 yathā na bhaikṣa VI, 1.14c
 yathā na vividha VI, 1.11a
 yathā na snāna VI, 1.12a
 yathā pālāśa I, 3.28a
 yathā pramāṇa VII, 3.7a
 yathā mahā IX, 1.12b
 yathā mucyeta VIII, 1.6a
 yathā mūḍha IX, 3.12b
 yathā yoga IX, 1.17a
 yathālābhām X, 1.7a
 yathālābhām VI, 2.39c
 yathāvat VI, 2.61b
 yathāvat sam IV, 4.11b
 yathāvadatha IV, 1.30a
 yathāvidhi VI, 1.18b
 yathā śakti I, 1.20b
 yathā sa VIII, 2.13b
 yathā sādāt VII, 2.2a
 yathā strīnām VI, 1.10a
 yathā hi I, 1.14c
 yathā hi IX, 3.13c
 yathēṇānnam XI, 4.1a
 yadanagni II, 4.14a
 yadarghyam III, 4.15b
 yadartham XI, 3.12a
 yadā paśyet IX, 2.11b
 yadi kalpyeta II, 1.33b
 yadi mālyam XII, 3.7a
 yadi vikrama I, 3.6b
 yadi vedimṛdā II, 4.17a
 yadi vamśe VI, 2.52b
 yadi sambhrātra V, 3.6a
 yadetat IX, 1.13b
 yadaikya IX, 3.2b
 yadyat IX, 3.4a
 yadyadicchet IX, 4.5a
 yadyadvrata VII, 4.2a

yadyadni V, 2.24a
 yadyanya II, 1.42a
 yadyadrū III, 1.32a
 yadyasau II, 1.24
 yadyasti X, 4.5a
 yadyasti sva VI, 1.28a
 yadyo janma VI, 2.64a
 yadvijñāna II, 1.21b
 yadvoccā XII, 3.10a
 yannityam IV, 2.18b
 yanma III, 1.48c
 yamaśca IX, 2.1a
 yamānabhikṣṇam IX, 2.8a
 yaḥ pratyaha II, 1.7a
 yayoreteṣu VI, 3.30a
 yaśca māṃsam XI, 3.23a
 yaśca vyākule XII, 1.1a
 yasmāt pumśa II, 1.22a
 yasmādyasmād XI, 2.11a
 yasmin VI, 3.1a
 yasya nasti VI, 2.3a
 yasya rāṣṭre VII, 4.19b
 yasya vai IV, 3.23a
 yasya śraddhā III, 4.12a
 yasyā vivāhe VI, 2.47b
 yasyām pari IX, 3.18b
 yācito IV, 2.31b
 yācñā I, 2.6a
 yājayed VI, 1.21a
 yātrayām III, 1.22b
 yādrśantu XI, 3.4b
 yānātiṣṭhan X, 4.15b
 yān kārtṣṇyena XII, 2.28a
 yāni syuḥ X, 1.21a
 yāpayet VII, 4.2a
 yām yām V, 1.7a
 yāvat II, 4.1b
 yāvatā VIII, 3.10b
 yāvatā syād II, 3.25b
 yavad vyayam VI, 1.29b
 yāvanti XI, 3.2a

yuktasya IX, 4.2b
 yuktāyukta II, 2.9b
 yena kāmam VI, 2.2b
 yena yena I, 4.11a
 yena sāmāni II, 1.6a
 yenaiva nir IV, 3.1b
 ye ye gavām V, 3.17b
 yeṣām tu VI, 2.23a
 yeṣām tu VIII, 3.10a
 yeṣām sa VI, 2.53b
 yogamaṅgair IX, 1.9b
 yogam dur X, 1.19a
 yogahpara II, 3.13a
 yoga eṣām II, 2.8a
 yo'nvaham II, 1.5a
 yogādhvanā IX, 2.8a
 yogī siddhi VI, 1.14b
 yo dattā IV, 2.35a
 rakṣet prajāḥ X, 2.18a
 rakṣet prayatnāt VII, 2.11b
 rakṣed yathā VII, 2.15b
 rakṣedāgantuka VI, 4.5b
 rakṣed bāla X, 3.11b
 rakṣyo maha VII, 2.3b
 rajasvalāyāḥ XII, 4.13a
 rathyāprakāśa VI, 2.36a
 rathyāśu VI, 2.35a
 rambhāpatra VI, 4.3a
 ramyāsthathā VI, 4.8b
 rāgō cet VIII, 4.12a
 rājanyavaiṣya VI, 1.21b
 rājapratinidhi VIII, 1.9a
 rājapratinidhi VIII, 1.13b
 rājavat pañca VI, 4.10a
 rājasam pañca XI, 1.8b
 rājā nirvāsa X, 4.11b
 rājāpi VIII, 1.23a
 rājā bhaved X, 2.24a
 rājā rājye X, 2.1b
 rājñāḥ kāryam XI, 2.5a
 rājñastatra VIII, 1.24a

rājñastūtsāha I, 3.24b
 rāmakṣetre I, 1.23b
 rāmakṣetre viśeṣam VIII, 4.8b
 rāmakṣetre viśeṣam X, 1.26a
 rāmāvanitale IX, 4.12b
 rikṭāpā I, 3.32b
 rudantam XII, 2.20a
 rekha kramād III, 2.11a
 rekha grābhyaṁ II, 4.5a
 rekhaṇtarāle II, 4.6b
 retasāḥ VII, 1.29b
 rauravam I, 3.18b
 raurave VI, 2.15b
 laghugurva III, 3.1b
 lajjate I, 2.9b
 labhyā pari IX, 3.18a
 lavaṇam XI, 1.3b
 loke sādhā IV, 2.28a
 lokottara IX, 4.12a
 lohakārasya VII, 1.15a
 laukika VII, 3.22a
 vakṣyante VII, 3.14a
 vakṣyante cōpari I, 1.24b
 vatsena saha V, 4.11b
 vadet I, 4.18b
 vadham na X, 3.2b
 vadhyeṣvapi X, 4.7b
 vanam vā II, 1.15b
 vanadurgam X, 2.4b
 vanasthah VIII, 1.13b
 vanasthānām IV, 1.14a
 vanasthānām tu VIII, 4.14a
 vanastho vanya IX, 1.4b
 vanyānnabhug XI, 4.3a
 vanyānneṣu IX, 1.3b
 vapanam tu V, 2.11b
 vapanānartaram V, 2.12b
 vamane ca X, 1.28a
 vayasastu VII, 2.10b
 varakūṭastha II, 2.18a
 varadām IX, 3.29a

varasyasya sa II, 1.25b
 varāhakhāta III, 2.6b
 varjaniyān XI, 1.6a
 varjayet XI, 1.3a
 varjayed danta XII, 4.3a
 varjayetām V, 1.9b
 varṇasādhāraṇa XI, 2.20b
 varṇasya XII, 1.5b
 varṇānām I, 1.4a
 varṇāśrama XI, 1.25a
 varṇāśramoditān VIII, 1.32a
 vartate tad VII, 1.7b
 vartate prathita IV, 2.78b
 vartibhir VII, 1.26a
 vartulākāra IX, 3.35a
 vartetartau V, 1.2a
 vardhayannanu IX, 2.10b
 varṣajātāḥ II, 2.31a
 vastram śveta XII, 4.20a
 vastramānya XII, 1.13a
 vastrābhyaṅga XI, 1.22a
 vastrāvagunthita VIII, 1.13b
 vahannapya I, 3.19b
 vahnisthāne IX, 3.28b
 vahnestrikonam IX, 3.28a
 vākpārūṣyam X, 3.6b
 vākovākyam II, 1.2a
 vākovākyam II, 1.8a
 vāgminah VIII, 1.2b
 vāgyame IV, 4.22b
 vācāpi VII, 4.14b
 vādyair III, 1.27a
 vānaprasthāya VI, 1.7a
 vānare cānalām VII, 2.22a
 vāpikūpa V, 3.19a
 vāme cetyatra III, 2.10a
 vāmena vastu III, 1.17a
 vāyudhāraṇa IX, 3.1b
 vāyusthāne IX, 3.32b
 vāre grastha IV, 1.24b
 vārsikī XII, 4.23b

vāsaḥ VII, 4.5a
 vāsam tatra X, 1.17a
 vāsanivāraka I, 1.27a
 vāsasānāhatena VI, 3.22b
 vā sastu I, 3.19a
 vikalpena V, 2.21a
 vikrayam XI, 2.15a
 vicintya II, 3.24b
 vicchinnayostu III, 4.2a
 viccheda II, 3.21a
 vijātiyāmśa VII, 1.17a
 vijñātāsvāmi X, 3.14a
 vijñeyān II, 4.18b
 vitarāyan III, 1.1a
 vitāyamāne II, 3.7c
 vidadhāti IV, 2.27b
 vidadhīraṇ IV, 2.12b
 viditvā VII, 1.5b
 viditvā naiva X, 1.23a
 vidyāt III, 1.46a
 vidvān X, 2.11a
 vidhāya VIII, 1.34b
 vidhavāpi XII, 2.22a
 vidhivad IV, 2.31a
 vināstāsvāmi X, 3.12b
 vinā dāsim XII, 2.27b
 vinā na tasmāt VIII, 4.4a
 vinā sā IX, 3.16b
 vinyasya III, 3.14b
 vindeta VI, 1.24b
 viparīta V, 1.6b
 viprah I, 3.18a
 viprakṛṣyāḥ VII, 1.13b
 viprakṣatriya V, 1.23a
 vipramcā VII, 1.8a
 vipratripādām X, 2.3a
 vīraṣṭriyam VII, 1.2b
 vīraṣṭriyo XII, 4.19a
 vīraṣṭrya IV, 1.9b
 vīraṣṭrya brahma X, 4.12a
 vīraṣṭryān VII, 3.11a

vīprānna XI, 1.10a
 vīprāḥ paśyanti X, 2.25b
 vīprārthe ca VI, 1.27b
 vīpretarastu IX, 4.9b
 vīpro vīpra I, 3.1a
 vīpro vēdān I, 2.19a
 vibhave sati I, 1.13b
 vibhave sati V, 3.25a
 viramayya IV, 4.31b
 viramecca I, 4.10b
 vilokya tam VII, 2.16b
 vivahasye II, 2.8b
 vivāhā brāhma II, 3.2b
 vivāhārthi III, 1.13a
 vivāhe hi VI, 2.43a
 vivekam II, 2.3b
 viśaḥ kāryam XI, 2.5b
 viśeṣato X, 4.2a
 viśeṣād XI, 3.28b
 viśvastānapi X, 4.2b
 viśaghnam X, 4.6b
 viśayeṣu XI, 2.10b
 viṣnor IX, 1.19a
 viṣrjya X, 1.4a
 vistareṇa I, 2.28b
 vistareṇa I, 2.2b
 vistaro VI, 3.28b
 visrastam III, 3.18b
 vihāya IV, 3.4b
 vītarāgo VIII, 4.11a
 vītarāgo X, 1.1b
 vīthiṣu II, 4.10a
 vṛttādhya X, 2.20b
 vṛttityāgam VI, 1.24a
 vṛddhā III, 1.31b
 vṛthā ceṣṭām VII, 1.17b
 vṛthā paśughnah XI, 3.2b
 vṛṣṇam X, 2.14b
 vṛṣalo VIII, 2.4b
 vṛṣalyām XI, 3.20b
 vṛṣṇakleśayan XI, 1.17a

vēṇustambasya VI, 4.12b
 veda dūṣaka XI, 2.14b
 veda bāhyā I, 4.2b
 vedam vratān II, 1.14a
 vedasyādhyāpanam IV, 4.30b
 veditavyam VI, 2.46b
 vedena vihita XI, 3.9a
 veśabū VII, 1.3a
 vaikṛtāpi I, 1.6b
 vaitānikāgneh VII, 2.1a
 vaiśyāḥ XI, 1.26a
 vaiśyastālu IV, 1.20b
 vaiśyo vaiśyād XI, 1.11a
 vodhukāmasya V, 3.3b
 vyatyastastha I, 4.9b
 vyabhicāram VII, 4.1b
 vyasaneṣu XI, 1.23a
 vyavahāra X, 4.14a
 vyavahārān X, 3.20a
 vyākhyāyante III, 3.1a
 vyāhṛtyo III, 2.13a
 vyomadhrāraṇa IX, 3.30b
 vyomnaḥ sthāne IX, 3.35b
 vratapratī XI, 2.16a
 vratasthāya V, 4.13b
 vratasyātī I, 4.43b
 vrātyastoma I, 3.12a
 vrātyā nāma I, 3.10a
 śakalam III, 2.9a
 śakatasyāpi IX, 4.7a
 śaktitāḥ II, 1.9a
 śaktau satyām VI, 1.32b
 śaktī sarvatra XII, 2.17a
 śaṅkhavādān X, 1.29b
 śaṅkhendu IX, 3.25b
 śatādhyaksān X, 2.5a
 śayamceti IV, 4.33b
 śayanād V, 1.10a
 śayanādut XII, 2.4b
 śayanam I, 4.17a
 śaranāgatam I, 2.22b
 śākamcā X, 2.15b
 śākamūla IX, 1.2b
 śāntidānam III, 1.16a
 śāntisvasti X, 3.17a
 śāmyanti VII, 3.19b
 śārīra mānasa X, 1.16a
 śālinabija II, 3.19b
 śāvāśucer VII, 2.26b
 śikṣejjāla X, 3.9a
 śikhām dāyam IV, 4.17a
 śikhabandha IV, 4.37b
 śiraso mārjana IV, 1.32b
 śilacchit VII, 3.4a
 śilābhede III, 1.3a
 śivālaye IV, 4.12b
 śivāśākhā III, 1.15b
 śiśūm putram XII, 4.8b
 śiśucchiṣṭam XII, 4.8b
 śiṣṭācārād II, 2.1a
 śiṣṭācārānu VIII, 4.1b
 śiṣṭeṣvartheṣu VIII, 1.21a
 śukriyavrata V, 2.15b
 śuklayajñopa IV, 4.1b
 śuklaśca tāsām IX, 3.24b
 śucāvudaka V, 4.8a
 śucinava X, 3.19c
 śucau deṣe IV, 3.15b
 śuddham XI, 4.14b
 śuddhāvācāra XI, 4.14a
 śubhagne III, 3.23a
 śubhāśubha VI, 4.15b
 śubhraiḥ II, 4.6a
 śuṣkān IV, 3.17a
 śūdrastasya XI, 2.21b
 śūdrām na XI, 3.24b
 śūdrāṇām IV, 4.13a
 śūdrādi XII, 4.21b
 śūdrādisparśa XII, 4.5a
 śūdrāṇna VI, 1.20a
 śūdrenā VII, 2.19a
 śūdreṣu I, 2.3b

śudro dāsyena I, 2.16b
 śūropi V, 3.23a
 śrīgagrāhi VII, 3.24b
 śrīnge rajum XI, 1.14b
 śeśānirūpa I, 1.34b
 śeśothavā III, 4.7b
 śaivam pañca IV, 2.17a
 śaivā vaiśṇava XII, 2.24a
 śaivāt XI, 2.19a
 śaivi ca VIII, 3.8b
 śodhayet III, 1.40b
 śaucakramo IV, 1.12b
 śaucam IV, 1.16a
 śaucācāra I, 3.49
 śaucācāra I, 4.5b
 śraddhadhāna IX, 1.3a
 śrāddhāvān XII, 2.3b
 śrāddham V, 1.3a
 śrāvayecca IV, 4.29b
 śrīṇuyācca IV, 4.29a
 śrutmā yathā VIII, 1.23a
 śrutasya XII, 1.6a
 śrutiśmṛti I, 4.1b
 śrutvā hrī VIII, 1.21b
 śrūyate XI, 3.15a
 śrautasmārtāni VI, 2.2a
 śvapacāḥ VII, 3.4b
 śvabhiḥ X, 3.4b
 śvetām vā IV, 3.5a
 śaṭkoṇam IX, 3.32a
 śadaksarasya IV, 3.19b
 śodaśāpi IV, 4.3b
 sa eva dhātā VI, 1.9b
 sa eva prathama VII, 3.23a
 sa kāmān III, 4.11b
 sa cainām III, 1.20b
 sa tatsthāne I, 1.29b
 sa tu tad VIII, 1.16a
 sa nah pāvaka VIII, 3.27b
 sa yaśāḥ X, 3.8b
 sa vidhir I, 3.10a

sa vai prajā X, 3.29b
 sa vai lokasya XI, 3.17b
 sakṛt III, 3.12a
 sakṛdapi VI, 1.8b
 sakṛṇmaniktvā IV, 1.29b
 sakṛtkaraṇa V, 1.15b
 sajalena IV, 1.18a
 sati sva VI, 2.39a
 satkarma X, 3.23b
 sat putreṇa VI, 4.16b
 santata IX, 3.9a
 santāna VII, 1.27a
 santānāstu VI, 2.65b
 sadāraputra VI, 3.19a
 sadācārān XII, 1.3a
 sandigdhadōṣa VIII, 1.16b
 sandigdhārtha VIII, 1.32b
 sadvidveṣa XI, 2.20b
 sandhānika VII, 1.15b
 sandhāniya III, 2.7a
 sandhāyocca III, 3.21b
 sandhyayoṣca IV, 1.2a
 sandhyayor VIII, 1.24a
 sandhyādin X, 2.27b
 sandhyāyām XII, 3.5a
 sandhyāśu I, 4.42a
 sannidhāne VI, 2.35b
 sapatiṣu XII, 2.17b
 saptakā VII, 4.6c
 sapta tān III, 4.5a
 saptapadi VI, 2.44a
 saptabhyo X, 3.8a
 saptāvṛtīni IV, 1.9a
 saptāvṛtīni vā IV, 1.11a
 sapraja I, 2.2b
 sabhyaissamāna VIII, 1.36a
 samkrāntau XII, 2.8b
 samksipyā III, 2.22b
 samgrāme VII, 4.6b
 samnyasya IX, 4.7b
 sampanne X, 1.31a

sampādyā III, 1.11a
 samprāpte VIII, 1.1a
 samprāpya IX, 4.3a
 sambhāvya VI, 2.9b
 sammr̄ṣṭa IV, 1.37a
 samrakṣan VI, 1.32a
 samṛttā IV, 1.36b
 samśodhya IV, 4.86
 samśodhya gomaye III, 1.51a
 samśodhyāyatanaṁ III, 3.4a
 samśkartā XI, 3.19a
 samśkāram VI, 2.57b
 samśkārair I, 3.3a
 samśkāraissu VIII, 2.1a
 samśkāro V, 2.5a
 samśkr̄to VI, 4.18b
 samśpr̄ṣye III, 3.17b
 samrakṣet VII, 2.28b
 samsargāt VIII, 1.36b
 samacitta VI, 2.3b
 samantra VI, 2.37b
 samantrapari III, 3.23b
 samantrasām I, 1.23a
 samapina II, 3.30b
 samabhūpa IV, 4.2a
 samādhi IX, 1.2a
 samādhistha IX, 4.3b
 samānā I, 1.17b
 samānābhi VIII, 1.33a
 samānāmapi XI, 3.29a
 samāpte III, 3.9c
 samāhīta I, 3.4b
 samidhāropya III, 3.3a
 sametān III, 1.8b
 sampradāya I, 3.29a
 sambhāvya II, 1.17a
 sammr̄jita XII, 4.6b
 sammr̄ṣṭa III, 1.10b
 sarahasya I, 1.25a
 sarpirvā V, 4.8b
 sarvam tad IX, 1.14b
 sarvam vā XI, 2.15b
 sarvakāma II, 1.10a
 sarva kāryeṣu X, 3.22a
 sarvatra X, 1.29b
 sarvatra vipra VII, 1.16c
 sarvadāpyanu VI, 2.5c
 sarvathā X, 2.23a
 sarvabhūṣaṇa IX, 3.37b
 sarvalakṣaṇa XII, 2.3a
 sarvavarṇeṣu X, 1.6a
 sarvasambandhi X, 3.26b
 sarvasaṃskāra X, 1.30a
 sarvāgha IV, 2.27a
 sarvān X, 2.28b
 sarvāyudha IX, 3.38a
 sarvā snātā XII, 3.17a
 sarvāśvetā VI, 2.11a
 sarve kṣema V, 1.27b
 sarve janmina I, 2.8b
 sarvepi IV, 1.21a
 sarvepi sarve IV, 1.36a
 sarve mokṣāya V, 3.26b
 sarveśām IV, 4.14a
 sarveśāmapi V, 4.1a
 sarveśāmathava II, 1.11a
 sarveśām karma XII, 4.7b
 sarveśāmapi IV, 1.7a
 sarveṣu kanṭhe I, 3.33b
 sarveṣu ca X, 3.19b
 sarve sarvān V, 1.27a
 sarvopāya VI, 2.12b
 saśraddham VI, 2.16a
 sasam̄bhāra III, 2.1b
 saha tena VI, 2.46a
 saha pakvam VII, 2.7b
 sahasratama IV, 2.15b
 sahasranāma VIII, 3.3b
 sahasraparame IV, 3.8a
 sahasramaṣṭau XI, 1.6b
 sahasri tu V, 3.24c
 sahodhastu VI, 3.11b

sahodaram VI, 2.30a
 sahodarāñām V, 3.4a
 sahodari VI, 2.40a
 sākalyena II, 1.1a
 sāksat sparśo VII, 2.17b
 sāksiṇāḥ VIII, 1.16b
 sāksikṛtya V, 1.1b
 sā gṛhita II, 4.16b
 sāṅgam ca VIII, 4.12b
 sātvikim XI, 1.10b
 sādhyam VII, 4.19a
 sādhet VI, 2.21b
 sādhāraṇāḥ I, 1.22b
 sādhāraṇam IV, 2.8a
 sādhāraṇopā VII, 3.6a
 sāddhu tattad X, 4.14b
 sāddhvirdāśiḥ VIII, 1.3a
 sāntarācamana IV, 1.38b
 sāpiṇḍyasya II, 1.35b
 sāpiṇḍyasya II, 2.2b
 sāmānya VII, 3.25b
 sāmudrasalila VI, 3.20a
 sāmbām śivam I, 1.1b
 sāmbhaḥ sneha VII, 2.19b
 sārkām IV, 4.32a
 sālagrāma XI, 1.4a
 sālagrāmaśilā VIII, 3.3a
 sāvarna deva IV, 3.20b
 sāvītrīm IV, 4.18b
 sāvītripatī I, 3.9b
 sikatāmūṣāra III, 2.69
 siddhayo IX, 3.10a
 silindhrām VIII, 2.10a
 sisādhayisu IX, 3.15a
 sīmā tu XII, 2.22b
 sutārthe III, 1.11b
 sutāvāmjhana III, 3.7a
 suputra VI, 2.15a
 supracāram IX, 2.6a
 sumuhūrta III, 1.20a
 sumuhūrte V, 1.26b

surākumbham X, 4.13a
 surāṇītyopi XI, 2.9b
 surāpānād XI, 3.30a
 suṣūmnām IX, 3.19a
 susvādhyāya I, 2.21a
 sūtrīṇastāni IV, 1.10b
 sūtrīṇāmaviś VI, 2.42a
 sṛgāle VII, 2.21b
 sṛṣṭamātrā I, 1.15b
 saiva prabalya VI, 4.15a
 saumyam pañca IX, 3.37a
 saureṇa V, 2.11a
 sauvarṇe VII, 4.5b
 srucāpūrṇa III, 2.15b
 srucastapam III, 3.19a
 skhalate IX, 2.26b
 stanyam na VIII, 2.4a
 stanyapasya VIII, 2.10a
 stanyāśine XII, 2.19a
 stanye mātuḥ VIII, 2.7a
 stambheṣū III, 1.8a
 steyam na XI, 3.23b
 striyāḥ kāmena X, 1.23a
 striyam sa IX, 2.25a
 striyāsceti I, 2.24a
 striyāstū II, 3.32b
 strīnām cāritra VII, 4.20b
 strīnāmupa V, 2.17b
 strīnām smaran V, 1.5b
 strīnām sambandha VI, 2.50b
 stri tu II, 1.19a
 strīdarśanam XII, 4.18a
 strīdhanamca VI, 1.30b
 strīdhanamca VI, 1.31a
 strīpumsa II, 3.17b
 strīvadhū ca II, 2.23a
 sthaṇḍile III, 2.4a
 sthavira II, 3.20a
 sthātavyam VII, 4.22b
 sthāne tadantam II, 2.6a
 sthāpayet III, 1.7b

snapayenna VIII, 2.12b
 snātakāḥ IV, 1.33b
 snātakastu VIII, 4.9a
 snātakādatha IV, 1.34b
 snātakāñām ca IV, 4.23c
 snātvyasnāna V, 2.17a
 snātāgatēbhyo IV, 2.36b
 snātvācācamya IV, 4.18a
 snātvāmuhūrte I, 4.2a
 snātvā sūrya I, 3.34a
 snānakarmani IV, 1.22a
 snānañca V, 3.2a
 snānavastrena VII, 4.3a
 snānāt prāk VIII, 2.5a
 snānādiṣū III, 4.17a
 snānādyavaśya IV, 3.18a
 snānāmbaram XII, 3.14a
 snānāmbarāṇi VII, 1.12b
 snāne prāyaśa XII, 3.16b
 snāyāt sacela IV, 4.27a
 snāyādambu XII, 2.25a
 snihyeyuh XI, 1.23b
 sparśane XII, 4.6a
 sparśe pañca VII, 3.16b
 sparśe rajaka VIII, 2.6a
 sprśanajptvā II, 4.146
 sprṣṭam nakulyā VII, 2.5b
 smaranti VI, 2.6a
 smaryate II, 1.31b
 smārayeyuh VIII, 1.26b
 smārtena VIII, 1.25a
 smitapūrvā X, 4.7a
 smṛtassādhāraṇo I, 1.25b
 smṛtvā I, 4.3b
 syandeta IX, 2.12b
 syācca IX, 2.24a
 syācca paśyet X, 1.15a
 syātām tad II, 1.22b
 syādagni III, 3.6a
 syādanyatra I, 3.13b
 syurevaikasya V, 3.5a
 sravilepana I, 4.37a
 svakṣetre I, 2.9a
 svamca I, 4.23a
 svataḥ praptam X, 3.25b
 svadattam X, 3.25a
 svadeśa X, 2.21b
 svadharma XI, 1.26b
 svadharma nirataḥ XI, 2.1b
 svadharmaṇi XI, 2.13b
 svadharmaṣṭhena V, 4.5a
 svadharmaṣya X, 4.9a
 svapitṛ III, 3.9a
 svabhūmau XII, 4.17b
 svayaṇi samcāra VII, 1.18a
 svalaṅkṛtam III, 1.29b
 svalpamūtro IX, 2.21a
 svasantāñād XII, 3.3b
 sva sva kāryeṣu IX, 3.13b
 sva sva pramāṇa I, 3.29b
 sva sva sūtra IV, 2.7b
 svādhyāya IX, 1.10a
 svādhyāyād IV, 2.30a
 svādhyāyād yoga IX, 1.156
 svānuṣṭhāna IX, 1.6b
 svānuṣṭhānam IX, 3.12a
 svāpayenna VI, 4.6a
 svāpānto IV, 1.21b
 svāminam X, 3.13b
 svikartā VI, 3.13b
 svikāryo VI, 2.24a
 svikuryād VI, 3.13a
 svikṛte datta VI, 3.15a
 svikṛiyeta VIII, 1.19a
 svīyasamśaya VIII, 1.2a
 svīyasamśaya VIII, 1.3b
 svedāmbu VII, 2.14a
 svenārabdhām XI, 2.4b
 svopādhyāya I, 4.40b
 haviranya VII, 2.5a
 havīḥ paryu VII, 2.7a
 havīr dvedhā III, 3.7b

havyam kavyam XII, 2.13a
hastadattam XII, 4.9a
hastaprakṣālanam VII, 1.21b
hastino X, 2.13b
hastenoddhṛtya IV, 1.6b
hāridram I, 3.19b
hāridram eva I, 3.25a
hiṅgumaccāsaye VIII, 2.11b
hitvā kālam I, 4.41a
himṣāpi tadvat XI, 3.21a
himṣrasatva XI, 1.13a

hīnatā prāpaṇe VI, 2.62a
hīnasnāna V, 3.8a
hīnāṅgān XII, 1.4a
hīne'pi VI, 2.61a
hutaśeṣam XI, 3.21b
hūyamāno III, 4.13a
hṛdyasya IV, 1.34a
hemante ca IX, 1.6a
he'surā I, 1.19b
homam kuryād III, 1.29a
homamca IV, 4.19a